STC12C5410AD系列单片机器件手册

- ---1个时钟/机器周期8051
- ---超强加密,有全球唯一ID号
- ---高速,高可靠
- ---低功耗,超低价
- ---强抗静电,强抗干扰

STC12C5401AD,	STC12C5401
STC12C5402AD,	STC12C5402
STC12C5404AD,	STC12C5404
STC12C5406AD,	STC12C5406
STC12C5408AD,	STC12C5408
STC12C5410AD,	STC12C5410
STC12C5412AD,	STC12C5412

Update date: 2011/10/30

目录

第1章	STC12C5410AD系列单片机总体介绍	8
1.1	STC12C5410AD系列单片机简介	8
1.2	STC12C5410AD系列单片机的内部结构	10
1.3	STC12C5410AD系列单片机管脚图	11
	STC12C5410AD系列单片机选型一览表	
1.5	STC12C5410AD系列单片机最小应用系统	14
	STC12C5410AD系列在系统可编程(ISP)典型应用线路图	
	1.6.1 STC12C5410AD系列单片机28脚典型应用电路	
	1.6.2 STC12C5410AD系列单片机20脚典型应用电路	
	1.6.3 STC12C5410AD系列单片机32脚典型应用电路	
1.7	STC12C5410AD系列管脚说明	
1.8	STC12C5410AD系列单片机封装尺寸图	22
	STC12C5410AD系列单片机命名规则	
	0 每个单片机具有全球唯一身份证号码(ID号)	
	时钟, 省电模式及复位	
2.1	STC12C5410AD系列单片机的时钟	
	2.1.1 STC12C5410AD系列单片机内部/外部工作时钟可选	
	2.1.2 时钟分频及分频寄存器	
	2.1.3 如何知道单片机内部R/C振荡频率(内部时钟频率)	
	2.1.4 可编程时钟输出	
2.2	STC12C5410AD系列单片机的省电模式	41
2.2	STC12C5410AD系列单片机的省电模式	41
2.2	STC12C5410AD系列单片机的省电模式	4143
2.2	STC12C5410AD系列单片机的省电模式	41 43 44
2.2	STC12C5410AD系列单片机的省电模式	41 43 44 44
2.2	STC12C5410AD系列单片机的省电模式	41 43 44 45 45
2.2	STC12C5410AD系列单片机的省电模式	41 43 44 45 45
2.2	STC12C5410AD系列单片机的省电模式	414344454749
2.2	STC12C5410AD系列单片机的省电模式	414344454749

	2.3	复位	59
		2.3.1 外部RST引脚复位	59
		2.3.2 软件复位	59
		2.3.3 上电复位/掉电复位	60
		2.3.4 内部低压检测复位	60
		2.3.5 MAX810专用复位电路	
		2.3.6 看门狗(WDT)复位	
		2.3.7 冷启动复位和热启动复位	
第3	章	片内存储器和特殊功能寄存器(SFRs)	.68
	3.1	程序存储器	68
	3.2	数据存储器(SRAM)	.69
		3.2.1 内部RAM	
		3.2.2 内部扩展256字节RAM(物理上在内部,逻辑上在外部)	72
	3.3	特殊功能寄存器(SFRs)	.75
第4	章	STC12C5410AD系列单片机的I/O口结构	81
	4.1	I/O口各种不同的工作模式及配置介绍	81
	4.2	I/O口各种不同的工作模式结构框图	85
		4.2.1 准双向口输出配置	
		4.2.2 强推挽输出配置	86
		4.2.3 仅为输入(高阻)配置	
		4.2.4 开漏输出配置(若外加上拉电阻,也可读)	
	4.3	一种典型三极管控制电路	88
	4.4	典型发光二极管控制电路	88
	4.5	混合电压供电系统3V/5V器件I/O口互连	88
	4.6	如何让I/O口上电复位时为低电平	89
	4.7	PWM输出时I/O口的状态	90
	4.9	I/O口直接驱动LED数码管应用线路图	91
	4.10) I/O口直接驱动LCD应用线路图	92
	4.11	A/D做按键扫描应用线路图	93
第5			94
		寻址方式	94
		5.1.1 立即寻址	
		5.1.2 直接寻址	
		5.1.3 间接寻址	

		5.1.4 寄存器寻址	95
		5.1.5 相对寻址	95
		5.1.6 变址寻址	95
		5.1.7 位寻址	95
4	5.2	指令系统分类总结	96
4	5.3	传统8051单片机指令定义详解(中文&English)	101
		5.3.1 传统8051单片机指令定义详解	
		5.3.2 Instruction Definitions of Traditional 8051 MCU	141
第6章	章	中断系统	. 178
(6.1	中断结构	180
(6.2	中断寄存器	183
(6.3	中断优先级	191
(6.4	中断处理	192
(6.5	外部中断	193
		中断测试程序	
		6.6.1 外部中断0(<u>INT0</u>)的测试程序	194
		6.6.2 外部中断1(<u>INT1</u>)的测试程序	
		6.6.3 定时器0中断(下降沿中断,可用于唤醒掉电模式)的测试程序	202
		6.6.4 定时器1中断(下降沿中断,可用于唤醒掉电模式)的测试程序	204
		6.6.5 RxD中断(RxD/P3.0下降沿中断,可用于唤醒掉电模式)的测试程序	
		6.6.7 PCA模块中断(可用于唤醒掉电模式)的测试程序	208
第7章	章	定时器/计数器	. 212
-	7.1	定时器/计数器的相关寄存器	212
-	7.2	定时器/计数器0工作模式	217
		7.2.1 模式0(13位定时器/计数器)	217
		7.2.2 模式1(16位定时器/计数器)	218
		7.2.3 模式2(8位自动重装模式)	222
		7.2.4 模式3(两个8位计数器)	225
	7.3	定时器/计数器1工作模式	226
		7.3.1 模式0(13位定时器/计数器)	226
		7.3.2 模式1(16位定时器/计数器)	
		7.3.3 模式2(8位自动重装模式)	
	7.4	可编程时钟输出及测试程序(C程序和汇编程序)	
		7.4.1 定时器0的可编程时钟输出的测试程序	
		7.4.2 定时器1的可编程时钟输出的测试程序	238

7.5	古老Intel 8051单片机定时器0/1的应用举例	240
第8章	串行口通信	. 247
8.1	串行口的相关寄存器	247
8.2		
	8.2.1 串行口工作模式0: 同步移位寄存器	
	8.2.2 串行口工作模式1: 8位UART,波特率可变	255
	8.2.3 串行口工作模式2: 9位UART,波特率固定	257
	8.2.4 串行口工作模式3:9位UART,波特率可变	259
8.3	串行通信中波特率的设置	261
8.4	· 串行口的测试程序	264
8.5	双机通信	270
8.6	多机通信	281
第9章	STC12C5410AD系列单片机的A/D转换器	. 287
9.1	A/D转换器的结构	287
9.2	与A/D转换相关的寄存器	289
9.3	A/D转换典型应用线路	294
9.4	· A/D做按键扫描应用线路图	295
9.5	A/D转换模块的参考电压源	296
9.6	A/D转换测试程序(C程序和汇编程序)	297
	9.6.1 A/D转换测试程序(ADC中断方式)	297
	9.6.2 A/D转换测试程序(ADC查询方式)	303
第10章	5 STC12C5410AD 系列单片机PCA/PWM应用	. 309
10	1 与PCA/PWM应用有关的特殊功能寄存器	309
10	2 PCA/PWM模块的结构	313
10	3 PCA模块的工作模式	315
	10.3.1 捕获模式	315
	10.3.2 16位软件定时器模式	
	10.3.3 高速输出模式	
	10.3.4 脉宽调节模式(PWM)	
10	4 用PCA功能扩展外部中断的示例程序(C程序和汇编程序)	320
10	5 用PCA功能实现定时器的示例程序(C程序和汇编程序)	324
10	6 PCA输出高速脉冲的示例程序(C程序和汇编程序)	328

10.7 PCA输出PWM的示例程序(C程序和汇编程序)	332
10.8 利用PWM实现D/A功能的典型应用线路图	336
第11章 同步串行外围接口(SPI接口)	337
11.1 与SPI功能模块相关的特殊功能寄存器	337
11.2 SPI接口的结构	
11.3 SPI接口的数据通信	
11.3.1 SPI接口的数据通信方式	341
11.3.2 对SPI进行配置	
11.3.3 作为主机/从机时的额外注意事项	344
11.3.4 通过SS改变模式	345
11.3.5 写冲突	345
11.3.6 数据模式	
11.4 适用单主单从系统的SPI功能测试程序	348
11.4.1 中断方式	
11.4.2 查询方式	
11.5 适用互为主从系统的SPI功能测试程序	360
11.5.1 中断方式	360
11.5.2 查询方式	366
第12章 STC12C5410AD系列EEPROM的应用	372
12.1 IAP及EEPROM新增特殊功能寄存器介绍	372
12.2 STC12C5410AD系列单片机EEPROM空间大小及地址	375
12.3 IAP及EEPROM汇编简介	376
12.4 EEPROM测试程序	380
第13章 STC12系列单片机开发/编程工具说明	388
13.1 在系统可编程(ISP)原理,官方演示工具使用说明	388
13.1.1 在系统可编程(ISP)原理使用说明	388
13.1.2 STC12C5410AD系列在系统可编程(ISP)典型应用线路图	389
13.1.3 电脑端的ISP控制软件界面使用说明	391
13.1.4 STC-ISP下载编程工具硬件使用说明	
13.1.5 若无RS-232转换器,如何用ISP下载板做RS-232通信转换	
13.2 编译器/汇编器, 编程器, 仿真器	395
13.3 自定义下载演示程序(实现不停电下载)	397
附录A: 汇编语言编程	401

附录B: C语言编程	423
附录C: STC12C5410AD系列单片机电气特性	433
附录D: 用串口扩展I/O接口	435
附录E: 利用STC单片机普通I/O驱动LCD显示	438
附录F: 一个I/O口驱动发光二极管并扫描按键	445
附录G: 如何利用Keil C软件减少代码长度	446
附录H: STC12C5410AD系列单片机应用注意事项	447
附录I: 每日更新内容的备忘录	448

第1章 STC12C5410AD系列单片机总体介绍

1.1 STC12C5410AD系列单片机简介

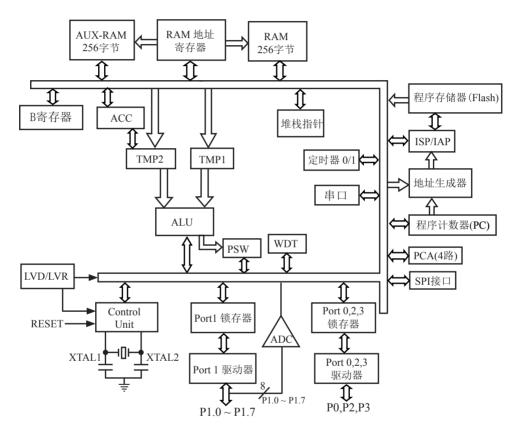
STC12C5410AD系列单片机是STC生产的单时钟/机器周期(1T)的单片机,是高速/低功耗/超强抗干扰的新一代8051单片机,指令代码完全兼容传统8051,但速度快8-12倍。内部集成MAX810专用复位电路,4路PWM,8路高速10位A/D转换,针对电机控制,强干扰场合。

- 1. 增强型 8051 CPU, 1T, 单时钟/机器周期, 指令代码完全兼容传统8051
- 2. 工作电压:
 - STC12C5410AD 系列工作电压: 5.5V-3.5V (5V单片机) STC12LE5410AD 系列工作电压: 3.6V-2.2V (3V单片机)
- 3. 工作频率范围: 0~35MHz, 相当于普通8051的 0~420MHz
- 4. 用户应用程序空间 12K /10K / 8K / 6K / 4K / 2K / 1K 字节......
- 5. 片上集成512字节 RAM
- 6. 通用I/O口(27/23/15个),复位后为:准双向口/弱上拉(普通8051传统I/O口)可设置成四种模式:准双向口/弱上拉,强推挽/强上拉,仅为输入/高阻,开漏每个I/O口驱动能力均可达到20mA,但整个芯片最大不要超过55mA
- 7. ISP(在系统可编程)/IAP(在应用可编程),无需专用编程器,无需专用仿真器可通过串口(P3.0/P3.1)直接下载用户程序,数秒即可完成一片
- 8. 有EEPROM功能
- 9. 看门狗
- 10. 内部集成MAX810专用复位电路(外部晶体12M以下时,可省外部复位电路)
- 11. 时钟源:外部高精度晶体/时钟,内部R/C振荡器 用户在下载用户程序时,可选择是使用内部R/C振荡器还是外部晶体/时钟 常温下内部R/C振荡器频率为: 5.2MHz ~ 6.8MHz 精度要求不高时,可选择使用内部时钟,但因为有制造误差和温漂,以实际测试为准
- 12. 共6个16位定时器 两个与传统8051兼容的定时器/计数器,16位定时器T0 和T1,没有定时器2, PCA模块可再实现4个16位定时器
- 13. 2个时钟输出口,可由T0的溢出在P1.0输出时钟,可由T1的溢出在P1.1输出时钟
- 14. 外部中断9路,下降沿中断或低电平触发中断,PCA模式可分别或同时支持上升沿中断/下降沿中断,Power Down模式可由外部中断唤醒,INTO/P3.2,INTI/P3.3,TO/P3.4,T1/P3.5,RxD/P3.0,PCA0/P3.7,PCA1/P3.5,PCA2/P2.0,PCA3/P2.4
- 15. PWM(4路)/PCA(可编程计数器阵列,4路)
 - --- 也可用来当4路D/A使用
 - --- 也可用来再实现4个定时器
 - --- 也可用来再实现4个外部中断(上升沿中断/下降沿中断均可分别或同时支持)

- 16. A/D转换, 10位精度ADC, 共8路
- 17. 通用全双工异步串行口(UART),由于STC12系列是高速的8051,也可再用定时器软件实现 多串口
- 18. SPI同步通信口,主模式/从模式
- 19. 工作温度范围: -40~+85℃(工业级) / 0~75℃(商业级)
- 21. 封装: LQFP-32, SOP-32/28/20, SKDIP-28, PDIP-20, TSSOP-20 (超小封装6.4mm×6.4mm), LQFP32/SOP32有27个I/O口, SOP28/SKDIP28有23个I/O口, SOP20/TSSOP20/PDIP20有15个I/O口, I/O口不够时,可用2到3根普通I/O口线外接74HC595/164/165(均可级联)来扩展I/O口,还可用A/D做按键扫描来节省I/O口,或用双CPU,三线通信,还多了串口。

1.2 STC12C5410AD系列单片机的内部结构

STC12C5410AD系列单片机的内部结构框图如下图所示。STC12C5410AD单片机中包含中央处理器(CPU)、程序存储器(Flash)、数据存储器(SRAM)、定时/计数器、UART串口、I/O接口、高速A/D转换、SPI接口、PCA、看门狗及片内R/C振荡器和外部晶体振荡电路等模块。STC12C5410AD系列单片机几乎包含了数据采集和控制中所需的所有单元模块,可称得上一个片上系统。

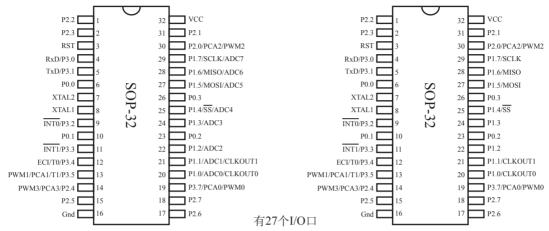


STC12C5410AD系列内部结构框图

1.3 STC12C5410AD系列单片机管脚图

所有封装形式均满足欧盟RoHS要求,LQFP-32采用Green标准生产

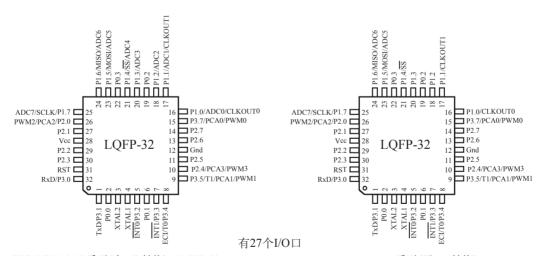
强烈推荐选择SOP-32/28/20及LQFP-32贴片封装,尽量不选落后的插件DIP封装



STC12C5410AD系列(有A/D转换), SOP-32

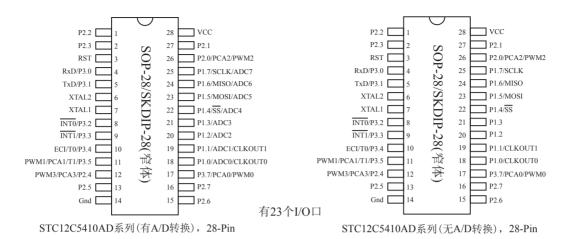
STC12C5410AD系列(无A/D转换), SOP-32

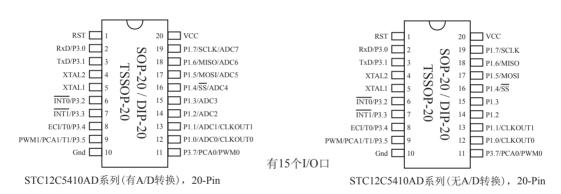
LQFP-32封装,长×宽=9mm×9mm,高<1.6mm



STC12C5410AD系列(有A/D转换), LQFP-32

STC12C5410AD系列(无A/D转换), LQFP-32





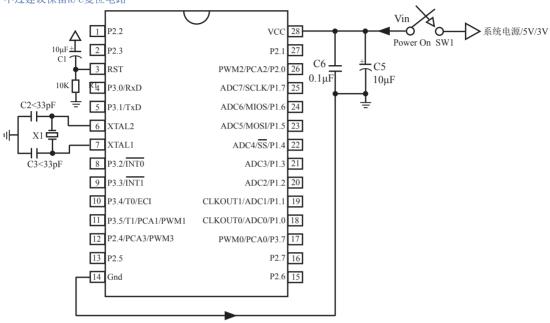
超小封装TSSOP-20, 6.4mm×6.4mm

1.4 STC12C5410AD系列单片机选型一览表

型무	工作 电压 (V)	Flash 程序 存储 器字 节	SRAM 字节	定时器 T0 T1	PCA 定时 器	时钟输出	U A R T 串 口	EEP ROM	PCA 16位 PWM 8位	A/D 8路	I/O	看门狗	内置复位	S P I	封装 32-Pin	封装28-Pin	封装20-Pin
STC12C5410AD系列单片机选型一览																	
STC12C5401	5.5-3.5	1K	512	有	4	有	有	有	4路		27/23/15	有	有	有	SOP/LQFP	SOP/SKDIP	SOP/TSSOP/DIP
STC12C5401AD	5.5-3.5	1K	512	有	4	有	有	有	4路	10位	27/23/15	有	有	有	SOP/LQFP	SOP/SKDIP	SOP/TSSOP/DIP
STC12C5402	5.5-3.5	2K	512	有	4	有	有	有	4路		27/23/15	有	有	有	SOP/LQFP	SOP/SKDIP	SOP/TSSOP/DIP
STC12C5402AD	5.5-3.5	2K	512	有	4	有	有	有	4路	10位	27/23/15	有	有	有	SOP/LQFP	SOP/SKDIP	SOP/TSSOP/DIP
STC12C5404	5.5-3.5	4K	512	有	4	有	有	有	4路		27/23/15	有	有	有	SOP/LQFP	SOP/SKDIP	SOP/TSSOP/DIP
STC12C5404AD	5.5-3.5	4K	512	有	4	有	有	有	4路	10位	27/23/15	有	有	有	SOP/LQFP	SOP/SKDIP	SOP/TSSOP/DIP
STC12C5406	5.5-3.5	6K	512	有	4	有	有	有	4路		27/23/15	有	有	有	SOP/LQFP	SOP/SKDIP	SOP/TSSOP/DIP
STC12C5406AD	5.5-3.5	6K	512	有	4	有	有	有	4路	10位	27/23/15	有	有	有	SOP/LQFP	SOP/SKDIP	SOP/TSSOP/DIP
STC12C5408	5.5-3.5	8K	512	有	4	有	有	有	4路		27/23/15	有	有	有	SOP/LQFP	SOP/SKDIP	SOP/TSSOP/DIP
STC12C5408AD	5.5-3.5	8K	512	有	4	有	有	有	4路	10位	27/23/15	有	有	有	SOP/LQFP	SOP/SKDIP	SOP/TSSOP/DIP
STC12C5410	5.5-3.5	10K	512	有	4	有	有	有	4路		27/23/15	有	有	有	SOP/LQFP	SOP/SKDIP	SOP/TSSOP/DIP
STC12C5410AD	5.5-3.5	10K	512	有	4	有	有	有	4路	10位	27/23/15	有	有	有	SOP/LQFP	SOP/SKDIP	SOP/TSSOP/DIP
STC12C5412	5.5-3.5	12K	512	有	4	有	有	有	4路		27/23/15	有	有	有	SOP/LQFP	SOP/SKDIP	SOP/TSSOP/DIP
STC12C5412AD	5.5-3.5	12K	512	有	4	有	有	有	4路	10位	27/23/15	有	有	有	SOP/LQFP	SOP/SKDIP	SOP/TSSOP/DIP
						STO	C12	LE5410)AD系	列单片	· 机选型-	- 览			•	•	•
STC12LE5401	3.6-2.2	1K	512	有	4	有	有	有	4路		27/23/15	有	有	有	SOP/LQFP	SOP/SKDIP	SOP/TSSOP/DIP
STC12LE5401AD	3.6-2.2	1K	512	有	4	有	有	有	4路	10位	27/23/15	有	有	有	SOP/LQFP	SOP/SKDIP	SOP/TSSOP/DIP
STC12LE5402	3.6-2.2	2K	512	有	4	有	有	有	4路		27/23/15	有	有	有	SOP/LQFP	SOP/SKDIP	SOP/TSSOP/DIP
STC12LE5402AD	3.6-2.2	2K	512	有	4	有	有	有	4路	10位	27/23/15	有	有	有	SOP/LQFP	SOP/SKDIP	SOP/TSSOP/DIP
STC12LE5404	3.6-2.2	4K	512	有	4	有	有	有	4路		27/23/15	有	有	有	SOP/LQFP	SOP/SKDIP	SOP/TSSOP/DIP
STC12LE5404AD	3.6-2.2	4K	512	有	4	有	有	有	4路	10位	27/23/15	有	有	有	SOP/LQFP	SOP/SKDIP	SOP/TSSOP/DIP
STC12LE5406	3.6-2.2	6K	512	有	4	有	有	有	4路		27/23/15	有	有	有	SOP/LQFP	SOP/SKDIP	SOP/TSSOP/DIP
STC12LE5406AD	3.6-2.2	6K	512	有	4	有	有	有	4路	10位	27/23/15	有	有	有	SOP/LQFP	SOP/SKDIP	SOP/TSSOP/DIP
STC12LE5408	3.6-2.2	8K	512	有	4	有	有	有	4路		27/23/15	有	有	有	SOP/LQFP	SOP/SKDIP	SOP/TSSOP/DIP
STC12LE5408AD	3.6-2.2	8K	512	有	4	有	有	有	4路	10位	27/23/15	有	有	有	SOP/LQFP	SOP/SKDIP	SOP/TSSOP/DIP
STC12LE5410	3.6-2.2	10K	512	有	4	有	有	有	4路		27/23/15	有	有	有	SOP/LQFP	SOP/SKDIP	SOP/TSSOP/DIP
STC12LE5410AD	3.6-2.2	10K	512	有	4	有	有	有	4路	10位	27/23/15	有	有	有	SOP/LQFP	SOP/SKDIP	SOP/TSSOP/DIP
STC12LE5412	3.6-2.2	12K	512	有	4	有	有	有	4路		27/23/15	有	有	有	SOP/LQFP	SOP/SKDIP	SOP/TSSOP/DIP
STC12LE5412AD	3.6-2.2	12K	512	有	4	有	有	有	4路	10位	27/23/15	有	有	有	SOP/LQFP	SOP/SKDIP	SOP/TSSOP/DIP

1.5 STC12C5410AD系列单片机最小应用系统

晶振频率在12MHz以下时: 可以不用C1, R1接1K电阻到地 不过建议保留R/C复位电路



关于晶振电路:

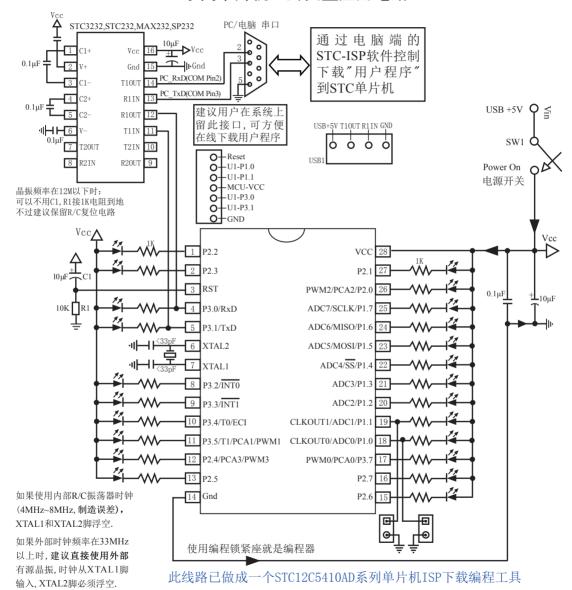
如果使用内部R/C振荡器时钟(4MHz~8MHz, 制造误差), XTAL1和XTAL2脚浮空.

如果外部时钟频率在33MHz以上时,建议直接使用外部有源晶振,时钟从XTAL1脚输入,XTAL2脚必须浮空.

1.6 STC12C5410AD系列在系统可编程(ISP)典型应用线路图

----通过RS-232转换器连接电脑就可以下载程序

1.6.1 STC12C5410AD系列单片机28脚典型应用电路

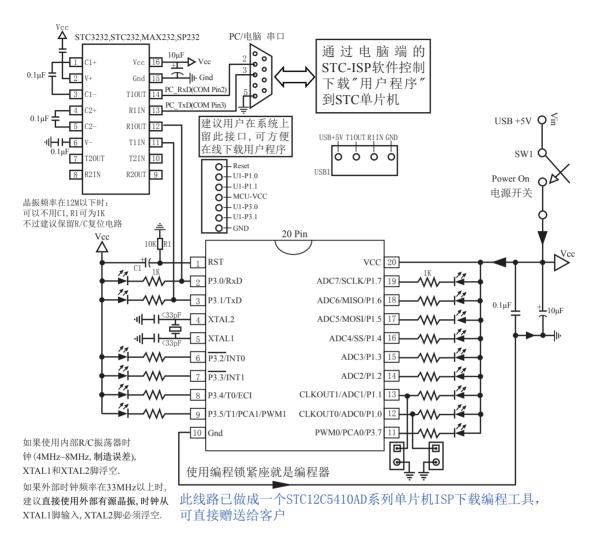


用户在自己的目标系统上,如将P3.0/P3.1经过RS-232电平转换器转换后连接到电脑的普通RS-232串口,就可以在系统编程/升级用户软件。建议如果用户板上无RS-232电平转换器,应引出一个插座,含Gnd/P3.1/P3.0/Vcc四个信号线,这样就可以在用户系统上直接编程了。当然如能引出Gnd/P3.1/P3.0/Vcc/P1.1/P1.0六个信号线为好,因为可以通过P1.0/P1.1禁止ISP下载程序。如果能将Gnd/P3.1/P3.0/Vcc/P1.1/P1.0/Reset七个信号线引出就更好了,这样可以很方便的使用"脱机下载板 (无需电脑)"。

关于ISP编程的原理及应用指南详见"STC12C5410AD系列单片机开发/编程工具说明"部分。另外我们有标准化的编程下载工具,用户可以在上面编程后再插到目标系统上,也可以借用它上面的RS-232电平转换器连接到电脑,以做下载编程之用。编程一个芯片大致需几秒钟,速度比普通的通用编程器快很多,故无须买第三方的高价编程器。

电脑端STC-ISP软件从网站 STC官方网站下载

1.6.2 STC12C5410AD系列单片机20脚典型应用电路

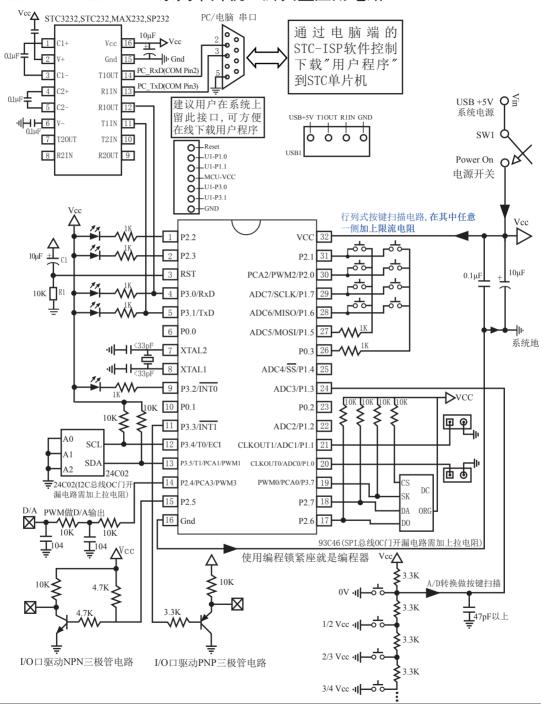


用户在自己的目标系统上,如将P3.0/P3.1经过RS-232电平转换器转换后连接到电脑的普通RS-232串口,就可以在系统编程/升级用户软件。建议如果用户板上无RS-232电平转换器,应引出一个插座,含Gnd/P3.1/P3.0/Vcc四个信号线,这样就可以在用户系统上直接编程了。当然如能引出Gnd/P3.1/P3.0/Vcc/P1.1/P1.0六个信号线为好,因为可以通过P1.0/P1.1禁止ISP下载程序。如果能将Gnd/P3.1/P3.0/Vcc/P1.1/P1.0/Reset七个信号线引出就更好了,这样可以很方便的使用"脱机下载板 (无需电脑)"。

关于ISP编程的原理及应用指南详见"STC12C5410AD系列单片机开发/编程工具说明"部分。另外我们有标准化的编程下载工具,用户可以在上面编程后再插到目标系统上,也可以借用它上面的RS-232电平转换器连接到电脑,以做下载编程之用。编程一个芯片大致需几秒钟,速度比普通的通用编程器快很多,故无须买第三方的高价编程器。

电脑端STC-ISP软件从网站 STC官方网站下载

1.6.3 STC12C5410AD系列单片机32脚典型应用电路



1.7 STC12C5410AD系列管脚说明

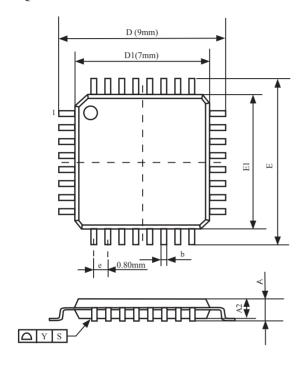
			管脚编号					
管脚	LQFP32 SOP32		SOP28/SKDIP28	SOP20/DIP20/ TSSOP20	说明			
P0.0	2	6			标准I/O口 PORT0[0]			
P0.1	6	10			标准I/O口 I	PORT0[1]		
P0.2	19	23			标准I/O口 I	PORT0[2]		
P0.3	22	26			标准I/O口 I	PORT0[3]		
					P1.0	标准I/O口 PORT1[0]		
P1.0/ADC0/					ADC0	ADC 输入通道-0		
CLKOUT0	16	20	18	12	CLKOUT0	定时器/计数器0的时钟输出 可通过设置WAKE_CLKO[0]位/ TOCLKO将该管脚配置为CLKOUT0		
					P1.1	标准I/O口 PORT1[1]		
P1.1/ADC1/					ADC1	ADC 输入通道-1		
CLKOUT1	17	21	19	13	CLKOUT1	定时器/计数器1的时钟输出 可通过设置WAKE_CLKO[1]位/ TICLKO将该管脚配置为CLKOUTI		
D1 2/ADC2	10	22	20	14	P1.2	标准I/O口 PORT1[2]		
P1.2/ADC2	18			14	ADC2	ADC 输入通道-2		
P1.3/ADC3	20	24	21	15	P1.3	标准I/O口 PORT1[3]		
F1.5/ADC3	20	24		13	ADC3	ADC 输入通道-3		
		25	22		P1.4	标准I/O口 PORT1[4]		
P1.4/ADC4/SS	21			16	ADC4	ADC 输入通道-4		
					SS	SPI同步串行接口的从机选择信号		
					P1.5	标准I/O口 PORT1[5]		
P1.5/ADC5/MOSI	23	27	23	17	ADC5	ADC 输入通道-5		
11.5/1115 C5/1110 51	23		23	1,	MOSI	SPI同步串行接口的主出从入(主器件的输出和从器件的输入)		
					P1.6	标准I/O口 PORT1[6]		
P1.6/ADC6/MISO	24	28	24	18	ADC5	ADC 输入通道-6		
11.0/112	2.		2.	10	MISO	SPI同步串行接口的主入从出(主器件的输入和从器件的输出)		
					P1.7	标准I/O口 PORT1[7]		
P1.7/ADC7/SCLK	15	29	25	19	ADC7	ADC 输入通道-7		
					SCLK	SPI同步串行接口的时钟信号		
					P2.0	标准I/O口 PORT2[0]		
P2.0/PCA2/PWM2	26	30	26		PCA2	可编程阵列输出2		
					PWM2	脉宽调制输出2		

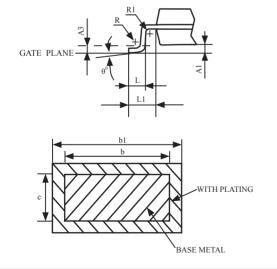
			管脚编号				
管脚	LQFP32	SOP32	SOP28/SKDIP28	SOP20/DIP20/ TSSOP-20	说明		
P2.1	27	31	27		标准I/O口	PORT2[1]	
P2.2	29	1	1			PORT2[2]	
P2.3	30	2	2		 	PORT2[3]	
					P2.4	标准I/O口 PORT2[4]	
P2.4/PCA3/PWM3	10	14	12		PCA3	可编程阵列输出3	
					PWM3	脉宽调制输出3	
P2.5	11	15	13		标准I/O口	PORT2[5]	
P2.6	13	17	15			PORT2[6]	
P2.7	14	18	16		标准I/O口	PORT2[7]	
				_	P3.0	标准I/O口 PORT3[0]	
P3.0/RxD	32	4	4	2	RxD	串口数据接收端	
	_		_		P3.1	标准I/O口 PORT3[1]	
P3.1/TxD	1	5	5	3	TxD	串口数据发送端	
					P3.2	标准I/O口 PORT3[2]	
P3.2/ <u>INT0</u>	5	9	8	6	ĪNT0	外部中断0,下降沿中断或低电平中断	
					P3.3	标准I/O口 PORT3[3]	
P3.3/ <u>INT1</u>	7	11	9	7	ĪNT1	外部中断1,下降沿中断或低电平中 断	
		12			P3.4	标准I/O口 PORT3[4]	
P3.4/T0/ECI	8		10	8	Т0	定时器/计数器0的外部输入	
					ECI	PCA计数器的外部脉冲输入脚	
					P3.5	标准I/O口 PORT3[5]	
P3.5/T1/PCA1/PWM1	9	12	11	9	T1	定时器/计数器1的外部输入	
P3.3/11/PCA1/PWM11	9	13	11	9	PCA1	可编程阵列输出1	
					PWM1	脉宽调制输出1	
					P3.7	标准I/O口 PORT3[7]	
P3.7/PCA0/PWM0	15	19	17	11	PCA0	可编程阵列输出0	
					PWM0	脉宽调制输出0	
RST	31	3	3	1	复位脚		
XTAL1	4	8	7	5	内部时钟电路反相放大器输入端,接外部晶振的一个引脚。当直接使用外部时钟源时,此引脚是外部时钟源的输入端。		
XTAL2	3	7	6	4	内部时钟电路反相放大器的输出端,接外部 振的另一端。当直接使用外部时钟源时,此引脚可浮空,此时XTAL2实际将XTAL1输入的时争进行输出。		
VCC	28	32	28	20	电源正极		
Gnd	12	16	14	10	电源负极,	接地	

1.8 STC12C5410AD系列单片机封装尺寸图

LQFP-32 封装尺寸图

LQFP-32 OUTLINE PACKAGE





VARIATIONS (ALL DIMENSIONS SHOWN IN MM)

`			
SYMBOLS	MIN.	NOM	MAX.
A	1.45	1.55	1.65
A1	0.01	-	0.21
A2	1.35	1.40	1.45
A3	-	0.254	-
D	8.80	9.00	9.20
D1	6.90	7.00	7.10
Е	8.80	9.00	9.20
E1	6.90	7.00	7.10
e		0.80	
b	0.3	0.35	0.4
b1	0.31	0.37	0.43
С	-	0.127	-
L	0.43	-	0.71
L1	0.90	1.00	1.10
R	0.1	-	0.25
R1	0.1	-	-
θ_0	00	-	10°

NOTES:

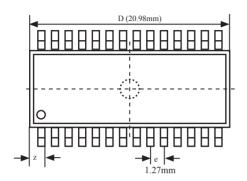
- 1. All dimensions are in mm
- 2. Dim D1 AND E1 does not include plastic flash.

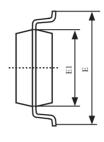
Flash:Plastic residual around body edge after de junk/singulation

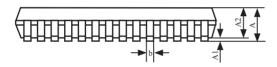
- 3. Dim b does not include dambar protrusion/intrusion.
- 4. Plating thickness 0.05~0.015 mm.

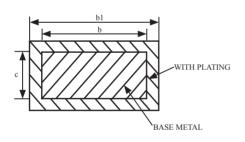
SOP-32 封装尺寸图

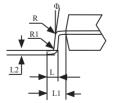
32-Pin Small Outline Package (SOP-32) Dimensions in Millimeters







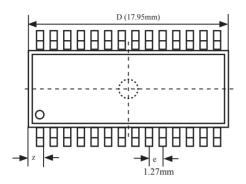


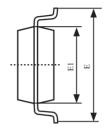


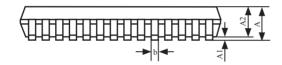
COMMON DIMENSIONS									
(UNITS OF MEASURE = MILLMETER)									
SYMBOL	MIN	MAX							
A	2.465	2.515	2.565						
A1	0.100	0.150	0.200						
A2	2.100	2.300	2.500						
b	0.356	0.406	0.456						
b1	0.366	0.426	0.486						
С	-	0.254	-						
D	20.88	20.98	21.08						
Е	9.980	10.180	10.380						
E1	7.390	7.500	7.600						
e		1.27							
L	0.700	0.800	0.900						
L1	1.303	1.403	1.503						
L2	-	0.274	-						
R	-	0.200	-						
R1	-	0.300	-						
Φ	00	-	10^{0}						
Z	-	0.745	-						

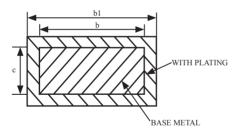
SOP-28 封装尺寸图

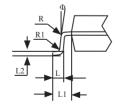
28-Pin Small Outline Package (SOP-28) Dimensions in Millimeters







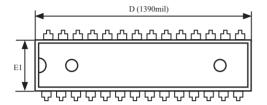




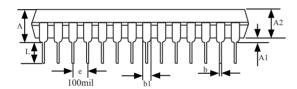
COMMON DIMENSIONS						
(UNITS OF MEASURE = MILLMETER)						
SYMBOL	MIN	NOM	MAX			
A	2.465	2.515	2.565			
A1	0.100	0.150	0.200			
A2	2.100	2.300	2.500			
b	0.356	0.456				
b1	0.366	0.426	0.486			
c	-	0.254	-			
D	17.750	17.950	18.150			
Е	10.100	10.300	10.500			
E1	7.424	7.500	7.624			
e	1.27					
L	0.764	0.864	0.964			
L1	1.303	1.403	1.503			
L2	-	0.274	-			
R	R - 0.200		-			
R1	- 0.300		-			
Φ	00	-	10°			
Z	-	0.745	-			

SKDIP-28 封装尺寸图

28-Pin Plastic Dual-In-line Package (SKDIP-28) Dimensions in Inches and Millmeters





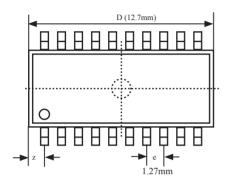


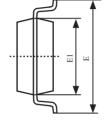
COMMON DIMENSIONS					
(UNITS OF MEASURE = INCH)					
SYMBOL	MIN	NOM	MAX		
A	-	-	0.210		
A1	0.015	-	-		
A2	0.125	0.130	0.135		
b	-	0.018	-		
b1	-	0.060	-		
D	1.385	1.390	1.40		
Е	-	0.310	-		
E1	0.283	0.288	0.293		
e	-	0.100	-		
L	0.115	0.130	0.150		
θ_0	0	7	15		
eA	0.330	0.350	0.370		

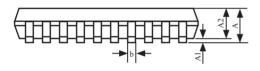
UNIT: INCH 1inch = 1000mil

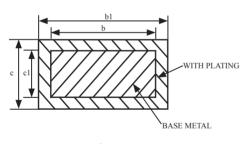
SOP-20 封装尺寸图

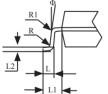
20-Pin Small Outline Package (SOP-20) Dimensions in Inches and (Millimeters)







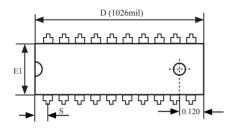


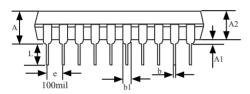


COMMON DIMENSIONS						
(UNITS OF MEASURE = MILLMETER)						
SYMBOL	MIN	NOM	MAX			
A	2.465	2.515	2.565			
A1	0.100	0.150	0.200			
A2	2.100	2.300	2.500			
b1	0.366	0.426	0.486			
b	0.356	0.456				
c	0.234	0.274				
c1	0.224	0.254	0.274			
D	12.500	12.700	12.900			
Е	10.206	10.306	10.406			
E1	7.450	7.500	7.550			
e	1.270					
L	0.800	0.864	0.900			
L1	1.303	1.403	1.503			
L2	- 0.274 -					
R	- 0.300 -					
R1	-	0.200	-			
Φ	00	-	100			
Z	-	0.660	-			

PDIP-20 封装尺寸图

20-Pin Plastic Dual Inline Package (PDIP-20) Dimensions in Inches





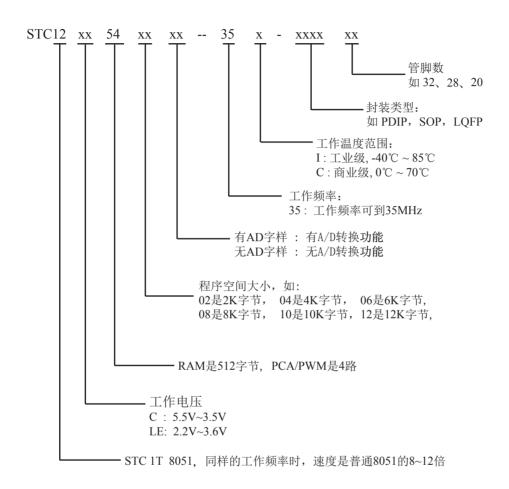


COMMON DIMENSIONS					
(UNITS OF MEASURE = INCH)					
SYMBOL	MIN	NOM	MAX		
A	-	-	0.175		
A1	0.015	-	-		
A2	0.125	0.13	0.135		
b	0.016	0.018	0.020		
b1	0.058	0.060	0.064		
С	0.008	0.010	0.11		
D	1.012	1.026	1.040		
Е	0.290	0.300	0.310		
E1	0.245	0.250	0.255		
e	0.090	0.100	0.110		
L	0.120	0.130	0.140		
θ_0	0	-	15		
eA	0.355	0.355	0.375		
S	-	-	0.075		

UNIT: INCH

1 inch = 1000 mil

1.9 STC12C5410AD系列单片机命名规则



1.10 每个单片机具有全球唯一身份证号码(ID号)

STC最新一代STC12C5410AD系列每一个单片机出厂时都具有全球唯一身份证号码(ID号),用户可以在单片机上电后读取内部RAM单元从F1H-F7H连续7个单元的值来获取此单片机的唯一身份证号码(ID号),使用"MOV @Ri"指令来读取。如果用户需要用全球唯一ID号进行用户自己的软件加密,建议用户在程序的多个地方有技巧地判断自己的用户程序有无被非法修改,提高解密的难度,防止解密者修改程序,绕过对全球唯一ID号的判断。

//读内部ID号的C语言参考程序

```
/* --- STC MCU Limited -----
/* --- STC 姚永平 2009/2/7 V1.0 -----
/* --- STC12C5201AD 系列单片机,软件实现自定义下载程序-----*/
/* --- 本演示程序在STC-ISP Ver 3.0A.PCB的下载编程工具上测试通过 ----- */
/* --- 如果要在程序中使用该程序,请在程序中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 - */
/* --- 如果要在文章中引用该程序,请在文章中注明使用了STC的资料及程序-- */
#include<reg51.h>
#include<intrins.h>
sfr
       ISP CONTR
                    = 0xE7;
sbit
       MCU Start Led = P1^7;
//unsigned
              char
                     self command array[4] = \{0x22,0x33,0x44,0x55\};
#define Self Define ISP Download Command
                                           0x22
#define RELOAD COUNT
                             0xfb
                                           //18.432MHz.12T.SMOD=0.9600bps
       serial port initial();
void
void
       send UART(unsigned char);
       UART Interrupt Receive(void);
void
       soft reset to ISP Monitor(void);
void
void
       delay(void);
       display MCU Start Led(void);
void
void main(void)
{
       unsigned char i = 0;
       unsigned char j = 0;
       unsigned char idata *idata point;
```

```
serial port initial();
                                          //串口初始化
//
       display MCU Start Led();
                                          //点亮发光二极管表示单片机开始工作
//
       send UART(0x34);
                                          //串口发送数据表示单片机串口正常工作
//
       send UART(0xa7);
                                          //串口发送数据表示单片机串口正常工作
       idata point = 0xF1;
       for(j=0;j<=6; j++)
              i = *idata point;
              send UART(i);
              idata point++;
       while(1);
}
void serial port initial()
       SCON = 0x50;
                                          //0101,0000 8位可变波特率, 无奇偶校验位
       TMOD = 0x21;
                                          //0011,0001 设置顶时器1为8位自动重装计数器
       TH1
             = RELOAD COUNT;
                                          //设置定时器1自动重装数
       TL1
             = RELOAD COUNT;
       TR1
                                          //开定时器1
             = 1;
       ES
             = 1;
                                          //允许串口中断
       EΑ
              = 1;
                                          //开总中断
}
void send UART(unsigned char i)
{
       ES
              = 0:
                                          //关串口中断
                                          //清零串口发送完成中断请求标志
       ΤI
              = 0:
       SBUF = i;
       while(TI == 0);
                                          //等待发送完成
       ΤI
              = 0;
                                          //清零串口发送完成中断请求标志
                                          //允许串口中断
       ES
              = 1;
}
void UART Interrupt Receive(void) interrupt 4
       unsigned char k = 0;
       if(RI==1)
              RI = 0;
              k = SBUF;
```

```
if(k==Self Define ISP Download Command)
                                                              //是自定义下载命令
                                                              //延时1秒就足够了
                       delay();
                       delay();
                                                              //延时1秒就足够了
                       soft reset to ISP Monitor();
                                                              //软复位到系统ISP监控区
               send UART(k);
       else
               TI = 0;
}
void soft reset to ISP Monitor(void)
       ISP CONTR = 0x60;
                                                      //0110,0000 软复位到系统ISP监控区
void delay(void)
       unsigned int j = 0;
       unsigned int g = 0;
       for(j=0;j<5;j++)
               for(g=0;g<60000;g++)
                       _nop_();
                       _nop_();
                       _nop_();
                       _nop_();
                       _nop_();
               }
void display MCU Start Led(void)
       unsigned char i = 0;
       for(i=0;i<3;i++)
               MCU Start Led = 0;
                                                      //顶亮MCU开始工作指示灯
               delay();
               MCU Start Led = 1;
                                                      //熄灭MCU开始工作指示灯
               delay();
               MCU Start Led = 0;
                                                      //顶亮MCU开始工作指示灯
```

第2章 时钟, 省电模式及复位

2.1 STC12C5410AD系列单片机的时钟

2.1.1 STC12C5410AD系列单片机内部/外部工作时钟可选

STC12C5410AD系列是1T的8051单片机,系统时钟兼容传统8051。

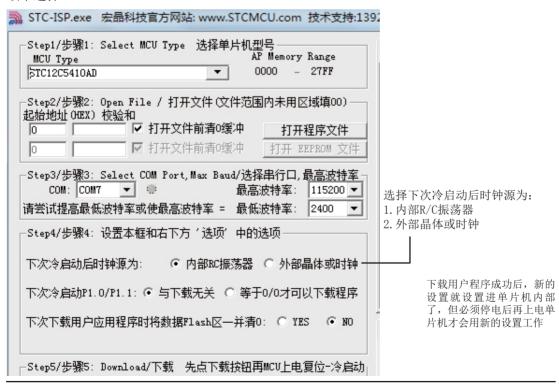
STC12C5410AD系列单片机有两个时钟源:内部R/C振荡时钟和外部晶体时钟。现STC-12C5410AD系列出厂标准配置是使用芯片外部晶体或时钟.片内R/C振荡时钟在5V单片机常温下频率是5MHz~6.9MHz,因为随着温度的变化,内部R/C振荡时钟的频率会有一些温飘,再加上制造误差,故内部R/C振荡时钟只适用于对时钟频率要求不敏感的场合.

在对STC12C5410AD系列单片机进行ISP下载用户程序时,可以在选项中选择:

"下次冷启动后时钟源为外部晶体或时钟"

这样下载完用户程序后,停电,再冷启动后单片机的工作时钟使用的就不是内部R/C振荡器,而是外部晶体振荡后产生的高精度时钟了(接在XTAL1/XTAL2管脚上),也可以直接从XTAL1脚输入外部时钟,XTAL2脚浮空。用户以后外部必须接晶体或时钟单片机才可以工作。

如果已被设置成用外部晶体或时钟工作的单片机,还要再设回使用内部R/C振荡器工作,则需给单片机外接晶体或时钟,再对STC12C5410AD系列单片机进行ISP下载用户程序时在选项中选择:



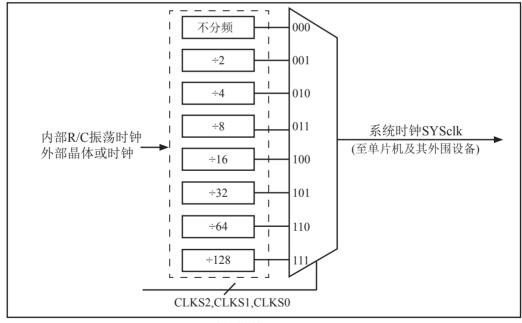
2.1.2 时钟分频及分频寄存器

如果希望降低系统功耗,可对时钟进行分频。利用时钟分频控制寄存器CLK_DIV可进行时钟分频,从而使单片机在较低频率下工作。

时钟分频寄存器CLK DIV各位的定义如下:

SFR Name	SFR Address	bit	В7	В6	B5	В4	В3	B2	B1	В0
CLK_DIV	С7Н	name	-	-	-	-	-	CLKS2	CLKS1	CLKS0

CLKS2	CLKS1	CLKS0	分频后CPU的实际工作时钟
0	0	0	外部晶体时钟或内部R/C振荡时钟
0	0	1	(外部晶体时钟或内部R/C振荡时钟)/2
0	1	0	(外部晶体时钟或内部R/C振荡时钟)/4
0	1	1	(外部晶体时钟或内部R/C振荡时钟)/8
1	0	0	(外部晶体时钟或内部R/C振荡时钟)/16
1	0	1	(外部晶体时钟或内部R/C振荡时钟)/32
1	1	0	(外部晶体时钟或内部R/C振荡时钟)/64
1	1	1	(外部晶体时钟或内部R/C振荡时钟)/128



时钟结构

STC12C5410AD系列单片机可以在空闲模式时分频工作,也可以在正常工作时分频。

2.1.3 如何知道单片机内部R/C振荡频率(内部时钟频率)

STC最新一代STC12C5410AD系列单片机除了可以使用传统的外部时钟外,还可以选择内部R/C振荡器时钟源(内部时钟). 如果选择单片机工作在内部R/C振荡器频率(内部时钟频率),则可以省掉外部晶振。这时XTAL1/XTAL2浮空. 但由于使用内部时钟源误差较大,所以在对时序要求较高或者有串行通信的情况下不建议使用内部R/C时钟源。在上电初始化程序时,我们可以通过读取内部RAM单元(FCH, FDH, FEH, FFH连续四个单元)的值来获取单片机出厂时的内部R/C振荡器频率(内部时钟频率)。可以通过读取内部RAM单元(F8H,F9H,FAH,FBH连续四个单元)的值来获取用户最后一次使用内部R/C振荡器时钟下载程序时的频率(内部时钟频率),使用"MOV @Ri"指令来读取。

//读内部R/C时钟频率的C语言参考程序

```
/* --- STC MCU Limited ----
/* --- STC12C5201AD 系列单片机, 软件实现自定义下载程序-----
/* --- 本演示程序在STC-ISP Ver 3.0A PCB的下载编程工具上测试通过 ----- */
/* --- 如果要在程序中使用该程序,请在程序中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 - */
/* --- 如果要在文章中引用该程序,请在文章中注明使用了STC的资料及程序-- */
#include<reg51.h>
#include<intrins.h>
sfr
       IAP CONTR = 0xC7;
sbit
       MCU Start Led = P1^7;
               char
                      self command array[4] = \{0x22,0x33,0x44,0x55\};
//unsigned
#define Self Define ISP Download Command
                                             0x22
#define RELOAD COUNT
                              0xfb
                                             //18.432MHz,12T,SMOD=0,9600bps
void
       serial port initial();
void
       send UART(unsigned char);
void
       UART Interrupt Receive(void);
void
       soft reset to ISP Monitor(void);
void
       delay(void):
void
       display MCU Start Led(void);
void main(void)
{
        unsigned char i = 0;
       unsigned char j = 0;
        unsigned char idata *idata point;
```

```
serial port initial();
                                          //串口初始化
//
       display MCU Start Led();
                                          //点亮发光二极管表示单片机开始工作
//
       send UART(0x34);
                                          //串口发送数据表示单片机串口正常工作
//
       send UART(0xa7);
                                          //串口发送数据表示单片机串口正常工作
       idata point = 0xF8;
       for(j=0;j<=3;j++)
              i = *idata point;
              send UART(i);
              idata point++;
       while(1);
}
void serial port initial()
       SCON
              = 0x50;
                                          //0101,0000 8位可变波特率, 无奇偶校验位
       TMOD = 0x21;
                                          //0011,0001 设置顶时器1为8位自动重装计数器
       TH1
              = RELOAD COUNT;
                                          //设置定时器1自动重装数
       TL1
              = RELOAD COUNT;
       TR1
              = 1;
                                          //开定时器1
       ES
              = 1;
                                          //允许串口中断
                                          //开总中断
       EA
              = 1;
}
void send UART(unsigned char i)
                                          //关串口中断
       ES
              = 0;
       ΤI
              = 0:
                                          //清零串口发送完成中断请求标志
       SBUF
              = i:
       while(TI == 0);
                                          //等待发送完成
                                          //清零串口发送完成中断请求标志
       ΤI
              = 0:
                                          //允许串口中断
       ES
              = 1;
}
void UART Interrupt Receive(void) interrupt 4
{
       unsigned char k = 0;
       if(RI==1)
       {
              RI = 0;
              k = SBUF;
```

```
if(k==Self Define ISP Download Command)
                                                              //是自定义下载命令
                       delay();
                                                              //延时1秒就足够了
                       delay();
                                                              //延时1秒就足够了
                       soft reset to ISP Monitor();
                                                              //软复位到系统ISP监控区
               send UART(k);
       else
               TI = 0;
void soft reset to ISP Monitor(void)
       IAP CONTR = 0x60;
                                                      //0110,0000 软复位到系统ISP监控区
void delay(void)
       unsigned int j = 0;
       unsigned int g = 0;
       for(j=0;j<5;j++)
               for(g=0;g<60000;g++)
                       nop ();
                       _nop_();
                       nop ();
                       _nop_();
                       _nop_();
void display MCU Start Led(void)
       unsigned char i = 0;
       for(i=0;i<3;i++)
               MCU Start Led = 0;
                                                      //顶亮MCU开始工作指示灯
               delay();
               MCU Start Led = 1;
                                                      //熄灭MCU开始工作指示灯
               delay();
                                                      //顶亮MCU开始工作指示灯
               MCU Start Led = 0;
}
```

2.1.4 可编程时钟输出

STC12C5410AD系列单片机有2三路可编程时钟输出:CLKOUT0/P1.0, CLKOUT1/P1.1

与可编程时钟输出有关的特殊功能寄存器:

AUXR: Auxiliary register

SFR Name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	B4	В3	B2	B1	В0
AUXR	8EH	name	T0x12	T1x12	UART_M0x6	EADCI	ESPI	ELVDI	-	-

WAKE CLKO: Clock output and Power-down Wakeup Control register

SFR Name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	В4	ВЗ	В2	B1	В0
WAKE_CLKO	8FH	name	PCAWAKEUP	RXD_PIN_IE	T1_PIN_IE	T0_PIN_IE	-	-	T1CLKO	T0CLKO

特殊功能寄存器AUXR/WAKE CLKO/BRT的C语言声明:

sfr AUXR = 0x8E; //特殊功能寄存器AUXR的地址声明

sfr WAKE CLKO = 0x8F; //新增加特殊功能寄存器WAKE CLKO的地址声明

特殊功能寄存器IRC CLKO/INT CLKO/AUXR的汇编语言声明:

AUXR EQU 8EH ;特殊功能寄存器AUXR的地址声明

WAKE_CLKO EQU 8FH ;新增加的特殊功能寄存器WAKE_CLKO的地址声明

如何利用CLKOUT0/P1.0和CLKOUT1/P1.1管脚输出时钟:

CLKOUT0/P1.0和CLKOUT1/P1.1的时钟输出控制由WAKE_CLKO寄存器的T0CLKO位和T1CLKO位控制。CLKOUT0的输出时钟频率由定时器0控制, CLKOUT1的输出时钟频率由定时器1控制, 相应的定时器需要工作在定时器的模式2方式(8位自动重装载模式),不要允许相应的定时器中断,免得CPU反复进中断.

新增加的特殊功能寄存器: WAKE CLKO(地址: 0x8F)

WAKE_CLKO: Clock output and Power-down Wakeup Control register (不可位寻址)

SFR Name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	B4	В3	B2	B1	В0
WAKE_CLKO	8FH	name	PCAWAKEUP	RXD_PIN_IE	T1_PIN_IE	T0_PIN_IE	-	-	T1CLKO	T0CLKO

B7 - PCAWAKEUP: 在掉电模式下,是否允许PCA上升沿/下降沿中断唤醒powerdown。

0: 禁止PCA上升沿/下降沿中断唤醒powerdown;

1: 允许PCA上升沿/下降沿中断唤醒powerdown。

B6-RXD_PIN_IE: 掉电模式下,允许P3.0(RXD)下降沿置RI,也能使RXD唤醒powerdown.

0: 禁止P3.0(RXD)下降沿置RI, 也禁止RXD唤醒powerdown;

1: 允许P3.0(RXD)下降沿置RI, 也允许RXD唤醒powerdown。

- B5-T1 PIN IE: 掉电模式下,允许T1/P3.5脚下降沿置T1中断标志,也能使T1脚唤醒powerdown.
 - 0: 禁止T1/P3.5脚下降沿置T1中断标志,也禁止T1脚唤醒powerdown;
 - 1: 允许T1/P3.5脚下降沿置T1中断标志,也允许T1脚唤醒powerdown。
- B4-T0 PIN IE: 掉电模式下,允许T0/P3.4脚下降沿置T0中断标志,也能使T0脚唤醒powerdown.
 - 0: 禁止T0/P3.4脚下降沿置T0中断标志,也禁止T0脚唤醒powerdown;
 - 1: 允许T0/P3.4脚下降沿置T0中断标志,也允许T0脚唤醒powerdown。
- B1-T1CLKO: 是否允许将P1.1/ADC1脚配置为定时器T1的时钟输出CLKOUT1
 - 1: 允许将P1.1脚配置为定时器T1的时钟输出CLKOUT1,此时定时器T1只能工作在模式2(8位自动重装模式),CLKOUT1输出时钟频率=T1溢出率/2如果C/T=0,定时器/计数器T1是对内部系统时钟计数,则:T1工作在1T模式时的输出频率=SYSclk/(256-TH1)/2T1工作在12T模式时的输出频率=SYSclk/12/(256-TH1)/2如果C/T=1,定时器/计数器T1是对外部脉冲输入(P3.5/T1)计数,则:输出时钟频率=(T1 Pin CLK)/(256-TH1)/2
 - 0: 不允许将P1.1脚配置为定时器T1的时钟输出CLKOUT1
- B0-T0CLKO: 是否允许将P1.0/ADC0脚配置为定时器T0的时钟输出CLKOUT0
 - 1: 允许将P1.0脚配置为定时器T0的时钟输出CLKOUT0, 此时定时器T0只能工作 在模式2(8位自动重装模式), CLKOUT0输出时钟频率 = T0溢出率 / 2 如果C/T=0, 定时器/计数器T0是对内部系统时钟计数,则: T0工作在1T 模式时的输出频率 = SYSclk / (256 TH0) / 2 T0工作在12T模式时的输出频率 = SYSclk / 12 / (256 TH0) / 2 如果C/T=1,定时器/计数器T0是对外部脉冲输入(P3.4/T0)计数,则:输出时钟频率 = (T0 Pin CLK) / (256-TH0) / 2
 - 0: 不允许将P1.0脚配置为定时器T0的时钟输出CLKOUT0

特殊功能寄存器: AUXR(地址: 0x8E)

AUXR: Auxiliary register (不可位寻址)

SFR Name	Address	bit	В7	В6	B5	B4	В3	B2	B1	В0
AUXR	8EH	name	T0x12	T1x12	UART_M0x6	EADCI	ESPI	ELVDI	-	-

B7-T0x12: 定时器0速度控制位。

- 0: 定时器0速度是8051单片机定时器的速度,即12分频;
- 1: 定时器0速度是8051单片机定时器速度的12倍,即不分频。
- B6-T1x12: 定时器1速度控制位。
 - 0: 定时器1速度是8051单片机定时器的速度,即12分频;
 - 1: 定时器1速度是8051单片机定时器速度的12倍,即不分频。

如果UART串口用T1作为波特率发生器,则由T1x12位决定UART串口是12T还是1T。

- B5 UART M0x6: 串口模式0的通信速度设置位。
 - 0: UART串口模式0的速度是传统8051单片机串口的速度,即12分频:
 - 1: UART串口模式0的速度是传统8051单片机串口速度的6倍,即2分频。

STC12C5201AD系列是 1T 的8051单片机, **为了兼容传统**8051, UART串口复位后是兼容传统 8051的

- B4-EADCI: A/D中断允许控制位。
 - 0: 禁止A/D中断;
 - 1: 允许A/D中断。
- B3-ESPI: SPI中断允许控制位。
 - 0: 禁止SPI中断:
 - 1: 允许SPI中断。
- B2-ELVDI: 低压检测中断允许控制位。
 - 0: 禁止低压检测中断:
 - 1: 允许低压检测中断。

5V单片机, 3.7V以下为低压, 3V单片机, 2.4V以下为低压。如ELVDI=1(允许低压检测中断),则会产生低压检测中断。

```
/* 本程序演示CLKOUTO/INT/TO/P3. 4, CLKOUT1/INT/T1/P3. 5, CLKOUT2/P1. 0输出时钟演示程序*/
/* 时钟频率 SYSc1k = 18.432MHz, TO, T1, 独立波特率发生器均工作在12T 模式*/
#include"reg51.h"
sfr WAKE CLKO = 0x8F:
sfr AUXR = 0x8E:
main()
/* 附加的 SFR WAKE CLKO (地址: 0x8F)
B7 - PCAWAKEUP: 允许 PCA 上升沿 / 下降沿中断 唤醒 powerdown。
B6 - RXD PIN IE: 1, 允许 RxD/P3.0(或RxD/P1.6)下降沿置RI, 也能使RxD脚唤醒 powerdown。
B5 - T1 PIN IE: 1, 允许 T1/P3.5脚下降沿置T1中断标志, 也能使T1脚唤醒 powerdown。
B4 - T0 PIN IE: 1, 允许 T0/P3,4脚下降沿置T0中断标志,也能使T0脚唤醒 powerdown。
B3 - N/A
B2 - N/A:
B1 - T1CLKO:
      1. 允许 P1.1 脚输出 T1(P3.5) 的溢出脉冲,输出时钟频率 = 1/2 T1 溢出率
             T1 工作在1T 模式时的输出频率CLKOUT1 =( SYSclk / 2 ) / ( 256 - TH1 )
             T1 工作在12T 模式时的输出频率CLKOUT1 = ( SYSclk / 2 ) / 12 / ( 256 - TH1 )
      0, 不允许平P1.1脚输出 T1(P3.5) 溢出脉冲
BO - TOCLKO:
      1. 允许P1.0脚输出 T0(P3.4) 溢出脉冲,输出时钟频率 = 1/2 T0 溢出率
             TO 工作在1T 模式时的输出频率CLKOUTO =( SYSclk / 2 ) / ( 256 - THO )
             TO 工作在12T 模式时的输出频率CLKOUTO = (SYSclk / 2) / 12 / (256 - THO)
      0, 不允许P1.0脚输出 T0(P3.4) 溢出脉冲
*/
//
      AUXR = 0xC0:
                                 //1T 模式
      WAKE CLKO = (WAKE CLKO | 0x03 \rangle; //允许T0, T1
                                 //T0, T1 工作在模式2, 8 位自动重装计数器
      TMOD = 0x22;
      TL0 = 0xFF:
      THO = OxFF;
                                 //启动T0开始计数工作,对系统时钟进行分频输出
      TR0 = 1;
      TH1 = 0xFE:
      TL1 = 0xFE;
                                 //启动T1开始计数工作,对系统时钟进行分频输出
      TR1 = 1:
      while(1):
```

2.2 STC12C5410AD系列单片机的省电模式

STC12C5410AD系列单片机可以运行3种省电模式以降低功耗,它们分别是:空闲模式,低速模式和掉电模式。正常工作模式下,STC12C5410AD系列单片机的典型功耗是2.7mA~7mA,而掉电模式下的典型功耗是<0.1uA,空闲模式下的典型功耗是<1.8mA.

低速模式由时钟分频器CLK_DIV控制,而空闲模式和掉电模式的进入由电源控制寄存器PCON的相应位控制。PCON寄存器定义如下:

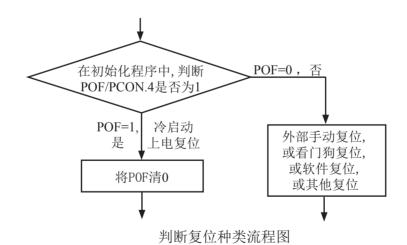
PCON (Power Control Register) (不可位寻址)

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	B5	B4	В3	B2	B1	В0
PCON	87H	name	SMOD	SMOD0	LVDF	POF	GF1	GF0	PD	IDL

LVDF: 低压检测标志位, 同时也是低压检测中断请求标志位。

如果内部工作电压Vcc低于低压检测门槛电压,该位自动置1,与低压检测中断是否被允许无关。即在内部工作电压Vcc低于低压检测门槛电压时,不管有没有允许低压检测中断,该位都自动为1。该位要用软件清0,清0后,如内部工作电压Vcc继续低于低压检测门槛电压,该位又被自动设置为1。

POF: 上电复位标志位,单片机停电后,上电复位标志位为1,可由软件清0。 实际应用: 要判断是上电复位(冷启动),还是外部复位脚输入复位信号产生的复位,还是内部看门狗复位,还是软件复位或者其他复位,可通过如下方法来判断:



- PD: 将其置1时,进入Power Down模式,可由外部中断低电平触发或下降沿触发唤醒,进入掉电模式时,内部时钟停振,由于无时钟CPU、定时器、串行口等功能部件停止工作,只有外部中断继续工作。可将CPU从掉电模式唤醒的外部管脚有: INTO/P3.2, INT1/P3.3, ECI/T0/P3.4, PWM1/PCA1/T1/P3.5, RxD/P3.0, PWM0/PCA0/P3.7, PWM2/PCA2/P2.0, PWM3/PCA3/P2.4。掉电模式也叫停机模式,此时功耗<0.1uA
- IDL:将其置1,进入IDLE模式(空闲),除系统不给CPU供时钟,CPU不执行指令外,其余功能部件仍可继续工作,可由外部中断、定时器中断、低压检测中断及A/D转换中断中的任何一个中断唤醒。可将CPU从空闲模式(IDLE模式)唤醒的外部中断脚有:

INTO/P3.2, INT1/P3.3, T0/P3.4,T1/P3.5, RxD/P3.0, 内部定时器Timer0, Timer1也可以将单片机从空闲模式唤醒, 串行口中断(UART)也可以将单片机从空闲模式唤醒,

GF1,GF0: 两个通用工作标志位,用户可以任意使用。

SMOD, SMOD0: 与电源控制无关,与串口有关,在此不作介绍。

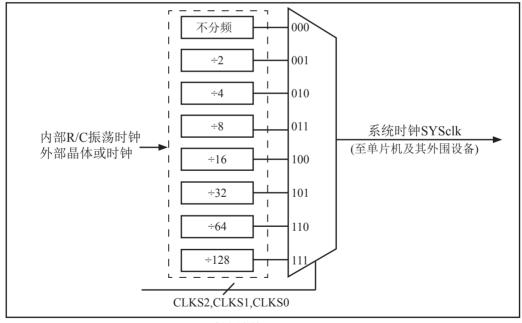
2.2.1 低速模式

时钟分频器可以对系统时钟(外部晶体时钟或内部R/C振荡时钟)进行分频,从而降低工作时钟频率,降低功耗,降低EMI。

时钟分频寄存器CLK DIV各位的定义如下:

SFR Name	SFR Address	bit	В7	В6	B5	В4	В3	B2	B1	В0
CLK_DIV	С7Н	name	-	-	-	-	-	CLKS2	CLKS1	CLKS0

CLKS2	CLKS1	CLKS0	分频后CPU的实际工作时钟
0	0	0	外部晶体时钟或内部R/C振荡时钟
0	0	1	(外部晶体时钟或内部R/C振荡时钟)/2
0	1	0	(外部晶体时钟或内部R/C振荡时钟)/4
0	1	1	(外部晶体时钟或内部R/C振荡时钟)/8
1	0	0	(外部晶体时钟或内部R/C振荡时钟)/16
1	0	1	(外部晶体时钟或内部R/C振荡时钟)/32
1	1	0	(外部晶体时钟或内部R/C振荡时钟)/64
1	1	1	(外部晶体时钟或内部R/C振荡时钟)/128



时钟结构

2.2.2 空闲模式

将IDL/PCON.0置为1,单片机将进入IDLE(空闲)模式。在空闲模式下,仅CPU无时钟停止工作,但是外部中断、外部低压检测电路、定时器、A/D转换、串行口等仍正常运行。而看门狗在空闲模式下是否工作取决于其自身有一个"IDLE"模式位: IDLE_WDT(WDT_CONTR.3)。当IDLE_WDT位被设置为"1"时,看门狗定时器在"空闲模式"计数,即正常工作。当IDLE_WDT位被清"0"时,看门狗定时器在"空闲模式"时不计数,即停止工作。在空闲模式下,RAM、堆栈指针(SP)、程序计数器(PC)、程序状态字(PSW)、累加器(A)等寄存器都保持原有数据。I/O口保持着空闲模式被激活前那一刻的逻辑状态。空闲模式下单片机的所有外围设备都能正常运行(除CPU无时钟不工作外)。当任何一个中断产生时,它们都可以将单片机唤醒,单片机被唤醒后,CPU将继续执行进入空闲模式语句的下一条指令。

有两种方式可以退出空闲模式。任何一个中断的产生都会引起IDL/PCON.0被硬件清除,从而退出空闲模式。另一个退出空闲模式的方法是:外部RST引脚复位,将复位脚拉高,产生复位。这种拉高复位引脚来产生复位的信号源需要被保持24个时钟加上10us,才能产生复位,再将RST引脚拉低,结束复位,单片机从用户程序的0000H处开始正常工作。

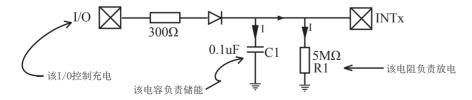
2.2.3 掉电模式/停机模式

将PD/PCON.1置为1,单片机将进入Power Down(掉电)模式,掉电模式也叫停机模式。进入掉电模式后,内部时钟停振,由于无时钟源,CPU、定时器、看门狗、A/D转换、串行口等停止工作,外部中断继续工作。如果低压检测电路被允许可产生中断,则低压检测电路也可继续工作,否则将停止工作。进入掉电模式后,所有I/O口、SFRs(特殊功能寄存器)维持进入掉电模式前那一刻的状态不变。

可将CPU从掉电模式唤醒的外部管脚有: INT0/P3.2, INT1/P3.3, ECI/T0/P3.4, PWM1/PCA1/T1/P3.5, RxD/P3.0, PWM0/PCA0/P3.7, PWM2/PCA2/P2.0, PWM3/PCA3/P2.4。

另外,外部复位也将MCU从掉电模式中唤醒,复位唤醒后的MCU将从用户程序的0000H处开始正常工作。

当用户系统无外部中断源将单片机从掉电模式唤醒时,下面的电路能够定时唤醒掉电模式。



控制充电的I/O口首先配置为推挽/强上拉模式并置高,上面的电路会给储能电容C1充电。在单片机进入掉电模式之前,将控制充电的I/O口拉低,上面电路通过电阻R1给储能电容C1放电。当电容C1的电被放到小于0.8V时,外部中断INTx会产生一个下降沿中断,从而自动地将单片机从掉电模式中唤醒。

2.2.4 由外部中断0唤醒掉电模式的测试程序(C程序和汇编程序)

1. C程序

```
/*由外部中断0唤醒掉电模式的示例程序 -----*/
/*_____*/
/* --- STC MCU Limited -----*/
/* --- 演示STC 1T 系列单片机由外部中断0唤醒掉电模式 -----*/
/*如果要在程序中使用或在文章中引用该程序 -----*/
/*请在程序中或文章中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 -----*/
/*_____*/
#include "reg51.h"
#include "intrins.h"
//External interrupt0 service routine
void exint0() interrupt 0
                                   //interrupt 0 (location at 0003H)
void main()
      IT0 = 1:
                                   //set INT0 int type (1:Falling 0:Low level)
      EX0 = 1;
                                   //enable INT0 interrupt
                                   //open global interrupt switch
      EA = 1;
      while (1)
           INT0 = 1;
                                   //ready read INT0 port
           while (!INT0);
                                   //check INT0
           _nop_();
           nop ();
           PCON = 0x02;
                                   //MCU power down
           nop ();
           nop ();
           P1++;
```

2. 汇编程序

/*由外	部中断0	唤醒掉电模式的	示例程序*/ */
/* ST /* 演 /*如果娶 /*请在和	TC MCU I 示STC 17 要在程序。 程序中或	Limited Γ系列单片机由射 中使用或在文章中 文章中注明使用了	
	ot vector t		
	ORG LJMP	0000H MAIN	
	ORG LJMP	0003H EXINT0	;interrupt 0 (location at 0003H)
;	ORG	0100H	
MAIN:			
	MOV	SP,#7FH	;initial SP
	SETB SETB	IT0 EX0	;set INT0 int type (1:Falling 0:Low level) ;enable INT0 interrupt
	SETB	EA	;open global interrupt switch
LOOP:	SEID	L/1	,open global interrupt switch
	SETB	INT0	;ready read INT0 port
	JNB	INTO,\$;check INT0
	NOP		
	NOP		
	MOV	PCON,#02H	;MCU power down
	NOP		
	NOP CPL	P1.0	
		LOOP	
,		t0 service routine	
EXINT():		
2111,11	RETI		
;	END		

2.2.5 由外部中断1唤醒掉电模式的测试程序(C程序和汇编程序)

1. C程序

```
/*由外部中断1唤醒掉电模式的示例程序 -----*/
/*_____*/
/* --- STC MCU Limited -----*/
/* --- 演示STC 1T 系列单片机由外部中断1唤醒掉电模式 ------*/
/*如果要在程序中使用或在文章中引用该程序 ------*/
/*请在程序中或文章中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 -----*/
/*_____*/
#include "reg51.h"
#include "intrins.h"
//External interrupt0 service routine
void exint1() interrupt 2
                                   //interrupt 2 (location at 0013H)
}
void main()
     IT1 = 1;
                                   //set INT1 int type (1:Falling 0:Low level)
                                   //enable INT1 interrupt
     EX1 = 1:
     EA = 1;
                                   //open global interrupt switch
     while (1)
           INT1 = 1;
                                   //ready read INT1 port
           while (!INT1);
                                   //check INT1
           nop ();
           nop ();
           PCON = 0x02;
                                   //MCU power down
           _nop_();
           nop ();
           P1++;
```

2. 汇编程序

/* STO /* 演 /*如果男 /*请在程	C MCU L 示STC 1T 存在程序。 程序中或以	imited 系列单片 中使用或在 文章中注明	机由外部中断1唤配文章中引用该程序使用了STC的资料	星掉电模式*/ 及程序*/	*/ */ */
	t vector ta				
	ORG LJMP	0000H MAIN			
	ORG LJMP	0013H EXINT1		;interrupt 2 (location at 0013H)	
; MAIN:	ORG	0100H			
WIZIIV.	MOV	SP,#7FH		;initial SP	1. 1.
	SETB SETB	IT1 EX1 EA		;set INT1 int type (1:Falling 0:I ;enable INT1 interrupt ;open global interrupt switch	Low level)
LOOP:	SETD	Lit		,open groom merrupt switch	
	SETB JNB NOP NOP	INT1 INT1,	\$;ready read INT1 port ;check INT1	
	MOV NOP NOP	PCON,	#02H	;MCU power down	
	CPL SJMP	P1.0 LOOP			
,		t1 service re			
EXINT1	: RETI				
;	END				

2.2.6 由定时器0唤醒掉电模式的测试程序(C程序和汇编程序)

1. C程序

```
/*由定时器0唤醒掉电模式的示例程序 ------*/
/*_____*/
/* --- STC MCU Limited -----*/
/* --- 演示STC 1T 系列单片机由定时器0唤醒掉电模式 ------*/
/*如果要在程序中使用或在文章中引用该程序 -----*/
/*请在程序中或文章中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 -----*/
#include "reg51.h"
#include "intrins.h"
sfr WAKE CLKO = 0x8f;
//External interrupt0 service routine
void t0int() interrupt 1
                               //interrupt 1 (location at 000BH)
void main()
      WAKE CLKO = 0x10;
                               //enable T0 falling edge wakeup MCU from power-down mode
      ET0 = 1:
                               //enable T0 interrupt
      EA = 1;
                               //open global interrupt switch
      while (1)
            T0 = 1;
                               //ready read T0 port
                               //check T0
            while (!T0);
            nop ();
            nop ();
            PCON = 0x02;
                               //MCU power down
            nop ();
            nop ();
            P1++;
```

2. 汇编程序

/*由定	时器0唤	醒掉电模	式的示例	列程序	*/
/* ST /* 演 /*如果娶 /*请在和	C MCU I 示STC 17 要在程序 星序中或	Limited Γ系列单片 中使用或石 文章中注明	 - 机由定即 主文章中 月使用了S	 寸器0唤醒: 引用该程序 STC的资料	*/ */ 掉电模式*/ 字*/ */
		EQU			
*	ot vector i	table			
	ORG LJMP	0000H MAIN			
	ORG LJMP	000BH T0INT			;interrupt 1 (location at 000BH)
; MAIN:	ORG	0100H			
WAIN.	MOV MOV SETB SETB	SP,#7FH WAKE_ ET0 EA	ECLKO,	#10H	;initial SP ;enable T0 falling edge wakeup MCU from power-down mode ;enable T0 interrupt ;open global interrupt switch
LOOP:	SETB JNB NOP	T0 T0,	\$;ready read T0 port ;check T0
	NOP MOV NOP NOP	PCON,	#02H		;MCU power down
	CPL SJMP	P1.0 Loop			
,		vice routine			
T0INT:	RETI				
;	END				

2.2.7 由定时器1唤醒掉电模式的测试程序(C程序和汇编程序)

1. C程序

```
/*由定时器1唤醒掉电模式的示例程序 ------*/
/*______*/
/* --- STC MCU Limited -----*/
/* --- 演示STC 1T 系列单片机由定时器1唤醒掉电模式 -----*/
/*如果要在程序中使用或在文章中引用该程序 -----*/
/*请在程序中或文章中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 -----*/
/*______*/
#include "reg51.h"
#include "intrins.h"
sfr WAKE CLKO = 0x8f;
//External interrupt0 service routine
void t1int() interrupt 3
                             //interrupt 3 (location at 001BH)
void main()
      WAKE CLKO = 0x20;
                             //enable T1 falling edge wakeup MCU from power-down mode
      ET1 = 1:
                             //enable T1 interrupt
      EA = 1;
                             //open global interrupt switch
      while (1)
           T1 = 1;
                             //ready read T1 port
                             //check T1
           while (!T1);
            nop ();
            nop ();
           PCON = 0x02;
                             //MCU power down
           nop ();
            nop ();
           P1++;
```

2. 汇编程序

/*由定	时器1唤	醒掉电模式的示	例程序 -	*/ */
/* ST /* 演 /*如果娶 /*请在和	TC MCU 示STC 17 要在程序。 程序中或	Limited Γ系列单片机由定时 中使用或在文章中 文章中注明使用了	 寸器1唤醒 引用该程/ STC的资料	*/ */ !掉电模式*/ 亨*/ !及程序*/
		EQU 8FH		
*	ot vector t	able		
	ORG LJMP	0000H MAIN		
	ORG LJMP	001BH T1INT		;interrupt 3 (location at 001BH)
; MAIN:	ORG	0100Н		
1417 11111	MOV MOV SETB	SP,#7FH WAKE_CLKO, ET1	#20H	;initial SP ;enable T1 falling edge wakeup MCU from power-down mode ;enable T1 interrupt
LOOP:	SETB	EA		;open global interrupt switch
	SETB JNB NOP NOP	T1 T1,\$;ready read T1 port ;check T1
	MOV NOP NOP	PCON,#02H		;MCU power down
	CPL SJMP	P1.0 Loop		
,		ice routine		
T1INT:	RETI			
;	END			

2.2.8 由串行口RxD唤醒掉电模式的测试程序(C程序和汇编程序)

1. C程序

```
/*由串行口RxD唤醒掉电模式的示例程序 -----*/
/*_____*/
/* --- STC MCU Limited -----*/
/* --- 演示STC 1T 系列单片机由RxD唤醒掉电模式 -----*/
/*如果要在程序中使用或在文章中引用该程序 -----*/
/*请在程序中或文章中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 -----*/
#include "reg51.h"
#include "intrins.h"
typedef unsigned char BYTE;
typedef unsigned int WORD;
/*Declare SFR associated with the PCA */
sfr WAKE CLKO = 0x8F;
void uart isr() interrupt 4 using 1
      if (RI)
            RI = 0;
void main()
      WAKE CLKO = 0x40;
                          //enable RXD falling edge wakeup MCU from power-down mode
      ES = 1;
      EA = 1;
      while (1)
            RXD = 1;
                                    //ready read RXD port
            while (!RXD);
                                    //check RXD
            nop ();
            nop ();
            PCON = 0x02;
                                    //MCU power down
            nop ();
            nop ();
            P2++;
```

2. 汇编程序

```
/*由串行口RxD唤醒掉电模式的示例程序 -----*/
/*_____*/
/* --- STC MCU Limited -----*/
/* --- 演示STC 1T 系列单片机由RxD唤醒掉电模式 -----*/
/*如果要在程序中使用或在文章中引用该程序 -----*/
/*请在程序中或文章中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 -----*/
:/*Declare SFR associated with the PCA */
     WAKE CLKO
                EOU
                      8FH
     ORG
           0000H
     LJMP
           MAIN
     ORG
           0023H
UART ISR:
     JBC
           RI,
                EXIT
                                 ;clear RI flag
EXIT:
     RETI
     ORG
           0100H
MAIN:
     MOV
           WAKE CLKO,
                      #40H
                                 enable RXD falling edge wakeup MCU
                                 ;from power-down mode
     SETB
           ES
     SETB
           EA
LOOP:
     SETB
           RXD
                                 ;ready read RXD port
     JNB
           RXD,
                                 :check RXD
     NOP
     NOP
     MOV
           PCON, #02H
                                 ;MCU power down
     NOP
     NOP
     CPL
           P1.0
     SJMP
           LOOP
     END
```

2.2.9 由PCA唤醒掉电模式的测试程序(C程序和汇编程序)

1. C程序

```
/*由PCA唤醒掉电模式的示例程序 -----*/
/*_____*/
/* --- STC MCU Limited -----*/
/* --- 演示STC 1T 系列单片机由PCA唤醒掉电模式 -----*/
/*如果要在程序中使用或在文章中引用该程序 ------*/
/*请在程序中或文章中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 -----*/
#include "reg51.h"
#include "intrins h"
typedef unsigned char BYTE;
typedef unsigned int WORD;
/*Declare SFR associated with the PCA */
sbit
       EPCAI
                     = IE^6:
sfr
       WAKE CLKO
                     = 0x8F;
sfr
       CCON
                     = 0xD8:
                                           //PCA control register
shit
       CCF0
                     = CCON^0;
                                           //PCA module-0 interrupt flag
                     = CCON^1:
                                           //PCA module-1 interrupt flag
shit
       CCF1
shit
       CR
                     = CCON^6;
                                           //PCA timer run control bit
shit
       CF
                     = CCON^7;
                                           //PCA timer overflow flag
sfr
       CMOD
                     = 0xD9;
                                           //PCA mode register
sfr
       CL
                     = 0xE9;
                                           //PCA base timer LOW
sfr
       CH
                     = 0xF9;
                                           //PCA base timer HIGH
sfr
                                           //PCA module-0 mode register
       CCAPM0
                     = 0xDA:
sfr
       CCAP0L
                     = 0xEA:
                                           //PCA module-0 capture register LOW
sfr
                     = 0xFA:
                                           //PCA module-0 capture register HIGH
       CCAP0H
sfr
       CCAPM1
                     = 0xDB:
                                           //PCA module-1 mode register
sfr
                                           //PCA module-1 capture register LOW
       CCAP1L
                     = 0xEB:
                     = 0xFB:
                                           //PCA module-1 capture register HIGH
sfr
       CCAP1H
                                           //PCA module-2 mode register
sfr
       CCAPM2
                     = 0xDC:
                                           //PCA module-2 capture register LOW
sfr
       CCAP2L
                     = 0xEC;
sfr
       CCAP2H
                     = 0xFC:
                                           //PCA module-2 capture register HIGH
                                           //PCA module-3 mode register
sfr
       CCAPM3
                     = 0xDD;
                                           //PCA module-3 capture register LOW
sfr
       CCAP3L
                     = 0xED;
sfr
       CCAP3H
                     = 0xFD;
                                           //PCA module-3 capture register HIGH
```

```
sfr
         PCAPWM0 = 0xF2:
sfr
         PCAPWM1
                      = 0xF3;
sfr
         PCAPWM2
                      = 0xF4:
sfr
         PCAPWM3
                      = 0xF5:
shit
         PCA LED
                       = P1^{0}:
                                             //PCA test LED
         CEX0
sbit
                       = P3^7;
void PCA isr() interrupt 7 using 1
         CCF0 = 0;
                                             //Clear interrupt flag
         PCA LED = !PCA LED;
                                             //toggle the test pin while CEX0(P3.7) have a falling edge
}
void main()
         CCON = 0;
                                             //Initial PCA control register
                                             //PCA timer stop running
                                             //Clear CF flag
                                             //Clear all module interrupt flag
                                             //Reset PCA base timer
         CL = 0;
         CH = 0;
                                             //Set PCA timer clock source as Fosc/12
         CMOD = 0x00;
                                             //Disable PCA timer overflow interrupt
         CCAPM0 = 0x11;
                                             //PCA module-0 capture by a negative tigger on CEX0(P3.7)
                                             //and enable PCA interrupt
                                             //PCA module-0 capture by a rising edge on CEX0(P3.7)
//
         CCAPM0 = 0x21;
                                             //and enable PCA interrupt
//
                                             //PCA module-0 capture by a transition (falling/rising edge)
         CCAPM0 = 0x31;
                                             //on CEX0(P3.7) and enable PCA interrupt
                                             //enable PCA falling/raising edge wakeup MCU
         WAKE CLKO = 0x80;
                                             //from power-down mode
         CR = 1;
                                             //PCA timer start run
         EPCAI = 1;
         EA = 1;
         while (1)
                  CEX0 = 1;
                                             //ready read CEX0 port
                                             //check CEX0
                  while (!CEX0);
                  nop ();
                  nop ();
                  PCON = 0x02;
                                             //MCU power down
                  nop ();
                  _nop_();
                  P2++;
         }
```

2. 汇编程序

,			*/ */
			掉电模式*/
/*如果要在程序	中使用或在	生文章中引用该	程序*/
			资料及程序*/
/*			*/
/*D 1 CED	1	:4.4. DCA*/	
;/*Declare SFR a EPCAI	ssociated v	IE.6	
WAKE CLKO	EQU	8FH	
WAKE_CLKO	EQU	6ГП	
CCON	EQU	0D8H	;PCA control register
CCF0	BIT	CCON.0	;PCA module-0 interrupt flag
CCF1	BIT	CCON.1	;PCA module-1 interrupt flag
CR	BIT	CCON.6	;PCA timer run control bit
CF	BIT	CCON.7	;PCA timer overflow flag
CMOD	EQU	0D9H	;PCA mode register
CL	EQU	0E9H	;PCA base timer LOW
СН	EQU	0F9H	;PCA base timer HIGH
CCAPM0	EQU	0DAH	;PCA module-0 mode register
CCAP0L	EQU	0EAH	;PCA module-0 capture register LOW
CCAP0H	EQU	0FAH	;PCA module-0 capture register HIGH
CCAPM1	EQU	0DBH	;PCA module-1 mode register
CCAP1L	EQU	0EBH	;PCA module-1 capture register LOW
CCAP1H	EQU	0FBH	;PCA module-1 capture register HIGH
CCAPM2	EQU	0DCH	;PCA module-2 mode register
CCAP2L	EQU	0ECH	;PCA module-2 capture register LOW
CCAP2H	EQU	0FCH	;PCA module-2 capture register HIGH
CCAPM3	EQU	0DDH	;PCA module-3 mode register
CCAP3L	EQU	0EDH	;PCA module-3 capture register LOW
CCAP3H	EQU	0FDH	;PCA module-3 capture register HIGH
PCA LED	BIT	P1.1	;PCA test LED
CEX0	BIT	P3.7	,
;ORG	0000H		
LJMP	MAIN		

PCA IS	ORG	0033H		
TCA_IS	CLR CPL RETI	CCF0 PCA_LED		;Clear interrupt flag ;toggle the test pin while CEX0(P3.7) have a falling edge
;	ORG	0100H		
MAIN:	MOV	CCON, #0		;Initial PCA control register ;PCA timer stop running ;Clear CF flag ;Clear all module interrupt flag
	CLR	A		;
	MOV	CL, A		;Reset PCA base timer
	MOV	CH, A		•
	MOV	CMOD, #00H		;Set PCA timer clock source as Fosc/12
	MOV	CCAPM0,#11H		;Disable PCA timer overflow interrupt ;PCA module-0 capture by a falling edge on CEX0(P3.7) ;and enable PCA interrupt
;	MOV	CCAPM0,#21H		;PCA module-0 capture by a rising edge on CEX0(P3.7) ;and enable PCA interrupt
,	MOV	CCAPM0,#31H		;PCA module-0 capture by a transition (falling/rising edge) ;on CEX0(P3.7) and enable PCA interrupt
;	MOV	WAKE_CLKO,	#80H	;enable PCA falling/raising edge wakeup MCU ;from power-down mode
	SETB	CR		;PCA timer start run
	SETB	EPCAI		
	SETB	EA		
LOOP:				
	SETB	CEX0		;ready read CEX0 port
	JNB NOP NOP	CEX0, \$;check CEX0
	MOV NOP NOP	PCON, #02H		;MCU power down
	CPL	P1.0		
·	SJMP	LOOP		
,	END			

2.3 复位

STC12C5410AD系列单片机有5种复位方式:外部RST引脚复位,软件复位,上电复位,内部低压检测复位,MAX810专用复位电路复位,看门狗复位。

2.3.1 外部RST引脚复位

外部RST引脚复位就是从外部向RST引脚施加一定宽度的复位脉冲,从而实现单片机的复位。将RST复位管脚拉高并维持至少24个时钟加10us后,单片机会进入复位状态,将RST复位管脚拉回低电平后,单片机结束复位状态并从用户程序区的00000H处开始正常工作。

2.3.2 软件复位

用户应用程序在运行过程当中,有时会有特殊需求,需要实现单片机系统软复位(热启动之一),传统的8051单片机由于硬件上未支持此功能,用户必须用软件模拟实现,实现起来较麻烦。现STC新推出的增强型8051根据客户要求增加了IAP_CONTR特殊功能寄存器,实现了此功能。用户只需简单的控制IAP_CONTR特殊功能寄存器的其中两位SWBS/SWRST就可以系统复位了。

IAP CONTR: ISP/IAP 控制寄存器

SFR Name	SFR Address	bit	В7	В6	B5	B4	В3	B2	B1	В0
ISP_CONTR	E7H	name	ISPEN	SWBS	SWRST	CMD_FAIL	-	WT2	WT1	WT0

ISPEN: ISP/IAP功能允许位。

0: 禁止IAP读/写/擦除Data Flash/EEPROM;

1: 允许读/写/擦除Data Flash/EEPROM。

SWBS: 软件选择从用户应用程序区启动(0),还是从ISP程序区启动(1)。要与SWRST直接配合

才可以实现

SWRST: 0: 不操作; 1: 产生软件系统复位, 硬件自动清零。

CMD FAIL: 如果送了ISP/IAP命令,并对ISP TRIG送46h/B9h触发失败,则为1,需由软件清零.

:从用户应用程序区(AP区)软件复位并切换到用户应用程序区(AP区)开始执行程序

MOV ISP CONTR, #00100000B ; SWBS = 0(选择AP区), SWRST = 1(软复位)

;从系统ISP监控程序区软件复位并切换到用户应用程序区(AP区)开始执行程序

MOV ISP CONTR, #00100000B ; SWBS = 0(选择AP区), SWRST = 1(软复位)

:从用户应用程序区(AP区)软件复位并切换到系统ISP监控程序区开始执行程序

MOV ISP CONTR, #01100000B : SWBS = 1(选择ISP区), SWRST = 1(软复位)

;从系统ISP监控程序区软件复位并切换到系统ISP监控程序区开始执行程序

MOV ISP CONTR, #01100000B : SWBS = 1(选择ISP区), SWRST = 1(软复位)

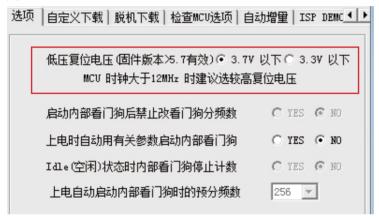
本复位是整个系统复位,所有的特殊功能寄存器都会复位到初始值,1/0口也会初始化

2.3.3 上电复位/掉电复位

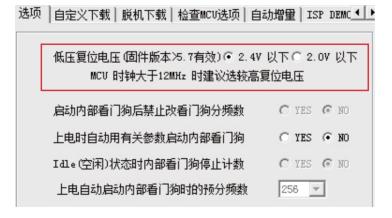
当电源电压VCC低于上电复位/掉电复位电路的检测门槛电压时,所有的逻辑电路都会复位。当VCC重新恢复正常电压时,延迟32768个时钟后,上电复位/掉电复位结束。。进入掉电模式时,上电复位/掉电复位功能被关闭。

2.3.4 内部低压检测复位

STC12C5410AD系列单片机内置低压检测复位,并且复位门槛电压可选(在STC-ISP编程器中选择)。5伏单片机内部低压**检测复位门槛电压的选择如下图所示,低压复位电压可选** 3.7V和3.3V。



3伏单片机内部低压检测复位门槛电压的选择如下图所示,低压复位电压可选2.4V和2.0V。



当电源电压过低时,无法保证单片机正常工作。此时,可以利用单片机的内部部低压检测复位功能;当检测到电源电压低于门槛电压时,单片机复位,从而保证系统正常工作。

上电复位后低压检测标志位(LVDF/PCON.5)是1,要由软件清零(注意该位不可位寻址),建议清零后,再读一次该位是否为零,如为零,电源电压高于检测门槛电压。

Mnemonic	Add	Name	В7	В6	В5	В4	В3	B2	B1	В0	Reset Value
PCON	87H	Power Control	SMOD	SMOD0	LVDF	POF	GF1	GF0	PD	IDL	0011,0000
IE	A8H	Interrupt Enable	EA	EPCA_LVD	EADC_SPI	ES	ET1	EX1	ET0	EX0	0000,0000
AUXR	8EH	Auxiliary Register	T0x12	T1x12	UART_M0x6	EADCI	ESPI	ELVDI	-	-	0000,00xx
IP	В8Н	Interrupt Priority Low	-	PPCA_LVD	PADC_SPI	PS	PT1	PX1	PT0	PX0	x000,0000

PADC SPIH

PPCA LVDH

与外部低压检测LVD有关的特殊功能寄存器表

Interrupt Priority

High

IPH

В7Н

内部低压检测相应的中断控制允许位是: EA/EPCA LVD, ELVDI。

EPCA_LVD是PCA模块和低压检测中断的总中断允许位,此位打不开,时无法产生低压检测中断的。

PT1H PX1H

PT0H

PX0H

x000.0000

ELVDI时低压检测中断的单独允许位。

PSH

内部低压检测相应的中断优先级控制位是: PPCA_LVDH/PPCA_LVD, 0/0,0/1,1/0,1/1,四级中断 优先级

内部低压检测相应的中断请求标志位是 : LVDF,要由软件清零

与低压检测相关的一些寄存器:

PCON: 电源控制寄存器(不可位寻址)

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	B4	В3	B2	B1	В0
PCON	87H	name	SMOD	SMOD0	LVDF	POF	GF1	GF0	PD	IDL

LVDF: 低压检测标志位, 同时也是低压检测中断请求标志位。

如果内部工作电压Vcc低于低压检测门槛电压,该位自动置1,与低压检测中断是否被允许无关。即在内部工作电压Vcc低于低压检测门槛电压时,不管有没有允许低压检测中断,该位都自动为1。该位要用软件清0,清0后,如内部工作电压Vcc继续低于低压检测门槛电压,该位又被自动设置为1。

IE: 中断允许寄存器(可位寻址)

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	B4	В3	В2	B1	В0
IE	A8H	name	EA	EPCA_LVD	EADC_SPI	ES	ET1	EX1	ET0	EX0

EA: 中断允许总控制位。

EA=0, 屏蔽了所有的中断请求;

EA=1, 开放总中断, 但每个中断源还有自己的独立允许控制位。

EPCA LVD: PCA模块中断和低压检测中断允许位。

EPCA_LVD=0,禁止PCA模块和低压检测中断; EPCA_LVD=1,允许PCA模块和低压检测中断。

AUXR:辅助寄存器(不可位寻址)

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	B4	В3	B2	B1	В0
AUXR	8EH	name	T0x12	T1x12	UART_M0x6	EADCI	ESPI	ELVDI	-	-

ELVDI: 低压检测中断单独允许位。

ELVDI=0,禁止低压检测中断; ELVDI=1,允许低压检测中断。

如果要允许低压中断则需要将几个相应的控制位置1:

- 1、将ELVDI置1,允许低压检测中断,这是低压中断的单独控制位。
- 2、将EPCA_LVD置1,允许PCA模块中断及低压检测中断,这是PCA模块中断及低压检测中断的总中断控制位,此位不打开,也是无法产生低压检测中断的。
- 3、将EA置1,打开单片机总中断控制位,此位不打开,也是无法产生低压检测中断的低压检测中断服务程序中要用软件清低压中断请求标志位LVDF。

5V单片机,3.7V(± 0.1)以下为低压,3V单片机,2.4V(± 0.1)以下为低压,如ELVDI=1(允许低压中断),则会产生低压中断.

IPH: 中断优先级控制寄存器高(不可位寻址)

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	В4	В3	В2	B1	В0
IPH	В7Н	name	-	PPCA_LVDH	PADC_SPIH	PSH	PT1H	PX1H	РТ0Н	PX0H

IP: 中断优先级控制寄存器低(可位寻址)

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	В4	В3	B2	B1	В0
IE	B8H	name	-	PPCA_LVD	PADC_SPI	PS	PT1	PX1	PT0	PX0

PPCA LVDH, PPCA LVD: PCA模块中断和低压检测中断优先级控制位。

当PPCA_LVDH = 0且PPCA_LVD = 0时, PCA模块中断和低压检测中断为最低优先级中断(优先级0) 当PPCA_LVDH = 0且PPCA_LVD = 1时, PCA模块中断和低压检测中断为较低优先级中断(优先级1) 当PPCA_LVDH = 1且PPCA_LVD = 0时, PCA模块中断和低压检测中断为较高优先级中断(优先级2) 当PPCA_LVDH = 1且PPCA_LVD = 1时, PCA模块中断和低压检测中断为较高优先级中断(优先级3)

2.3.5 MAX810专用复位电路

STC12C5410AD系列单片机内部集成了MAX810专用复位电路。若MAX810专用复位电路在STC-ISP编程器中被允许,则以后上电复位后将再产生约200mS延迟,复位才能被解除。

2.3.6 看门狗(WDT)复位

在工业控制/汽车电子/航空航天等需要高可靠性的系统中,为了防止"系统在异常情况下,受到干扰,MCU/CPU程序跑飞,导致系统长时间异常工作",通常是引进看门狗,如果MCU/CPU 不在规定的时间内按要求访问看门狗,就认为MCU/CPU处于异常状态,看门狗就会强迫MCU/CPU复位,使系统重新从头开始按规律执行用户程序。STC12C5410AD系列单片机内部也引进了此看门狗功能,使单片机系统可靠性设计变得更加方便/简洁。为此功能,我们增加如下特殊功能寄存器WDT CONTR:

WDT CONTR: 看门狗(Watch-Dog-Timer)控制寄存器

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	B4	В3	B2	B1	В0
WDT_CONTR	E1H	name	WDT_FLAG	-	EN_WDT	CLR_WDT	IDLE_WDT	PS2	PS1	PS0

Symbol符号Function功能

WDT FLAG: When WDT overflows, this bit is set. It can be cleared by software.

看门狗溢出标志位, 当溢出时, 该位由硬件置1, 可用软件将其清0。

EN WDT: Enable WDT bit. When set, WDT is started

看门狗允许位, 当设置为"1"时, 看门狗启动。

CLR WDT: WDT clear bit. If set, WDT will recount. Hardware will automatically clear this bit.

看门狗清"0"位, 当设为"1"时, 看门狗将重新计数。硬件将自动清"0"此位。

IDLE WDT: When set, WDT is enabled in IDLE mode. When clear, WDT is disabled in IDLE

看门狗"IDLE"模式位、当设置为"1"时、看门狗定时器在"空闲模式"计数

当清"0"该位时,看门狗定时器在"空闲模式"时不计数

PS2.PS1.PS0: Pre-scale value of Watchdog timer is shown as the bellowed table:

看门狗定时器预分频值,如下表所示

PS2	PS1	PS0	Pre-scale 预分频	WDT overflow Time @20MHz
0	0	0	2	39.3 mS
0	0	1	4	78.6 mS
0	1	0	8	157.3 mS
0	1	1	16	314.6 mS
1	0	0	32	629.1 mS
1	0	1	64	1.25 S
1	1	0	128	2.5 S
1	1	1	256	5 S

The WDT period is determined by the following equation 看门狗溢出时间计算看门狗溢出时间 = (12 x Pre-scale x 32768) / Oscillator frequency

设时钟为12MHz:

看门狗溢出时间 = (12×Pre-scale × 32768) / 12000000 = Pre-scale × 393216 / 12000000

PS2	PS1	PS0	Pre-scale 预分频	WDT overflow Time @12MHz
0	0	0	2	65.5 mS
0	0	1	4	131.0 mS
0	1	0	8	262.1 mS
0	1	1	16	524.2 mS
1	0	0	32	1.0485 S
1	0	1	64	2.0971 S
1	1	0	128	4.1943 S
1	1	1	256	8.3886 S

设时钟为11.0592MHz:

看门狗溢出时间= (12 x Pre-scale x 32768) / 11059200 = Pre-scale x 393216 / 11059200

PS2	PS1	PS0	Pre-scale	WDT overflow Time @11.0592MHz
0	0	0	2	71.1 mS
0	0	1	4	142.2 mS
0	1	0	8	284.4 mS
0	1	1	16	568.8 mS
1	0	0	32	1.1377 S
1	0	1	64	2.2755 S
1	1	0	128	4.5511 S
1	1	1	256	9.1022 S

看门狗测试程序,在STC的下载板上可以直接测试 /* --- STC MCU Limited -----*/ /* --- 演示STC 1T 系列单片机 看门狗及其溢出时间计算公式-----*/ /* 如果要在程序中使用或在文章中引用该程序, -----*/ /* 请在程序中或文章中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 -----*/ :本演示程序在STC-ISP Ver 4.86.PCB的下载编程工具上测试通过,相关的工作状态在P1口上显示 ;看门狗及其溢出时间 = (12 * Pre scale *32768)/Oscillator frequency WDT CONTR EQU 0E1H : 看门狗地址 WDT TIME LED P1.5 :用 P1.5 控制看门狗溢出时间指示灯, EOU :看门狗溢出时间可由该指示灯亮的时间长度或熄灭的时间长度表示 WDT FLAG LED EOU P1.7 ;用P1.7控制看门狗溢出复位指示灯,如点亮表示为看门狗溢出复位 Last WDT Time LED Status EQU 00H ;位变量,存储看门狗溢出时间指示灯的上一次状态位 ;WDT复位时间(所用的Oscillator frequency = 18.432MHz): ; Pre scale Word EOU 00111100B : 清0, 启动看门狗, 预分频数=32, 0, 68S Pre scale Word EOU 00111101B : 清0, 启动看门狗, 预分频数=64, 1.36S ; Pre scale Word :清0,启动看门狗,预分频数=128, 2.72S EOU 00111110B ; Pre scale Word EOU : 清0, 启动看门狗, 预分频数=256, 5, 44S 00111111B ORG H0000HAJMP MAIN 0100H ORG MAIN: A, : 检测是否为看门狗复位 MOV WDT CONTR ANL A, #1000000B JNZ WDT Reset ; WDT CONTR. 7 = 1, 看门狗复位, 跳转到看门狗复位程序 ;WDT CONTR.7=0,上电复位,冷启动,RAM单元内容为随机值 Last WDT Time LED Status ;上电复位, SETB :初始化看门狗溢出时间指示灯的状态位=1 CLR WDT TIME LED :上电复位,点亮看门狗溢出时间指示灯 MOV WDT CONTR, #Pre scale Word ;启动看门狗

WAIT1:

SJMP WAIT1 :循环执行本语句(停机),等待看门狗溢出复位

;WDT CONTR.7 = 1, 看门狗复位, 热启动, RAM 单元内容不变, 为复位前的值

WDT Reset: ;看门狗复位,热启动

CLR WDT FLAG LED ;是看门狗复位,点亮看门狗溢出复位指示灯

JB Last WDT Time LED Status, Power Off WDT TIME LED

;为1熄灭相应的灯,为0亮相应灯

;根据看门狗溢出时间指示灯的上一次状态位设置 WDT TIME LED 灯,

:若上次亮本次就熄灭, 若上次熄灭本次就亮

CLR WDT TIME LED ;上次熄灭本次点亮看门狗溢出时间指示灯

CPL Last WDT Time LED Status ;将看门狗溢出时间指示灯的上一次状态位取反

WAIT2:

SJMP WAIT2 :循环执行本语句(停机),等待看门狗溢出复位

Power_Off_WDT_TIME_LED:

SETB WDT TIME LED ;上次亮本次就熄灭看门狗溢出时间指示灯

CPL Last WDT Time LED Status :将看门狗溢出时间指示灯的上一次状态位取反

WAIT3:

SJMP WAIT3 :循环执行本语句(停机),等待看门狗溢出复位

END

2.3.7 冷启动复位和热启动复位

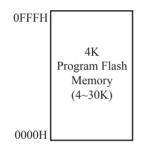
	复位源	现象
	内部看门狗复位	会使单片机直接从用户程序区0000H处开始执 行用户程序
	通过控制RESET脚产 生的硬复位	会使系统 从用户程序区0000H处开始直接执行用户程序
热启动复位	通过对ISP_CONTR寄存器送入20H产生的软复位	会使系统从用户程序区0000H处开始直接执行 用户程序
	通过对ISP_CONTR寄存器送入60H产生的软复位	会使系统从系统ISP监控程序区开始执行程序,检测不到合法的ISP下载命令流后,会软复位到用户程序区执行用户程序
冷启动复位	系统停电后再上电引 起的硬复位	会使系统从系统ISP监控程序区开始执行程序,检测不到合法的ISP下载命令流后,会软复位到用户程序区执行用户程序

第3章 片内存储器和特殊功能寄存器(SFRs)

STC12C5410AD系列单片机的程序存储器和数据存储器是各自独立编址的.STC-12C5410AD系列单片机的所有程序存储器都是片上Flash存储器,不能访问外部程序存储器,因为没有外部访问使能信号—EA和程序存储启用信号—PSEN。STC12C5410AD系列单片机内部有768字节的数据存储器,其在物理和逻辑上都分为两个地址空间:内部RAM(256字节)和内部扩展RAM(512字节)。同样,STC12C5410AD系列单片机也不可以访问在外部数据存储器,因为没有访问外部数据存储器的总线。

3.1 程序存储器

程序存储器用于存放用户程序、数据和表格等信息。STC12C5410AD系列单片机内部集成了1K~30K字节的Flash程序存储器。STC12C5410AD系列各种型号单片机的程序Flash存储器的地址如下表所示。



STC12C5404AD单片机程序存储器

Туре	Program Memory
STC12C/LE5401AD	0000H~03FFH (1K)
STC12C/LE5402AD	0000H~07FFH (2K)
STC12C/LE5404AD	0000H~0FFFH (4K)
STC12C/LE5406AD	0000H~17FFH (6K)
STC12C/LE5408AD	0000H~1FFFH (8K)
STC12C/LE5410AD	0000H~27FFH (10K)
STC12C/LE5412AD	0000H~2FFFH (12K)

单片机复位后,程序计数器 (PC) 的内容为0000H,从0000H单元开始执行程序。另外中断服务程序的入口地址 (又称中断向量) 也位于程序存储器单元。在程序存储器中,每个中断都有一个固定的入口地址,当中断发生并得到响应后,单片机就会自动跳转到相应的中断入口地址去执行程序。外部中断0的中断服务程序的入口地址是0003H,定时器/计数器0中断服务程序的入口地址是000BH,外部中断1的中断服务程序的入口地址是0013H,定时器/计数器1的中断服务程序的入口地址是001BH等。更多的中断服务程序的入口地址 (中断向量) 见单独的中断章节。由于相邻中断入口地址的间隔区间 (8个字节) 有限,一般情况下无法保存完整的中断服务程序,因此,一般在中断响应的地址区域存放一条无条件转移指令,指向真正存放中断服务程序的空间去执行。

程序Flash存储器可在线反复编程擦写10万次以上,提高了使用的灵活性和方便性。

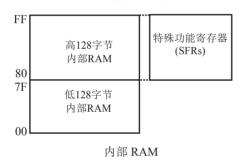
3.2 数据存储器(SRAM)

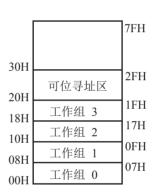
STC12C5410AD系列单片机内部集成了512字节RAM,可用于存放程序执行的中间结果和过程数据。内部数据存储器在物理和逻辑上都分为两个地址空间:内部RAM(256字节)和内部扩展RAM(256字节)。

3.2.1 内部RAM

内部RAM共256字节,可分为3个部分:低128字节RAM(与传统8051兼容)、高128字节RAM(Intel在8052中扩展了高128字节RAM)及特殊功能寄存器区。低128字节的数据存储器既可直接寻址也可间接寻址,通过"MOV"和"MOV @Ri"指令访问。高128字节RAM与特殊功能寄存器区貌似共用相同的地址范围,都使用80H~FFH,地址空间虽然貌似重叠,但物理上是独立的,使用时通过不同的寻址方式加以区分。高128字节RAM只能间接寻址,通过"MOV @Ri"指令访问。特殊功能寄存器区只可直接寻址,通过"MOV"指令访问。

内部RAM的结构如下图所示,地址范围是00H~FFH。





低128字节的内部RAM

低128字节RAM也称通用RAM区。通用RAM区又可分为工作寄存器组区,可位寻址区,用户RAM区和堆栈区。工作寄存器组区地址从00H~1FH共32B(字节)单元,分为4组(每一组称为一个寄存器组),每组包含8个8位的工作寄存器,编号均为R0~R7,但属于不同的物理空间。通过使用工作寄存器组,可以提高运算速度。R0~R7是常用的寄存器,提供4组是因为1组往往不够用。程序状态字PSW寄存器中的RS1和RS0组合决定当前使用的工作寄存器组。见下面PSW寄存器的介绍。可位寻址区的地址从20H~2FH共16个字节单元。20H~2FH单元既可向普通RAM单元一样按字节存取,也可以对单元中的任何一位单独存取,共128位,所对应的地址范围是00H~7FH。位地址范围是00H~7FH,内部RAM低128字节的地址也是00H~7FH;从外表看,二者地址是一样的,实际上二者具有本质的区别;位地址指向的是一个位,而字节地址指向的是一个字节单元,在程序中使用不同的指令区分。内部RAM中的30H~FFH单元是用户RAM和堆栈区。一个8位的堆栈指针(SP),用于指向堆栈区。单片机复位后,堆栈指针SP为07H,指向了工作寄存器组0中的R7,因此,用户初始化程序都应对SP设置初值,一般设置在80H以后的单元为官。

PSW: 程序状态字寄存器(可位寻址)

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	В4	В3	B2	B1	В0
PSW	D0H	name	CY	AC	F0	RS1	RS0	OV	F1	P

CY:标志位。进行加法运算时,当最高位即B7位有进位,或执行减法运算最高位有借位时, CY为1:反之为0

AC: 进位辅助位。进行加法运算时,当B3位有进位,或执行减法运算B3有借位时,AC为1; 反之为0。设置辅助进位标志AC的目的是为了便于BCD码加法、减法运算的调整。

F0 : 用户标志位0。

RS1、RS0: 工作寄存器组的选择位。如下表

RS1	RS0	当前使用的工作寄存器组(R0~R7)
0	0	0组(00H~07H)
0	1	1组(08H~0FH)
1	0	2组(10H~17H)
1	1	3组(18H~1FH)

OV:溢出标志位.

B1:保留位

F1: 用户标志位1。

P: 奇偶标志位。该标志位始终体现累加器ACC中1的个数的奇偶性。如果累加器ACC中1的个数为奇数,则P置1: 当累加器ACC中的个数为偶数(包括0个)时,P位为0

堆栈指针(SP):

堆栈指针是一个8位专用寄存器。它指示出堆栈顶部在内部RAM块中的位置。系统复位后,SP初始化位07H,使得堆栈事实上由08H单元开始,考虑08H~1FH单元分别属于工作寄存器组1~3,若在程序设计中用到这些区,则最好把SP值改变为80H或更大的值为宜。STC12C5410AD系列单片机的堆栈是向上生长的,即将数据压入堆栈后,SP内容增大。

:内部常规256字节RAM的测试程序(汇编)

```
:/* --- STC International Limited -----
:/* --- STC 姚永平 设计 2006/1/6 V1.0 ------
;/* --- 演示 STC12C5410AD/AD/PWM系列单片机 MCU 内部扩展RAM演示程序-----*/
;/* --- 本演示程序在STC-ISP Ver 3. OA. PCB的下载编程工具上测试通过 -----*/
;/* --- 如果要在程序中使用该程序,请在程序中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 - */
:/* --- 如果要在文章中引用该程序,请在文章中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 - */
TEST CONST
            EOU
                   5AH
;TEST RAM
            EOU
                   03H
            H0000
      ORG
      LJMP
            INITIAL
      ORG
            0050H
INITIAL:
                   #253
      MOV
            R0,
      MOV
            R1,
                   #3H
TEST ALL RAM:
      MOV
             R2,
                   #0FFH
TEST_ONE RAM:
      MOV
                   R2
            A,
      MOV
            @R1,
                   Α
      CLR
             Α
      MOV
            A,
                   @R1
      CJNE
            A,
                   2H,
                          ERROR DISPLAY
      DJNZ
            R2.
                   TEST ONE RAM
      INC
            R1
      DJNZ
            R0,
                   TEST ALL RAM
OK DISPLAY:
      MOV
            P1,
                   #11111110B
Wait1:
      SJMP
             Wait1
ERROR DISPLAY:
      MOV
             A,
                   R1
      MOV
            P1,
                   Α
Wait2:
      SJMP
            Wait2
      END
```

3.2.2 内部扩展256字节RAM(物理上在内部,逻辑上在外部)

STC12C5410AD单片机片内除了集成256字节的内部RAM外,还集成了256字节的扩展RAM,地址范围是0000H~00FFH. 访问内部扩展RAM的方法和传统8051单片机访问外部扩展RAM的方法相同,但是不影响P0口、P2口、P3.6、P3.7和ALE。在汇编语言中,内部扩展RAM通过MOVX指令访问,即使用"MOVX @DPTR"或者"MOVX @Ri"指令访问。在C语言中,可使用xdata声明存储类型即可,如"unsigned char xdata i=0;"。

00FFH 内部扩展 RAM 256字节 (外部间接寻址)

内部扩展256字节RAM的测试程序(物理上在内部,逻辑上在外部,C语言)

```
:/* --- STC International Limited -----
:/* --- STC 姚永平 设计 2006/1/6
                                  V1.0 -----
;/* --- 演示 STC12C5410AD/AD/PWM系列单片机 MCU 内部扩展RAM演示程序-----*/
;/* --- 本演示程序在STC-ISP Ver 3.0A.PCB的下载编程工具上测试通过 -----*/
:/* --- 如果要在程序中使用该程序,请在程序中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 --- */
:/* --- 如果要在文章中引用该程序,请在文章中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 --- */
#include <reg52.h>
#include <intrins.h>
                         /* use nop () function */
sfr AUXR = 0x8e:
sfr IPH
              = 0xh7:
sfr WDT CONTR = 0xe1:
sfr ISP DATA = 0xe2:
sfr ISP ADDRH = 0xe3:
sfr ISP ADDRL = 0xe4;
sfr ISP CMD
              = 0xe5:
sfr ISP TRIG = 0xe6;
sfr ISP CONTR = 0xe7:
sbit ERROR LED = P1<sup>5</sup>;
sbit OK LED = P1^7;
void main()
    unsigned int array point = 0;
    /* 测试数组 Test array one[128]. Test array two[128]*/
    unsigned char xdata Test array one[128]
                                    0x03.
                                                                  0x06.
                                                                            0x07.
       0x00,
                 0x01.
                           0x02,
                                              0x04.
                                                        0x05.
       0x08.
                 0x09,
                          0x0a
                                    0x0b.
                                              0x0c.
                                                        0x0d.
                                                                  0x0e.
                                                                            0x0f.
       0x10,
                 0x11.
                          0x12.
                                    0x13.
                                              0x14.
                                                        0x15.
                                                                  0x16.
                                                                           0x17.
       0x18,
                 0x19.
                          0x1a,
                                    0x1b.
                                              0x1c.
                                                        0x1d,
                                                                  0x1e.
                                                                           0x1f.
       0x20,
                 0x21,
                          0x22,
                                    0x23,
                                              0x24,
                                                        0x25,
                                                                  0x26.
                                                                           0x27,
       0x28,
                 0x29,
                           0x2a
                                    0x2b,
                                              0x2c,
                                                        0x2d,
                                                                  0x2e
                                                                            0x2f
       0x30,
                 0x31,
                           0x32,
                                    0x33,
                                              0x34,
                                                        0x35,
                                                                  0x36,
                                                                            0x37,
       0x38,
                 0x39,
                           0x3a,
                                    0x3b,
                                              0x3c,
                                                        0x3d,
                                                                  0x3e,
                                                                            0x3f
       0x40,
                 0x41,
                           0x42,
                                    0x43,
                                              0x44,
                                                        0x45,
                                                                  0x46,
                                                                            0x47,
       0x48,
                                                                            0x4f
                 0x49,
                           0x4a,
                                    0x4b,
                                              0x4c,
                                                        0x4d
                                                                  0x4e
```

```
0x52.
                                          0x53,
                                                     0x54,
                                                                 0x55.
                                                                             0x56.
                                                                                         0x57.
       0x50,
                  0x51.
       0x58,
                  0x59,
                              0x5a,
                                          0x5b,
                                                     0x5c,
                                                                 0x5d,
                                                                             0x5e,
                                                                                         0x5f,
       0x60,
                  0x61.
                              0x62,
                                          0x63.
                                                     0x64.
                                                                 0x65,
                                                                             0x66.
                                                                                         0x67.
       0x68.
                  0x69,
                              0x6a,
                                          0x6b.
                                                     0x6c.
                                                                 0x6d.
                                                                             0x6e.
                                                                                         0x6f.
       0x70,
                  0x71.
                              0x72,
                                          0x73.
                                                     0x74.
                                                                 0x75.
                                                                             0x76.
                                                                                         0x77,
       0x78,
                  0x79,
                              0x7a,
                                          0x7b.
                                                     0x7c.
                                                                 0x7d.
                                                                             0x7e.
                                                                                         0x7f.
   }:
unsigned char xdata Test array two[128]
                                                      =
                  0x01,
                              0x02.
                                          0x03.
                                                                 0x05,
                                                                             0x06.
                                                                                         0x07.
       0x00,
                                                     0x04.
      0x08,
                  0x09,
                              0x0a.
                                          0x0b,
                                                     0x0c.
                                                                 0x0d.
                                                                             0x0e.
                                                                                        0x0f.
      0x10,
                  0x11.
                              0x12,
                                          0x13.
                                                     0x14.
                                                                 0x15,
                                                                             0x16.
                                                                                        0x17.
                  0x19,
                              0x1a.
                                                                             0x1e.
                                                                                        0x1f.
      0x18,
                                          0x1b.
                                                     0x1c.
                                                                 0x1d.
      0x20,
                  0x21.
                              0x22,
                                          0x23,
                                                     0x24.
                                                                 0x25,
                                                                             0x26,
                                                                                        0x27,
                                          0x2b,
       0x28,
                  0x29,
                              0x2a,
                                                     0x2c,
                                                                 0x2d,
                                                                             0x2e.
                                                                                         0x2f,
       0x30,
                                                                 0x35.
                                                                             0x36.
                  0x31,
                              0x32,
                                          0x33,
                                                     0x34.
                                                                                         0x37.
       0x38,
                  0x39,
                              0x3a,
                                          0x3b,
                                                     0x3c,
                                                                 0x3d,
                                                                             0x3e,
                                                                                         0x3f,
       0x40,
                  0x41.
                              0x42,
                                          0x43.
                                                     0x44.
                                                                 0x45.
                                                                             0x46.
                                                                                         0x47.
       0x48,
                  0x49,
                              0x4a,
                                          0x4b,
                                                     0x4c,
                                                                 0x4d,
                                                                             0x4e
                                                                                         0x4f,
       0x50,
                  0x51,
                              0x52,
                                          0x53,
                                                     0x54,
                                                                 0x55,
                                                                             0x56.
                                                                                         0x57,
       0x58,
                  0x59,
                              0x5a,
                                          0x5b,
                                                     0x5c,
                                                                 0x5d,
                                                                             0x5e,
                                                                                         0x5f,
       0x60,
                  0x61,
                              0x62,
                                          0x63,
                                                     0x64,
                                                                 0x65,
                                                                             0x66,
                                                                                         0x67,
       0x68,
                  0x69,
                              0x6a,
                                          0x6b,
                                                     0x6c,
                                                                 0x6d,
                                                                             0x6e,
                                                                                         0x6f,
       0x70.
                  0x71,
                              0x72.
                                          0x73,
                                                     0x74,
                                                                 0x75,
                                                                             0x76,
                                                                                         0x77,
       0x78,
                  0x79,
                              0x7a
                                          0x7b,
                                                     0x7c,
                                                                 0x7d,
                                                                             0x7e,
                                                                                         0x7f,
   };
   ERROR LED = 1:
   OK LED = 1:
   for (array point=0: array point<128: array point++)
       if(Test array one[array point]!=Test array two [array point])
               ERROR LED = 0:
               OK LED = 1;
               break;
        else
        {
               OK LED = 0;
               ERROR LED = 1:
       while (1);
```

3.3 特殊功能寄存器(SFRs)

特殊功能寄存器(SFR)是用来对片内各功能模块进行管理、控制、监视的控制寄存器和状态寄存器,是一个特殊功能的RAM区。STC12C5410AD系列单片机内的特殊功能寄存器(SFR)与内部高128字节RAM貌似共用相同的地址范围,都使用80H~FFH,但特殊功能寄存器(SFR)必须用直接寻址指令访问。

STC12C5410AD系列单片机的特殊功能寄存器名称及地址映象如下表所示

	0/8	1/9	2/A	3/B	4/C	5/D	6/E	7/F	
0F8H		СН	CCAP0H	CCAP1H	CCAP2H	ССАР3Н			0FFH
		0000,0000	0000,0000	0000,0000	0000,0000	0000,0000			
0F0H	В		PCA_PWM0	PCA_PWM1	PCA_PWM2	PCA_PWM3			0F7H
	0000,0000		xxxx,xx00	xxxx,xx00	xxxx,xx00	xxxx,xx00			
0E8H		CL	CCAP0L	CCAP1L	CCAP2L	CCAP3L			0EFH
		0000,0000	0000,0000	0000,0000	0000,0000	0000,0000			
0E0H	ACC	WDT_CONR	ISP_DATA	ISP_ADDRH	ISP_ADDRL	ISP_CMD	ISP_TRIG	ISP_CONTR	0E7H
	0000,0000	0x00,0000	1111,1111	0000,0000	0000,0000	xxxx,xx00	xxxx,xxxx	0000,1000	
0D8H	CCON	CMOD	CCAPM0	CCAPM1	CCAPM2	CCAPM3			0DFH
	00xx,0000	0xxx,x000	x000,0000	x000,0000	x000,0000	x000,0000			
0D0H	PSW								0D7H
	0000,0000								
0C8H									0CFH
0C0H						ADC_CONTR	ADC_DATA	CLK_DIV	0C7H
						0000,0000	0000,0000	xxxx,x000	
0B8H	IP	SADEN					ADC_LOW2		0BFH
	x000,0000						0000,0000		
0B0H	Р3	P3M0	P3M1					IPH	0B7H
	1x11,1111	0000,0000	0000,0000					x000,0000	
0A8H	IE	SADDR							0AFH
	0000,0000								
0A0H	P2							Don't use	0A7H
	1111,1111							Don't use	
098H	SCON	SBUF							09FH
	0000,0000	xxxx,xxxx							
090H	P1	P1M0	P1M1	P0M0	P0M1	P2M0	P2M1		097H
	1111,1111	0000,0000	0000,0000	0000,0000	0000,0000	0000,0000	0000,0000		
088H	TCON	TMOD	TL0	TL1	TH0	TH1	AUXR	WAKE_CLKO	08FH
	0000,0000	0000,0000	0000,0000	0000,0000	0000,0000	0000,0000	0000,00xx	0000,xx00	
080H	P0	SP	DPL	DPH	SPSTAT	SPCTL	SPDAT	PCON	087H
	1111,1111	0000,0111	0000,0000	0000,0000	00xx,xxxx	0000,0100	0000,0000	0011,0000	
	0/8	1/9	2/A	3/B	4/C	5/D	6/E	7/F	-
	†								
	司及自己			7	不可位寻址				
	可位寻址	_			. ,				

注意: 寄存器地址能够被8整除的才可以进行位操作,不能够被8整除的不可以进行位操作

符号	描述	地址	位地址及符号 MSB LSB	复位值
P0	Port 0	80H	P0.7 P0.6 P0.5 P0.4 P0.3 P0.2 P0.1 P0.0	1111 1111B
SP	堆栈指针	81H		0000 0111B
DPL	数据指针(低)	82H		0000 0000B
DPTR DPH	数据指针(高)	83H		0000 0000B
SPSTAT	SPI状态寄存器	84H	SPIF WCOL - - - - -	00xx xxxxB
SPCTL	SPI控制寄存器	85H	SSIG SPEN DORD MSTR CPOL CAPHA SPR1 SPR0	0000 0100B
SPDAT	SPI数据寄存器	86H		0000 0000B
PCON	电源控制寄存器	87H	SMOD SMODO LVDF POF GF1 GF0 PD IDL	0011 0000B
TCON	定时器控制寄存器	88H	TF1 TR1 TF0 TR0 IE1 IT1 IE0 IT0	0000 0000B
TMOD	定时器工作方式寄存 器	89H	GATE C/T M1 M0 GATE C/T M1 M0	0000 0000В
TL0	定时器0低8位寄存器	8AH		0000 0000B
TL1	定时器1低8位寄存器	8BH		0000 0000B
TH0	定时器0高8位寄存器	8CH		0000 0000B
TH1	定时器1高8位寄存器	8DH		0000 0000B
AUXR	辅助寄存器	8EH	T0x12 T1x12 UART_M0x6 EADCI ESPI ELVDI	0000 00xxB
WAKE_CLKO	掉电唤醒和时钟输出 寄存器	8FH	PCAWAKEUP RXD_PIN_IE TI_PIN_IE TO_PIN_IE TICLKO TOCLKO	0000 xx00B
P1	Port 1	90H	P1.7 P1.6 P1.5 P1.4 P1.3 P1.2 P1.1 P1.0	1111 1111B
P1M0	P1口模式配置寄存器0	91H		0000 0000B
P1M1	P1口模式配置寄存器1	92H		0000 0000B
P0M0	P0口模式配置寄存器0	93H		0000 0000B
P0M1	P0口模式配置寄存器1	94H		0000 0000B
P2M0	P2口模式配置寄存器0	95H		0000 0000B
P2M1	P2口模式配置寄存器1	96H		0000 0000B
SCON	串口1控制寄存器	98H	SM0/FE SM1 SM2 REN TB8 RB8 TI RI	0000,0000
SBUF	串口1数据缓冲器	99H		xxxx,xxxx
P2	Port 2	A0H	P2.7 P2.6 P2.5 P2.4 P2.3 P2.2 P2.1 P2.0	1111 1111B

符号	描述	地址	位地址及符号 MSB LSB	复位值
IE	—————————————————————————————————————	A8H	EA EPCA_LVD EADC_SPI ES ET1 EX1 ET0 EX0	0000 0000B
SADDR	从机地址控制寄存器	А9Н		0000 0000B
Р3	Port 3	ВОН	P3.7 - P3.5 P3.4 P3.3 P3.2 P3.1 P3.0	1x11 1111B
P3M0	P3口模式配置寄存器0	В1Н		0000 0000B
P3M1	P3口模式配置寄存器1	В2Н		0000 0000B
IPH	中断优先级高字节寄存器	В7Н	- PPCA_LVDH PADC_SPIH PSH PT1H PX1H PT0H PX0H	x000 0000B
IP	中断优先级寄存器	В8Н	- PPCA_LVD PADC_SPI PS PT1 PX1 PT0 PX0	x000 0000B
SADEN	从机地址掩模寄存器	В9Н		0000 0000B
ADC_CONTR	A/D转换控制寄存器	С5Н	ADC_POWER SPEEDI SPEEDO ADC_FLAG ADC_START CHS2 CHS1 CHS0	0000 0000B
ADC_DATA	A/D转换结果寄存器高	С6Н		0000 0000B
ADC_LOW2	A/D转换结果寄存器低	BEH		0000 0000B
CLK_DIV	时钟分频寄存器	С7Н	- - - - - CLKS2 CLKS1 CLKS0	xxxx x000B
PSW	程序状态字寄存器	D0H	CY AC F0 RS1 RS0 OV F1 P	0000 0000B
CCON	PCA控制寄存器	D8H	CF CR - - CCF3 CCF2 CCF1 CCF0	00xx 0000B
CMOD	PCA模式寄存器	D9H	CIDL - - - CPS1 CPS0 ECF	0xxx x000B
CCAPM0	PCA Module 0 Mode Register	DAH	- ECOM0 CAPPO CAPNO MATO TOGO PWM0 ECCFO	x000 0000B
CCAPM1	PCA Module 1 Mode Register	DBH	- ECOM1 CAPPI CAPN1 MAT1 TOG1 PWM1 ECCF1	x000 0000B
CCAPM2	PCA Module 2 Mode Register	DCH	- ECOM2 CAPP2 CAPN2 MAT2 TOG2 PWM2 ECCF2	x000 0000B
CCAPM3	PCA Module 3 Mode Register	DDH	- ECOM3 CAPP3 CAPN3 MAT3 TOG3 PWM3 ECCF3	x000 0000B
ACC	累加器	ЕОН		0000 0000B
WDT_CONTR	看门狗控制寄存器	E1H	WDT_FLAG - EN_WDT CLR_WDT IDLE_WDT PS2 PS1 PS0	0x00 0000B
ISP_DATA	ISP/IAP 数据寄存器	Е2Н		1111 1111B
ISP_ADDRH	ISP/IAP 高8位地址寄存器	ЕЗН		0000 0000B
ISP_ADDRL	ISP/IAP 低8位地址寄存器	Е4Н		0000 0000B
ISP_CMD	ISP/IAP 命令寄存器	Е5Н	MS1 MS0	xxxx xx00B
ISP_TRIG	ISP/IAP 命令触发寄存器	Е6Н		xxxx xxxxB
ISP_CONTR	ISP/IAP控制寄存器	Е7Н	ISPEN SWBS SWRST CMD_FAIL - WT2 WT1 WT0	0000 x000B

符号	描述	地址	位地址及符号 MSB LSB	复位值
CL	PCA Base Timer Low	Е9Н		0000 0000B
CCAP0L	PCA Module-0 Capture Register Low	ЕАН		0000 0000B
CCAP1L	PCA Module-1 Capture Register Low	ЕВН		0000 0000B
CCAP2L	PCA Module-2 Capture Register Low	ЕСН		0000 0000B
CCAP3L	PCA Module-3 Capture Register Low	EDH		0000 0000B
В	B寄存器	F0H		0000 0000B
PCA_PWM0	PCA PWM Mode Auxiliary Register 0	F2H	-	xxxx xx00B
PCA_PWM1	PCA PWM Mode Auxiliary Register 1	F3H	-	xxxx xx00B
PCA_PWM2	PCA PWM Mode Auxiliary Register 2	F4H	-	xxxx xx00B
PCA_PWM3	PCA PWM Mode Auxiliary Register 3	F5H	- - - - - EPC3H EPC3L	xxxx xx00B
СН	PCA Base Timer High	F9H		0000 0000B
ССАР0Н	PCA Module-0 Capture Register High	FAH		0000 0000B
ССАР1Н	PCA Module-1 Capture Register High	FBH		0000 0000B
ССАР2Н	PCA Module-2 Capture Register High	FCH		0000 0000B
ССАР3Н	PCA Module-3 Capture Register High	FDH		0000 0000B

下面简单的介绍一下普通8051单片机常用的一些寄存器:

1. 程序计数器(PC)

程序计数器PC在物理上是独立的,不属于SFR之列。PC字长16位,是专门用来控制指令执行顺序的寄存器。单片机上电或复位后,PC=0000H,强制单片机从程序的零单元开始执行程序。

2. 累加器(ACC)

累加器ACC是8051单片机内部最常用的寄存器,也可写作A。常用于存放参加算术或逻辑运算的操作数及运算结果。

3. B寄存器

B寄存器在乘法和除法运算中须与累加器A配合使用。MUL AB指令把累加器A和寄存器B中的8位无符号数相乘,所得的16位乘积的低字节存放在A中,高字节存放在B中。DIV AB指令用B除以A,整数商存放在A中,余数存放在B中。寄存器B还可以用作通用暂存寄存器。

4. 程序状态字(PSW)寄存器

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	В4	В3	B2	B1	В0
PSW	D0H	name	CY	AC	F0	RS1	RS0	OV	F1	P

CY: 标志位。进行加法运算时,当最高位即B7位有进位,或执行减法运算最高位有借位时, CY为1;反之为0

AC: 进位辅助位。进行加法运算时,当B3位有进位,或执行减法运算B3有借位时,AC为1; 反之为0。设置辅助进位标志AC的目的是为了便于BCD码加法、减法运算的调整。

F0 : 用户标志位0。

RS1、RS0: 工作寄存器组的选择位。RS1、RS0: 工作寄存器组的选择位。如下表

RS1	RS0	当前使用的工作寄存器组(R0~R7)
0	0	0组(00H~07H)
0	1	1组(08H~0FH)
1	0	2组(10H~17H)
1	1	3组(18H~1FH)

OV: 溢出标志位. F0: 用户标志位1。

B1: 保留位

P: 奇偶标志位。该标志位始终体现累加器ACC中1的个数的奇偶性。如果累加器ACC中1的个数为奇数,则P置1; 当累加器ACC中的个数为偶数(包括0个)时,P位为0

5. 堆栈指针(SP)

堆栈指针是一个8位专用寄存器。它指示出堆栈顶部在内部RAM块中的位置。系统复位后,SP初始化位07H,使得堆栈事实上由08H单元开始,考虑08H~1FH单元分别属于工作寄存器组1~3,若在程序设计中用到这些区,则最好把SP值改变为80H或更大的值为宜。STC12C5410AD系列单片机的堆栈是向上生长的,即将数据压入堆栈后,SP内容增大。

6. 数据指针(DPTR)

数据指针 (DPTR) 是一个16位专用寄存器,由DPL(低8位)和DPH(高8位)组成,地址是82H(DPL,低字节)和83H(DPH,高字节)。DPTR是传统8051机中唯一可以直接进行16位操作的寄存器也可分别对DPL河DPH按字节进行操作。

第4章 STC12C5410AD系列单片机的I/O口结构

4.1 I/O口各种不同的工作模式及配置介绍

I/O口配置

STC12C5410AD系列单片机所有I/O口均可由软件配置成4种工作类型之一,如下表所示。4种类型分别为: 准双向口/弱上拉(标准8051输出模式)、强推挽输出/强上拉、仅为输入(高阻)或开漏输出功能。每个口由2个控制寄存器中的相应位控制每个引脚工作类型。STC-12C5410AD系列单片机上电复位后为准双向口/弱上拉(传统8051的I/O口)模式。2V以上时为高电平,0.8V以下时为低电平。每个I/O口驱动能力均可达到20mA,但整个芯片最大不得超过55mA。

P3口设定〈P3.7、x、P3.5、P3.4、P3.3、P3.2、P3.1、P3.0、无P3.6口〉(P3口地址: B0H)

P3M0[7 : 0]	P3M1 [7:0]	I/O 口模式
0	0	准双向口(传统8051 I/O 口模式), 灌电流可达20mA, 拉电流为230μA, 由于制造误差, 实际为250uA~ 150uA
0	1	强推挽输出(强上拉输出,可达20mA,要加限流电阻)
1	0	仅为输入(高阻)
1	1	开漏(Open Drain), 内部上拉电阻断开, 要外加

举例: MOV P3M0, #10100000B MOV P3M1, #10010000B

:P3.7为开漏, P3.5为高阻输入, P3.4为强推挽输出, P3.3/P3.2/P3.1/P3.0为准双向口/弱上拉

P2口设定〈P2.7, P2.6, P2.5, P2.4, P2.3, P2.2, P2.1, P2.0〉(P2口地址: AOH)

P2M0 [7:0]	P2M1 [7:0]	I/O 口模式
0	0	准双向口(传统8051 I/O 口模式), 灌电流可达20mA, 拉电流为230μA, 由于制造误差, 实际为250uA~ 150uA
0	1	强推挽输出(强上拉输出,可达20mA,要加限流电阻)
1	0	仅为输入(高阻)
1	1	开漏(Open Drain), 内部上拉电阻断开, 要外加

举例: MOV P2M0, #10100000B MOV P2M1, #11000000B

;P2.7为开漏,P2.6为强推挽输出,P2.5为高阻输入,P2.4/P2.3/P2.2/P2.1/P2.0为准双向口/弱上拉

P1口设定	⟨P1 7	P1 6	P1 5	P1 4	P1 3	P1 2	P1 1	P1 0F	1>(P1口地址:	OUH)
1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	\	1 1 . ().	1 1	1 1. 4.	1 1) .	1 1 . 4 .	1 1. 1.	1 1 . V L	1/ (5/(//17

P1M0 [7:0]	P1M1 [7:0]	I/O 口模式(P1.x 如做A/D使用,需先将其设置成开漏或高阻输入)
0		准双向口(传统8051 I/O 口模式), 灌电流可达20mA, 拉电流为230μA, 由于制造误差, 实际为250uA~ 150uA
0	1	推挽输出(强上拉输出, 可达20mA, 要加限流电阻)
1	0	仅为输入(高阻),如果该I/O口需作为A/D使用,可选此模式
1	1	开漏(Open Drain),如果该I/O口需作为A/D使用,可选此模式

举例: MOV P1M0, #10100000B MOV P1M1, #11000000B

;P1.7为开漏,P1.6为强推挽输出,P1.5为高阻输入,P1.4/P1.3/P1.2/P1.1/P1.0为准双向口/弱上拉

P0口设定 〈x, x, x, x, P0.3, P0.2, P0.1, P0.0口, 无P0.7, P0.6, P0.5, P0.4口〉(P0口地址: 80H)

P0M0 [1:0]	P0M1 [1:0]	I/O 口模式
0		准双向口(传统8051 I/O 口模式), 灌电流可达20mA, 拉电流为230μA, 由于制造误差, 实际为250uA~ 150uA
0	1	推挽输出(强上拉输出,可达20mA,要加限流电阻)
1	0	仅为输入(高阻)
1	1	开漏(Open Drain), 内部上拉电阻断开, 要外加

举例: MOV P0M0, #00001010B MOV P0M1, #00001100B

;P0.3为开漏,P0.2为强推挽输出,P0.1为高阻输入,P0.0为准双向口/弱上拉

注意:

虽然每个I/O口在弱上拉时都能承受20mA的灌电流(还是要加限流电阻,如1K,560 Ω 等),在强推挽输出时都能输出20mA的拉电流(也要加限流电阻),但整个芯片的工作电流推荐不要超过55mA。即从MCU-VCC流入的电流不超过55mA,从MCU-Gnd流出电流不超过55mA,整体流入/流出电流都不能超过55mA.

下面将与I/0口相关的寄存器及其地址列于此处,以方便用户查询

P3 register (可位寻址)

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	B5	B4	В3	B2	B1	В0
Р3	ВОН	name	P3.7	-	P3.5	P3.4	P3.3	P3.2	P3.1	P3.0

P3M0 register (不可位寻址)

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	B4	В3	B2	B1	В0
P3M0	B1H	name	P3M0.7	-	P3M0.5	P3M0.4	P3M0.3	P3M0.2	P3M0.1	P3M0.0

P3M1 register (不可位寻址)

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	B5	B4	В3	B2	B1	В0
P3M1	В2Н	name	P3M1.7	-	P3M1.5	P3M1.4	P3M1.3	P3M1.2	P3M1.1	P3M1.0

P2 register (可位寻址)

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	B4	В3	B2	B1	В0
P2	A0H	name	P2.7	P2.6	P2.5	P2.4	P2.3	P2.2	P2.1	P2.0

P2M0 register (不可位寻址)

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	B5	B4	В3	B2	B1	В0
P2M0	95H	name	P2M0.7	P2M0.6	P2M0.5	P2M0.4	P2M0.3	P2M0.2	P2M0.1	P2M0.0

P2M1 register (不可位寻址)

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	B5	B4	В3	B2	B1	В0
P2M1	96H	name	P2M1.7	P2M1.6	P2M1.5	P2M1.4	P2M1.3	P2M1.2	P2M1.1	P2M1.0

P1 register (可位寻址)

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	В4	В3	В2	B1	В0
P1	90H	name	P1.7	P1.6	P1.5	P1.4	P1.3	P1.2	P1.1	P1.0

P1M0 register (不可位寻址)

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	B4	В3	B2	B1	В0
P1M0	91H	name	P1M0.7	P1M0.6	P1M0.5	P1M0.4	P1M0.3	P1M0.2	P1M0.1	P1M0.0

P1M1 register (不可位寻址)

SFR nam	e Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	B4	В3	B2	В1	В0
P1M1	92H	name	P1M1.7	P1M1.6	P1M1.5	P1M1.4	P1M1.3	P1M1.2	P1M1.1	P1M1.0

P0 register (可位寻址)

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	B4	В3	B2	B1	В0
P0	80H	name	P0.7	P0.6	P0.5	P0.4	P0.3	P0.2	P0.1	P0.0

P0M0 register(不可位寻址)

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	В4	В3	B2	B1	В0
P0M0	93H	name	P0M0.7	P0M0.6	P0M0.5	P0M0.4	P0M0.3	P0M0.2	P0M0.1	P0M0.0

P0M1 register (不可位寻址)

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	В4	В3	B2	B1	В0
P0M1	94H	name	P0M1.7	P0M1.6	P0M1.5	P0M1.4	P0M1.3	P0M1.2	P0M1.1	P0M1.0

4.2 I/O口各种不同的工作模式结构框图

4.2.1 准双向口输出配置

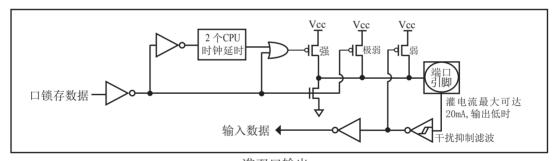
准双向口输出类型可用作输出和输入功能而不需重新配置口线输出状态。这是因为当口线输出为1时驱动能力很弱,允许外部装置将其拉低。当引脚输出为低时,它的驱动能力很强,可吸收相当大的电流。准双向口有3个上拉晶体管适应不同的需要。

在3个上拉晶体管中,有1个上拉晶体管称为"弱上拉",当口线寄存器为1且引脚本身也为1时打开。此上拉提供基本驱动电流使准双向口输出为1。如果一个引脚输出为1而由外部装置下拉到低时,弱上拉关闭而"极弱上拉"维持开状态,为了把这个引脚强拉为低,外部装置必须有足够的灌电流能力使引脚上的电压降到门槛电压以下。

第2个上拉晶体管,称为"极弱上拉",当口线锁存为1时打开。当引脚悬空时,这个极弱的上拉源产生很弱的上拉电流将引脚上拉为高电平。

第3个上拉晶体管称为"强上拉"。当口线锁存器由0到1跳变时,这个上拉用来加快准双向口由逻辑0到逻辑1转换。当发生这种情况时,强上拉打开约2个时钟以使引脚能够迅速地上拉到高电平。

准双向口输出如下图所示。



准双口输出

STC12LE5410AD系列单片机为3V器件,如果用户在引脚加上5V电压,将会有电流从引脚流向Vcc,这样导致额外的功率消耗。因此,建议不要在准双向口模式中向3V单片机引脚施加5V电压,如使用的话,要加限流电阻,或用二极管做输入隔离,或用三极管做输出隔离。

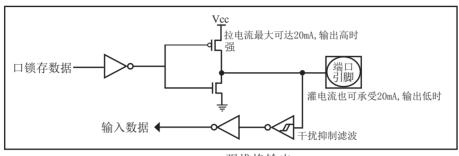
准双向口带有一个施密特触发输入以及一个干扰抑制电路。

准双向口读外部状态前,要先锁存为'1',才可读到外部正确的状态.

4.2.2 强推挽输出配置

强推挽输出配置的下拉结构与开漏输出以及准双向口的下拉结构相同,但当锁存器为1时 提供持续的强上拉。推挽模式一般用于需要更大驱动电流的情况。

强推挽引脚配置如下图所示。



强推挽输出

4.2.3 仅为输入(高阻)配置

输入口配置如下图所示。



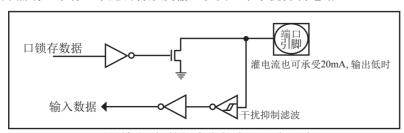
仅为输入(高阻)模式

输入口带有一个施密特触发输入以及一个干扰抑制电路。

4.2.4 开漏输出配置(若外加上拉电阻,也可读)

当口线锁存器为0时,开漏输出关闭所有上拉晶体管。当作为一个逻辑输出时,这种配置方式必须有外部上拉,一般通过电阻外接到Vcc。如果外部有上拉电阻,开漏的I/0口还可读外部状态,即此时被配置为开漏模式的I/0口还可作为输入I/0口。这种方式的下拉与准双向口相同。输出口线配置如下图所示。

开漏端口带有一个施密特触发输入以及一个干扰抑制电路。



开漏输出(如外部有上拉电阻,也可读)

关于I/0口应用注意事项:

少数用户反映I/0口有损坏现象, 后发现是

有些是I/0口由低变高读外部状态时,读不对,实际没有损坏,软件处理一下即可。

因为1T的8051单片机速度太快了,软件执行由低变高指令后立即读外部状态,此时由于实际输出还没有变高,就有可能读不对,正确的方法是在软件设置由低变高后加1到2个空操作指令延时,再读就对了.

有些实际没有损坏,加上拉电阻就OK了

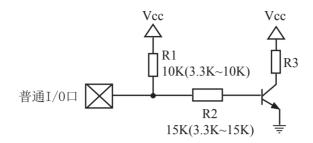
有些是外围接的是NPN三极管,没有加上拉电阻,其实基极串多大电阻,I/0口就应该上拉多大的电阻,或者将该I/0口设置为强推挽输出.

有些确实是损坏了,原因:

发现有些是驱动LED发光二极管没有加限流电阻,建议加1K以上的限流电阻,至少也要加470欧姆以上

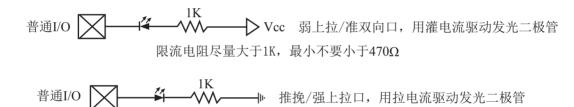
发现有些是做行列矩阵按键扫描电路时,实际工作时没有加限流电阻,实际工作时可能出现2个I/0口均输出为低,并且在按键按下时,短接在一起,我们知道一个CMOS电路的2个输出脚不应该直接短接在一起,按键扫描电路中,此时一个口为了读另外一个口的状态,必须先置高才能读另外一个口的状态,而8051单片机的弱上拉口在由0变为1时,会有2个时钟的强推挽高输出电流,输出到另外一个输出为低的I/0口,就有可能造成I/0口损坏.建议在两侧各加1K限流电阻,或者在软件处理上,不要出现按键两端的I/0口同时为低.

4.3 一种典型三极管控制电路



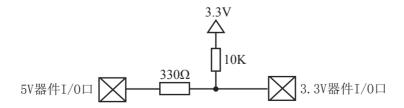
如果用弱上拉控制,建议加上拉电阻R1($3.3K\sim10K$),如果不加上拉电阻R1($3.3K\sim10K$),建议R2的值在15K以上,或用强推挽输出。

4.4 典型发光二极管控制电路



4.5 混合电压供电系统3V/5V器件I/O口互连

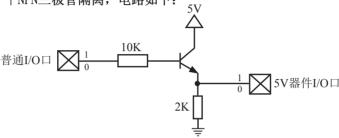
STC12C5410AD系列5V单片机连接3. 3V器件时,为防止3. 3V器件承受不了5V,可将相应的5V单片机I/0口先串一个330Ω的限流电阻到3.3V器件I/O口,程序初始化时将5V器件的I/0口设置成开漏配置,断开内部上拉电阻,相应的3. 3V器件I/0口外部加10K上拉电阻到3. 3V器件的Vcc,这样高电平是3. 3V,低电平是0V,输入输出一切正常。



STC12LE5410AD系列3V单片机连接5V器件时,为防止3V器件承受不了5V,如果相应的 I/0口是输入,可在该I/0口上串接一个隔离二极管,隔离高压部分。外部信号电压高于单片机工作电压时截止,I/0口因内部上拉到高电平,所以读I/0口状态是高电平;外部信号电压为低时导通,I/0口被钳位在0.7V,小于0.8V时单片机读I/0口状态是低电平。



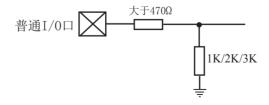
STC12LE5410AD系列3V单片机连接5V器件时,为防止3V器件承受不了5V,如果相应的I/0口是输出,可用一个NPN三极管隔离,电路如下:



4.6 如何让I/O口上电复位时为低电平

普通8051单片机上电复位时普通I/0口为弱上拉高电平输出,而很多实际应用要求上电时某些I/0口为低电平输出,否则所控制的系统(如马达)就会误动作,现STC12系列单片机由于既有弱上拉输出又有强推挽输出,就可以很轻松的解决此问题。

现可在STC12系列单片机I/0口上加一个下拉电阻(1K/2K/3K),这样上电复位时,虽然单片机内部I/0口是弱上拉/高电平输出,但由于内部上拉能力有限,而外部下拉电阻又较小,无法将其拉高,所以该I/0口上电复位时外部为低电平。如果要将此I/0口驱动为高电平,可将此I/0口设置为强推挽输出,而强推挽输出时,I/0口驱动电流可达20mA,故肯定可以将该口驱动为高电平输出。



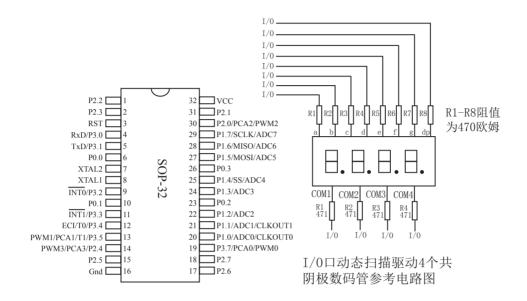
4.7 PWM输出时I/O口的状态

当某个I/0口作为PWM输出用时,该口的状态:

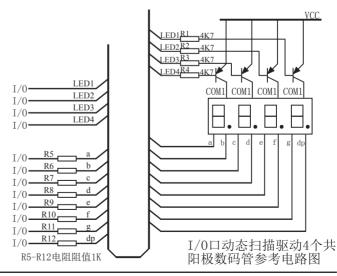
PWM 之前口的状态	PWM时口的状态
弱上拉/准双向口	强推挽输出/强上拉输出 要加输出限流电阻10K~1K
强推挽输出	强推挽输出/强上拉输出 要加输出限流电阻10K~1K
仅为输入/高阻	PWM无效
开漏	开漏



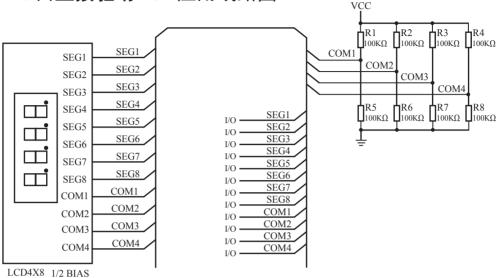
4.9 I/O口直接驱动LED数码管应用线路图



I/0口动态扫描驱动数码管时,可以一次点亮一个数码管中的8段,但为降低功耗,建议可以一次只点亮其中的4段或者2段



4.10 I/O口直接驱动LCD应用线路图



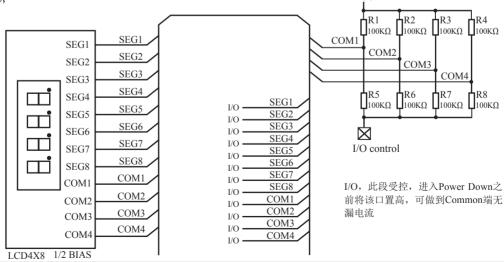
如何点亮相应的LCD像素:

当相应的Common端和相应的Segment端压差大于1/2Vcc时,相应的像素就显示,当压差小于1/2Vcc时,相应的像素就不显示

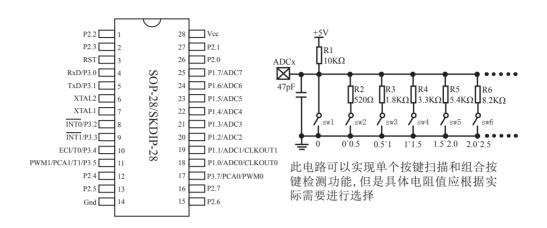
I/O口如何控制Segment:

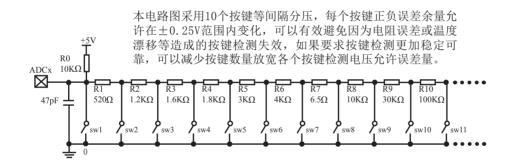
I/O口直接控制Segment,程序控制相应的口输出高或低时,对应的Segment就是Vcc或0V I/O口如何控制Common:

I/O口和2个100K的分压电阻组成Common, 当I/O口输出为0时,相应的Common端为0V, 当I/O口强推挽输出为1时,相应的Common端为Vcc, 当I/O口为高阻输入时,相应的Common端为1/2Vcc, VCC



4.11 A/D做按键扫描应用线路图





第5章 指令系统

5.1 寻址方式

寻址方式是每一种计算机的指令集中不可缺少的部分。寻址方式规定了数据的来源和目的地。对不同的程序指令,来源和目的地的规定也会不同。在STC单片机中的寻址方式可概括为:

- 立即寻址
- 直接寻址
- 间接寻址
- 寄存器寻址
- 相对寻址
- 变址寻址
- 位寻址

5.1.1 立即寻址

立即寻址也称立即数,它是在指令操作数中直接给出参加运算的操作数,其指令格式如下:

如: MOV A, #70H

这条指令的功能是将立即数70H传送到累加器A中

5.1.2 直接寻址

在直接寻址方式中,指令操作数域给出的是参加运算操作数地址。直接寻址方式只能用来 表示特殊功能寄存器、内部数据寄存器和位地址空间。其中特殊功能寄存器和位地址空间只能 用直接寻址方式访问。

如: ANL 70H, #48H

表示70H单元中的数与立即数48H相"与",结果存放在70H单元中。其中70H为直接地址,表示内部数据存储器RAM中的一个单元。

5.1.3 间接寻址

间接寻址采用R0或R1前添加"@"符号来表示。例如,假设R1中的数据是40H,内部数据存储器40H单元所包含的数据为55H,那么如下指令:

MOV A, @R1

把数据55H传送到累加器。

5.1.4 寄存器寻址

寄存器寻址是对选定的工作寄存器R7~R0、累加器A、通用寄存器B、地址寄存器和进位C中的数进行操作。其中寄存器R7~R0由指令码的低3位表示,ACC、B、DPTR及进位位C隐含在指令码中。因此,寄存器寻址也包含一种隐含寻址方式。

寄存器工作区的选择由程序状态字寄存器PSW中的RS1、RS0来决定。指令操作数指定的寄存器均指当前工作区中的寄存器。

如: INC R0 ;(R0)+1
$$\rightarrow$$
 R0

5.1.5 相对寻址

相对寻址是将程序计数器PC中的当前值与指令第二字节给出的数相加,其结果作为转移指令的转移地址。转移地址也称为转移目的地址,PC中的当前值称为基地址,指令第二字节给出的数称为偏移量。由于目的地址是相对于PC中的基地址而言,所以这种寻址方式称为相对寻址。偏移量为带符号的数,所能表示的范围为+127~-128。这种寻址方式主要用于转移指令。

表示若进位位C为0,则程序计数器PC中的内容不改变,即不转移。若进位位C为1,则以PC中的当前值为基地址,加上偏移量80H后所得到的结果作为该转移指令的目的地址。

5.1.6 变址寻址

在变址寻址方式中,指令操作数指定一个存放变址基值的变址寄存器。变址寻址时,偏移量与变址基值相加,其结果作为操作数的地址。变址寄存器有程序计数器PC和地址寄存器 DPTR.

切: MOVC A. @A+DPTR

表示累加器A为偏移量寄存器,其内容与地址寄存器DPTR中的内容相加,其结果作为操作数的地址,取出该单元中的数送入累加器A。

5.1.7 位寻址

位寻址是指对一些内部数据存储器RAM和特殊功能寄存器进行位操作时的寻址。在进行位操作时,借助于进位位C作为位操作累加器,指令操作数直接给出该位的地址,然后根据操作码的性质对该位进行位操作。位地址与字节直接寻址中的字节地址形式完全一样,主要由操作码加以区分,使用时应注意。

如: MOV C, 20H ; 片内位单元位操作型指令

5.2 指令系统分类总结

- ----与普通8051指令代码完全兼容,但执行的时间效率大幅提升
- ----其中INC DPTR指令的执行速度大幅提升24倍
- ----共有12条指令,一个时钟就可以执行完成,平均速度快8~12倍

算术操作类指令

如果按功能分类, STC12C5410AD系列单片机指令系统可分为:

- 1. 数据传送类指令:
- 2. 算术操作类指令;
- 3. 逻辑操作类指令:
- 4. 控制转移类指令;
- 5. 布尔变量操作类指令。

按功能分类的指令系统表如下表所示。

传统 12T的8051 指令执行所需时钟 指令执行所需时钟

			开/小木下人;	•			
助记符		夺	功能说明	字节数	12时钟/机器周 期所需时钟	1时钟/机器周 期所需时钟	效率 提升
ADD	Α,	Rn	寄存器内容加到累加器	1	12	2	6倍
ADD	Α,	direct	直接地址单元中的数据加到累加器	2	12	3	4倍
ADD	Α,	@Ri	间接RAM中的数据加到累加器	1	12	3	4倍
ADD	Α,	#data	立即数加到累加器	2	12	2	6倍
ADDC	Α,	Rn	寄存器带进位加到累加器	1	12	2	6倍
ADDC	Α,	direct	直接地址单元的内容带进位加到累加器	2	12	3	4倍
ADDC	Α,	@Ri	间接RAM内容带进位加到累加器	1	12	3	4倍
ADDC	Α,	#data	立即数带进位加到累加器	2	12	2	6倍
SUBB	Α,	Rn	累加器带借位减寄存器内容	1	12	2	6倍
SUBB	Α,	direct	累加器带借位减直接地址单元的内容	2	12	3	4倍
SUBB	Α,	@Ri	累加器带借位减间接RAM中的内容	1	12	3	4倍
SUBB	Α,	#data	累加器带借位减立即数	2	12	2	6倍
INC	A		累加器加1	1	12	2	6倍
INC	Rn		寄存器加1	1	12	3	4倍
INC	dire	ect	直接地址单元加1	2	12	4	3倍
INC	@Ri		间接RAM单元加1	1	12	4	3倍
DEC	A		累加器减1	1	12	2	6倍
DEC			寄存器减1	1	12	3	4倍
DEC	direct		直接地址单元减1	2	12	4	3倍
DEC	@Ri		间接RAM单元减1	1	12	4	3倍
INC	DPTR		地址寄存器DPTR加1	1	24	1	24倍
MUL			A乘以B	1	48	4	12倍
DIV			A除以B 思力。思力。进制。图 数	1	48	5	9.6倍
DA A			累加器十进制调整	1	12	4	3倍

逻辑操作类指令

助记符	功能说明	字节	12时钟/机器周期底零时钟	1时钟/机器周期所需以始	效率 提升
A Dm	里加吸上安方吸扣"上"				6倍
	 	_			
	7				4倍
		1	12	3	4倍
A, #data	累加器与立即数相"与"	2	12	2	6倍
direct, A	直接地址单元与累加器相"与"	2	12	4	3倍
direct, #data	直接地址单元与立即数相"与"	3	24	4	6倍
A, Rn	累加器与寄存器相"或"	1	12	2	6倍
A, direct	累加器与直接地址单元相"或"	2	12	3	4倍
A, @Ri	累加器与间接RAM单元相"或"	1	12	3	4倍
A, # data	累加器与立即数相"或"	2	12	2	6倍
direct, A	直接地址单元与累加器相"或"	2	12	4	3倍
direct, #data	直接地址单元与立即数相"或"	3	24	4	6倍
A, Rn	累加器与寄存器相"异或"	1	12	2	6倍
A, direct	累加器与直接地址单元相"异或"	2	12	3	4倍
A, @Ri	累加器与间接RAM单元相"异或"	1	12	3	4倍
A, # data	累加器与立即数相"异或"	2	12	2	6倍
direct, A	直接地址单元与累加器相"异或"	2	12	4	3倍
direct, #data	直接地址单元与立即数相"异或"	3	24	4	6倍
A	累加器清" 0"	1	12	1	12倍
A	累加器求反	1	12	2	6倍
A	累加器循环左移	1	12	1	12倍
A	累加器带进位位循环左移	1	12	1	12倍
A	累加器循环右移	1	12	1	12倍
A	累加器带进位位循环右移	1	12	1	12倍
A	累加器内高低半字节交换	1	12	1	12倍
	A, Rn A, direct A, @Ri A, #data direct, A direct, #data A, Rn A, direct A, @Ri A, # data direct, A direct, A direct, A direct, A direct, #data A, Rn A, direct A, @Ri A, # data direct, #data A, Rn A, direct A, @Ri A, # data direct, A direct, #data A A A A A A A A	A, Rn 累加器与高存器相"与" A, direct 累加器与直接地址单元相"与" A, @Ri 累加器与间接RAM单元相"与" A, #data 累加器与立即数相"与" direct, A 直接地址单元与累加器相"与" direct, #data 直接地址单元与立即数相"与" A, Rn 累加器与高存器相"或" A, @Ri 累加器与间接RAM单元相"或" A, # data 累加器与立即数相"或" direct, A 直接地址单元与累加器相"或" direct, #data 直接地址单元与立即数相"异或" A, @Ri 累加器与直接地址单元相"异或" A, # data 累加器与间接RAM单元相"异或" direct, A 直接地址单元与累加器相"异或" direct, #data 直接地址单元与实即数相"异或" A 累加器清"0" A 累加器清 A 累加器循环左移 A 累加器循环右移 A 累加器带进位位循环右移 A 累加器带进位位循环右移	切记付 切配明 数 A, Rn 累加器与寄存器相"与" 1 A, direct 累加器与直接地址单元相"与" 2 A, @Ri 累加器与间接RAM单元相"与" 1 A, #data 累加器与立即数相"与" 2 direct, A 直接地址单元与京加器相"与" 2 direct, #data 直接地址单元与立即数相"或" 1 A, @Ri 累加器与直接地址单元相"或" 2 A, # data 累加器与立即数相"或" 2 direct, A 直接地址单元与累加器相"或" 2 direct, #data 直接地址单元与立即数相"或" 3 A, @Ri 累加器与高存器相"异或" 1 A, @Ri 累加器与直接地址单元相"异或" 2 A, @Ri 累加器与间接RAM单元相"异或" 2 A, @Ri 累加器与间接RAM单元相"异或" 2 A, # data 累加器与间接RAM单元相"异或" 2 direct, A 直接地址单元与京即数相"异或" 2 direct, #data 直接地址单元与立即数相"异或" 3 A 累加器清"0" 1 A 累加器清"0" 1 A 累加器清环左移 1 A 累加器循环左移 1 A 累加器循环右移 1 A 累加器循环右移<	切に付 切能切明 数 期所需时钟 A, Rn 累加器与寄存器相"与" 1 12 A, direct 累加器与直接地址单元相"与" 1 12 A, @Ri 累加器与间接RAM单元相"与" 1 12 A, #data 累加器与立即数相"与" 2 12 direct, A 直接地址单元与累加器相"与" 3 24 A, Rn 累加器与寄存器相"或" 1 12 A, direct 累加器与直接地址单元相"或" 2 12 A, @Ri 累加器与间接RAM单元相"或" 2 12 direct, A 直接地址单元与累加器相"或" 2 12 direct, #data 直接地址单元与立即数相"或" 3 24 A, Rn 累加器与奇存器相"异或" 1 12 A, QRi 累加器与商存器相"异或" 1 12 A, QRi 累加器与商存器相"异或" 1 12 A, QRi 累加器与直接地址单元与立即数相"异或" 1 12 A, (QRi 累加器与间接RAM单元相"异或" 2 12 A, (QRi 累加器与直接地址单元与京加器相"异或" 2 12 A, (QRi 累加器与直接地址单元与立即数相"异或" 2 12 A 累加器清"0" 1 12 A 累加器清"0" 1 12 A 累加器循环左移 1 12 A 累加器循环左移 1 12 A <td>切託の明 数 期所需时钟 期所需时钟 A、Rn 累加器与商存器相"与" 1 12 2 A、direct 累加器与直接地址单元相"与" 1 12 3 A、@Ri 累加器与间接RAM单元相"与" 1 12 3 A、#data 累加器与立即数相"与" 2 12 4 direct, A 直接地址单元与累加器相"与" 3 24 4 A、Rn 累加器与高存器相"或" 1 12 2 A, direct 累加器与直接地址单元相"或" 2 12 3 A, @Ri 累加器与直接地址单元相"或" 1 12 3 A, # data 累加器与立即数相"或" 2 12 4 direct, A 直接地址单元与京加器相"或" 2 12 4 A, Rn 累加器与高存器相"异或" 1 12 2 A, direct 累加器与直接地址单元与立即数相"异或" 1 12 3 A, 健康 累加器与直接地址单元相"异或" 2 12 4 direct, A 直接地址单元与京加器相"异或" 2 12 4 direct, A 直接地址单元与立即数相"异或"</td>	切託の明 数 期所需时钟 期所需时钟 A、Rn 累加器与商存器相"与" 1 12 2 A、direct 累加器与直接地址单元相"与" 1 12 3 A、@Ri 累加器与间接RAM单元相"与" 1 12 3 A、#data 累加器与立即数相"与" 2 12 4 direct, A 直接地址单元与累加器相"与" 3 24 4 A、Rn 累加器与高存器相"或" 1 12 2 A, direct 累加器与直接地址单元相"或" 2 12 3 A, @Ri 累加器与直接地址单元相"或" 1 12 3 A, # data 累加器与立即数相"或" 2 12 4 direct, A 直接地址单元与京加器相"或" 2 12 4 A, Rn 累加器与高存器相"异或" 1 12 2 A, direct 累加器与直接地址单元与立即数相"异或" 1 12 3 A, 健康 累加器与直接地址单元相"异或" 2 12 4 direct, A 直接地址单元与京加器相"异或" 2 12 4 direct, A 直接地址单元与立即数相"异或"

数据传送类指令

助记符	功能说明	字节 数	12时钟/机器 周期所需时钟	1时钟/机器周 期所需时钟	效率 提升
A, Rn	寄存器内容送入累加器	1	12	1	12倍
A, direct	直接地址单元中的数据送入累加器	2	12	2	6倍
A, @Ri	间接RAM中的数据送入累加器	1	12	2	6倍
A, #data	立即 数送入累加器	2	12	2	6倍
Rn, A	累加器内容送入寄存器	1	12	2	6倍
Rn, direct	直接地址单元中的数据送入寄存器	2	24	4	6倍
Rn, #data	立即数送入寄存器	2	12	2	6倍
direct, A	累加器内容送入直接地址单元	2	12	3	4倍
direct, Rn	寄存器内容送入直接地址单元	2	24	3	8倍
direct, direct	直接地址单元中的数据送入另一个直接地址单元	3	24	4	6倍
direct, @Ri	间接RAM中的数据送入直接地址单元	2	24	4	6倍
direct, #data	立即数送入直接地址单元	3	24	3	8倍
@Ri, A	累加器内容送间接RAM单元	1	12	3	4倍
@Ri, direct	直接地址单元数据送入间接RAM单元	2	24	4	6倍
@Ri, #data	立即数送入间接RAM单元	2	12	3	4倍
DPTR,#data16	16位立即数送入数据指针	3	24	3	8倍
A, @A+DPTR	以DPTR为基地址变址寻址单元中的数据送入累加器	1	24	4	6倍
A, @A+PC	以PC为基地址变址寻址单元中的数据送入累加器	1	24	4	6倍
A, @Ri	逻辑上在外部的片内扩展RAM,(8位地址)送入累加器	1	24	3	8倍
@Ri, A	累加器送入逻辑上在外部的片内扩展RAM(8位地址)	1	24	4	6倍
A, @DPTR	逻辑上在外部的片内扩展RAM, (16位地址)送入累加器	1	24	3	8倍
@DPTR, A	累加器送逻辑上在外部的片内扩展RAM(16位地址)	1	24	3	8倍
direct	直接地址单元中的数据压入堆栈	2	24	4	6倍
direcct	栈底数据弹出送入 直接地址单元	2	24	3	8倍
A, Rn	寄存器与累加器交换	1	12	3	4倍
A,direct	直接地址单元与累加器交换	2	12	4	3倍
A, @Ri	间接RAM与累加器交换	1	12	4	3倍
A, @Ri	间接RAM的低半字节与累加器交换	1	12	4	3倍
	A, Rn A, direct A, @Ri A, #data Rn, A Rn, direct Rn, #data direct, A direct, Rn direct, @Ri direct, direct direct, #data @Ri, A @Ri, direct @Ri, #data DPTR,#data16 A, @A+DPTR A, @A+PC A, @Ri @Ri, A A, @DPTR @DPTR, A direct direct direct A, Rn A, direct A, Rn A, direct A, @Ri	A, Rn 寄存器内容送入累加器 A, direct 直接地址单元中的数据送入累加器 A, @Ri 间接RAM中的数据送入累加器 A, #data 立即数送入累加器 Rn, A 累加器内容送入寄存器 Rn, direct 直接地址单元中的数据送入寄存器 direct, A 累加器内容送入直接地址单元 direct, Rn 寄存器内容送入直接地址单元 direct, direct 直接地址单元中的数据送入另一个直接地址单元 direct, #data 立即数送入直接地址单元 direct, #data 立即数送入直接地址单元 @Ri, A 累加器内容送间接RAM单元 @Ri, direct 直接地址单元数据送入间接RAM单元 @Ri, #data 立即数送入数据指针 A, @A+DPTR 以DPTR为基地址变址寻址单元中的数据送入累加器 A, @A+PC 以PC为基地址变址寻址单元中的数据送入累加器 QRi, A 累加器送逻辑上在外部的片内扩展RAM(8位地址)送入累加器 QRi, A 累加器送逻辑上在外部的片内扩展RAM(16位地址)送入累加器 QPTR, A 累加器送逻辑上在外部的片内扩展RAM(16位地址) 成市 直接地址单元中的数据压入堆栈 付irect 直接地址单元中的数据压入堆栈 direct 直接地址单元与累加器交换 A, @Ri 寄存器与累加器交换 A, @Ri 向存器与累加器交换 A, @Ri 间接RAM中记	期に行 切能説明 数 A, Rn 寄存器内容送入累加器 1 A, direct 直接地址单元中的数据送入累加器 2 A, @Ri 间接RAM中的数据送入累加器 1 A, #data 立即数送入累加器 2 Rn, A 累加器内容送入寄存器 1 Rn, direct 直接地址单元中的数据送入寄存器 2 direct, A 累加器内容送入直接地址单元 2 direct, Rn 寄存器内容送入直接地址单元 2 direct, direct 直接地址单元中的数据送入另一个直接地址单元 3 direct, @Ri 间接RAM中的数据送入直接地址单元 2 direct, #data 立即数送入直接地址单元 2 direct, #data 立即数送入直接地址单元 2 @Ri, A 累加器内容送间接RAM单元 2 @Ri, direct 直接地址单元数据送入间接RAM单元 2 @Ri, #data 立即数送入数据指针 3 A, @A+DPTR 以DPTR为基地址变址寻址单元中的数据送入累加器 1 A, @A+PC 以PC为基地址变址寻址单元中的数据送入累加器 1 QRi, A 累加器送逻辑上在外部的片内扩展RAM(8位地址)送入累加器 1 @Ri, A 累加器送入逻辑上在外部的片内扩展RAM(16位地址)送入累加器 1 @Ri, A 累加器送入逻辑上在外部的片内扩展RAM(16位地址)送入累加器	期に行 切能児明 数 周期所需时钟 A, Rn 寄存器内容送入累加器 1 12 A, direct 直接地址単元中的数据送入累加器 2 12 A, @Ri 间接RAM中的数据送入累加器 1 12 A, #data 立即数送入累加器 2 12 Rn, A 累加器内容送入寄存器 1 12 Rn, direct 直接地址单元中的数据送入寄存器 2 24 Rn, data 立即数送入寄存器 2 12 direct, A 累加器内容送入直接地址单元 2 12 direct, B 寄存器内容送入直接地址单元 2 24 direct, direct 直接地址单元中的数据送入局上接地址单元 3 24 direct, @Ri 间接RAM中的数据送入直接地址单元 2 24 direct, #data 立即数送入直接地址单元 2 24 @Ri, A 累加器内容送间接RAM单元 1 12 @Ri, direct 直接地址单元数据接入间接RAM单元 2 12 DPTR,#datal6 16位立即数送入数据指针 3 24 A, @A+DPTR 以PDTR为基地址变址步元中的数据送入累加器 1 24 A, @Ri 逻辑上在外部的片内扩展RAM(16位地址)送入累加器 <t< td=""><td> 別能説明 別能説明 別所需时钟 期所需时钟 別所需时钟 ②</td></t<>	別能説明 別能説明 別所需时钟 期所需时钟 別所需时钟 ②

布尔变量操作类指令

助记符		功能说明		12时钟/机器	1时钟/机器周期	效率
Į,	71 NP J.1	切形优势	数	周期所需时钟	所需时钟	提升
CLR	C	清零进位位	1	12	1	12倍
CLR	bit	清0直接地址位	2	12	4	3倍
SETB	С	置1进位位	1	12	1	12倍
SETB	bit	置1直接地址位	2	12	4	3倍
CPL	С	进位位求反	1	12	1	12倍
CPL	bit	直接地址位求反	2	12	4	3倍
ANL	C, bit	进位位和直接地址位相"与"	2	24	3	8倍
ANL	C, /bit	进位位和直接地址位的反码相"与"	2	24	3	8倍
ORL	C, bit	进位位和直接地址位相"或"	2	24	3	8倍
ORL	C, /bit	进位位和直接地址位的反码相"或"	2	24	3	8倍
MOV	C, bit	直接地址位送入进位位	2	12	3	4倍
MOV	bit, C	进位位送入直接地址位	2	24	4	6倍
JC	rel	进位位为1则转移	2	24	3	8倍
JNC	rel	进位位为0则转移	2	24	3	8倍
JВ	bit, rel	直接地址位为1则转移	3	24	4	6倍
JNB	bit, rel	直接地址位为0则转移	3	24	4	6倍
JBC	bit, rel	直接地址位为1则转移,该位清0	3	24	5	4.8倍

控制转移类指令

			I			
助记符		功能说明	字节 数	12时钟/机器 周期所需时钟	1时钟/机器周期所需时钟	效率 提升
ACALL	addr11	绝对(短)调用子程序	2	24	6	4倍
LCALL	addr16	长调用子程序	3	24	6	4倍
RET		子程序返回	1	24	4	6倍
RETI		中断返回	1	24	4	6倍
AJMP	addr11	绝对(短)转移	2	24	3	8倍
LJMP	addr16	长转移	3	24	4	6倍
SJMP	re1	相对转移	2	24	3	8倍
JMP	@A+DPTR	相对于DPTR的间接转移	1	24	3	8倍
JZ	re1	累加器为零转移	2	24	3	8倍
JNZ	re1	累加器非零转移	2	24	3	8倍
CJNE	A, direct, re1	累加器与直接地址单元比较,不相等则转移	3	24	5	4.8倍
CJNE	A, #data, re1	累加器与立即数比较,不相等则转移	3	24	4	6倍
CJNE	Rn, #data, re1	寄存器与立即数比较,不相等则转移	3	24	4	6倍
CJNE	@Ri, #data, re1	间接RAM单元与立即数比较,不相等则转移	3	24	5	4.8倍
DJNZ	Rn, re1	寄存器减1,非零转移	2	24	4	6倍
DJNZ	direct, re1	直接地址单元减1,非零转移	3	24	5	4.8倍
NOP	<u> </u>	空操作	1	12	1	12倍

指令执行速度效率提升总结:

指令系统共包括111条指令,其中:

执行速度快24倍的 共1条 执行速度快12倍的 共12条 执行速度快9.6倍的 共1条 执行速度快8倍的 共19条 执行速度快6倍的 共39条 执行谏度快4.8倍的 共4条 执行速度快4倍的 共21条 执行速度快3倍的 共14条

根据对指令的使用频率分析统计,STC12系列 1T的8051单片机比普通的8051单片机在同样的工作频率下运行速度提升了8~12倍。

指令执行时钟数统计(供参考):

指令系统共包括111条指令,其中:

1个时钟就可执行完成的指令 共12条 2个时钟就可执行完成的指令 共20条 3个时钟就可执行完成的指令 共39条 4个时钟就可执行完成的指令 共33条 5个时钟就可执行完成的指令 共5条 6个时钟就可执行完成的指令 共2条

5.3 传统8051单片机指令定义详解(中文&English)

5.3.1 传统8051单片机指令定义详解

ACALL addr 11

功能: 绝对调用

说明: ACALL指令实现无条件调用位于addr11参数所表示地址的子例程。在执行该指令时,首先将PC的值增加2,即使得PC指向ACALL的下一条指令,然后把16位PC的低8位和高8位依次压入栈,同时把栈指针两次加1。然后,把当前PC值的高5位、ACALL指令第1字节的7~5位和第2字节组合起来,得到一个16位目的地址,该地址即为即将调用的子例程的入口地址。要求该子例程的起始地址必须与紧随ACALL之后的指令处于同1个2KB的程序存储页中。ACALL指令在执行时不会改变各个标志位。

举例: SP的初始值为07H,标号SUBRTN位于程序存储器的0345H地址处,如果执行位于地址0123H处的指令:

ACALL SUBRTN

那么SP变为09H,内部RAM地址08H和09H单元的内容分别为25H和01H,PC值变为0345H。

指令长度(字节): 2

执行周期: 2

二进制编码: alo a9 a8 l 0 0 l 0 a7 a6 a5 a4 a3 a2 al a0

注意: a10 a9 a8是11位目标地址addr11的A10~A8位, a7 a6 a5 a4 a3 a2 a1 a0是addr11的A7~A0位。

操作: ACALL

 $(PC)\leftarrow (PC)+2$

 $(SP)\leftarrow (SP) + 1$

 $((sP)) \leftarrow (PC_{7-0})$

 $(SP)\leftarrow (SP) + 1$

 $((SP))\leftarrow (PC_{15.8})$

(PC10.0)← 页码地址

ADD A, <src-byte>

功能: 加法

说明: ADD指令可用于完成把src-byte所表示的源操作数和累加器A的当前值相加。并将结果置于累加器A中。根据运算结果,若第7位有进位则置进位标志为1,否则清零;若第3位有进位则置辅助进位标志为1,否则清零。如果是无符号整数相加则进位置位,显示当前运算结果发生溢出。

如果第6位有进位生成而第7位没有,或第7位有进位生成而第6位没有,则置OV 为1,否则OV被清零。在进行有符号整数的相加运算的时候,OV置位表示两个正整 数之和为一负数,或是两个负整数之和为一正数。

本类指令的源操作数可接受4种寻址方式:寄存器寻址、直接寻址、寄存器间接寻址和立即寻址。

举例: 假设累加器A中的数据为0C3H(000011B), R0的值为0AAH(10101010B)。执行如下指令:

ADD A, R0

累加器A中的结果为6DH(01101101B),辅助进位标志AC被清零,进位标志C和溢出标志OV被置1。

ADD A, Rn

指令长度(字节): 1

执行周期: 1

二进制编码: 0010 1 r r r

操作: ADD

 $(A)\leftarrow(A)+(Rn)$

ADD A, direct

指令长度(字节): 2

执行周期: 1

二进制编码: 0 0 1 0 0 1 0 1 direct address

操作: ADD

 $(A)\leftarrow(A)+(direct)$

ADD A, @Ri

指令长度(字节): 1

执行周期: 1

二进制编码: 0 0 1 0 0 1 1 i

操作: ADD

 $(A)\leftarrow(A)+((Ri))$

ADD A, #data

指令长度(字节): 2

执行周期: 1

二进制编码: 0010 0100

immediate data

操作: ADD

 $(A)\leftarrow(A) + \#data$

ADDC A, <src-byte>

功能: 带进位的加法。

Wan II.

执行ADDC指令时,把src-byte所代表的源操作数连同进位标志一起加到累加器 A上,并将结果置于累加器A中。根据运算结果,若在第7位有进位生成,则将进位标志置1,否则清零;若在第3位有进位生成,则置辅助进位标志为1,否则清零。如果是无符号数整数相加,进位的置位显示当前运算结果发生溢出。

如果第6位有进位生成而第7位没有,或第7位有进位生成而第6位没有,则将OV置1,否则将OV清零。在进行有符号整数相加运算的时候,OV置位,表示两个正整数之和为一负数,或是两个负整数之和为一正数。

本类指令的源操作数允许4种寻址方式: 寄存器寻址、直接寻址、寄存器间接寻址和立即寻址。

举例: 假设累加器A中的数据为0C3H(11000011B), R0的值为0AAH(10101010B), 进位标志为1, 执行如下指令:

ADDC A,R0

累加器A中的结果为6EH(01101110B),辅助进位标志AC被清零,进位标志C和溢出标志OV被置1。

ADDC A, Rn

指令长度(字节): 1

执行周期: 1

二进制编码: 0 0 1 1 1 rrr

操作: ADDC

 $(A)\leftarrow(A)+(C)+(Rn)$

ADDC A,direct

指令长度(字节): 2

执行周期: 1

二进制编码: 0 0 1 1 0 1 0 1 direct address

操作: ADDC

 $(A)\leftarrow(A)+(C)+(direct)$

ADDC A, @Ri

指令长度(字节): 1

执行周期: 1

二进制编码: 0 0 1 1 0 1 1 i

操作: ADDC

 $(A)\leftarrow(A)+(C)+((Ri))$

ADDC A, #data

指令长度(字节): 2 执行周期: 1

二进制编码: 0 0 1 1 0 1 0 0 immediate data

操作: ADDC

 $(A)\leftarrow(A)+(C)+\#data$

AJMP addr 11

功能: 绝对跳转

说明: AJMP指令用于将程序转到相应的目的地址去执行,该地址在程序执行过程之中产生,由PC值(两次递增之后)的高5位、操作码的7~5位和指令的第2字

节连接形成。要求跳转的目的地址和AJMP指令的后一条指令的第1字节位于同一

2KB的程序存储页内。

举例: 假设标号JMPADR位于程序存储器的0123H,指令

AJMP JMPADR

位于0345H, 执行完该指令后PC值变为0123H。

指令长度(字节): 2

执行周期: 2

二进制编码: alo a9 a8 0 0 0 0 1 a7 a6 a5 a4 a3 a2 a1 a0

注意: 目的地址的A10-A8=a10~a8, A7-A0=a7~a0

操作: AJMP

 $(PC)\leftarrow (PC)+2$

 $(PC_{10-0})\leftarrow$ page address

ANL <dest-byte>, <src-byte>

功能: 对字节变量讲行逻辑与运算

说明: ANL指令将由<dest-byte>和<src-byte>所指定的两个字节变量逐位进行逻辑与运算,并将运算结果存放在<dest-byte>所指定的目的操作数中。该指令的执行不会影响标志位。

两个操作数组合起来允许6种寻址模式。当目的操作数为累加器时,源操作数允许寄存器寻址、直接寻址、寄存器间接寻址和立即寻址。当目的操作数是直接地址时,源操作数可以是累加器或立即数。

注意: 当该指令用于修改输出端口时, 读入的原始数据来自于输出数据的锁存器而非输入引脚。

举例: 如果累加器的内容为0C3H(11000011B),寄存器0的内容为55H(010101011B),那 么指令:

ANL A,R0

执行结果是累加器的内容变为41H(01000001H)。

当目的操作数是可直接寻址的数据时,ANL指令可用来把任何RAM单元或者硬件寄存器中的某些位清零。屏蔽字节将决定哪些位将被清零。屏蔽字节可能是常数,也可能是累加器在计算过程中产生。如下指令:

ANL Pl, #01110011B

将端口1的位7、位3和位2清零。

ANL A, Rn

指令长度(字节): 1

执行周期: 1

二进制编码: 0 1 0 1 1 r r r

操作: ANL

(A)←(A) ∧ (Rn)

ANL A, direct

指令长度(字节): 2

执行周期: 1

二进制编码: 0 1 0 1 0 1 0 1 direct address

操作: ANL

 $(A)\leftarrow(A) \land (direct)$

ANL A, @Ri

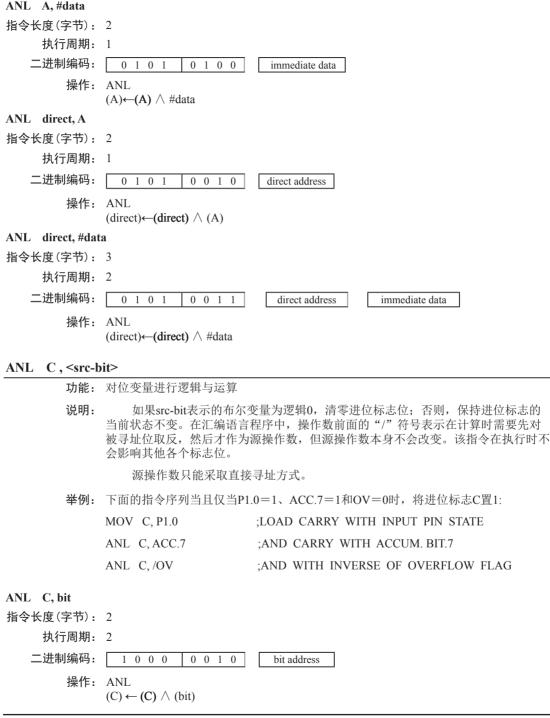
指令长度(字节): 1

执行周期: 1

二进制编码: 0 1 0 1 0 1 1 i

操作: ANL

(A)←(A) ∧ ((Ri))



ANL C, /bit

指令长度(字节): 2

执行周期: 2

二进制编码: 「 1 0 1 1 0 0 0 0

bit address

操作: ANL

 $(C)\leftarrow(C) \wedge (\overline{bit})$

CJNE <dest-byte>, <src-byte>, rel

功能: 若两个操作数不相等则转移

说明:

CJNE首先比较两个操作数的大小,如果二者不等则程序转移。目标地址由位于 CINE指令最后1个字节的有符号偏移量和PC的当前值(紧邻CINE的下一条指令的地 址)相加而成。如果目标操作数作为一个无符号整数,其值小于源操作数对应的无符 号整数,那么将进位标志置1,否则将进位标志清零。但操作数本身不会受到影响。

<dest-byte>和<src-byte>组合起来,允许4种寻址模式。累加器A可以与任何可直 接寻址的数据或立即数进行比较,任何间接寻址的RAM单元或当前工作寄存器都可 以和立即常数讲行比较。

举例: 设累加器A中值为34H, R7包含的数据为56H。如下指令序列:

CINE R7.#60H. NOT-EO

: R7 = 60H..

NOT EQ: REO LOW : IF R7 < 60H. JC

: R7 > 60H.

的第1条指令将进位标志置1,程序跳转到标号NOT EO处。接下去,通过测试进位标 志,可以确定R7是大于60H还是小于60H。

假设端口1的数据也是34H,那么如下指令:

WAIT: CJNE A,P1,WAIT

清除进位标志并继续往下执行,因为此时累加器的值也为34H,即和P1口的数据相 等。(如果PI端口的数据是其他的值,那么程序在此不停地循环,直到PI端口的数据 变成34H为止。)

CJNE A, direct, rel

指令长度(字节): 3

执行周期: 2

二进制编码: 1 0 1 1 0 1 0 1 direct address rel. address

操作: (PC) ← (PC) + 3

IF (A) <> (direct)

THEN

 $(PC) \leftarrow (PC) + relative offset$

IF (A) < (direct)

THEN

 $(C) \leftarrow 1$

ELSE

 $(C) \leftarrow 0$

```
CJNE A, #data, rel
指令长度(字节): 3
       执行周期: 2
    二进制编码:
                      1 0 1 1
                                   0 1 0 1
                                                    immediata data
                                                                           rel. address
           操作: (PC) ← (PC) + 3
                   IF (A) <> (data)
                   THEN
                          (PC) \leftarrow (PC) + relative offset
                   IF(A) < (data)
                   THEN
                           (C) \leftarrow 1
                   ELSE
                          (C) \leftarrow 0
CJNE Rn, #data, rel
指令长度(字节): 3
       执行周期: 2
    二进制编码:
                  1 0 1 1
                                  1 r r r
                                                    immediata data
                                                                           rel. address
           操作: (PC) \leftarrow (PC) + 3
                   IF (Rn) <> (data)
                   THEN
                          (PC) \leftarrow (PC) + relative offset
                   IF (Rn) < (data)
                   THEN
                          (C) \leftarrow 1
                   ELSE
                          (C) \leftarrow 0
CJNE @Ri,#data,rel
指令长度(字节): 3
       执行周期: 2
    二进制编码:
                     1 0 1 1
                                   0 1 1 i
                                                   immediate data
                                                                          rel. address
           操作: (PC) \leftarrow (PC) + 3
                   IF ((Ri)) <> (data)
                   THEN
                          (PC) \leftarrow (PC) + relative offset
                   IF ((Ri)) < (data)
                   THEN
                           (C) \leftarrow 1
                   ELSE
                           (C) \leftarrow 0
```

CLR A

功能: 清除累加器

说明: 该指令用于将累加器A的所有位清零,不影响标志位。

举例: 假设累加器A的内容为5CH(01011100B), 那么指令:

CLR A

执行后,累加器的值变为00H(00000000B)。

指令长度(字节): 1

执行周期: 1

二进制编码: 1 1 1 0 0 1 0 0

操作: CLR

(A)**← 0**

CLR bit

功能: 清零指定的位

说明: 将bit所代表的位清零,没有标志位会受到影响。CLR可用于进位标志C或者所有可直

接寻址的位。

举例: 假设端口1的数据为5DH(01011101B), 那么指令

CLR P1.2

执行后, PI端口被设置为59H(01011001B)。

CLR C

指令长度(字节): 1

执行周期: 1

二进制编码: 1 1 0 0 0 0 1 1

操作: CLR

 $(C) \leftarrow 0$

CLR bit

指令长度(字节): 2

执行周期: 1

二进制编码: 1 1 0 0 0 0 1 0 bit address

操作: CLR

 $(bit) \leftarrow 0$

CPL A

功能: 累加器A求反

说明: 将累加器A的每一位都取反,即原来为1的位变为0,原来为0的位变为1。该指令不影

响标志位。

举例: 设累加器A的内容为5CH(01011100B), 那么指令

CPL A

执行后, 累加器的内容变成0A3H(10100011B)。

指令长度(字节): 1

执行周期: 1

二进制编码: 1 1 1 1 0 1 0 0

操作: CPL _____(A)←(A)

CPL bit

功能: 将bit所表示的位求反

说明: 将bit变量所代表的位取反,即原来位为1的变为0,原来为0的变为1。没有标志

位会受到影响。CLR可用于进位标志C或者所有可直接寻址的位。

注意:如果该指令被用来修改输出端口的状态,那么bit所代表的数据是端口锁存器中的数据,而不是从引脚上输入的当前状态。

举例: 设P1端口的数据为5BH(01011011B), 那么指令

CLR P1.1

CLR P1.2

执行完后, Pl端口被设置为5BH(01011011B)。

CPL C

指令长度(字节): 1

执行周期: 1

二进制编码: 1 0 1 1 0 0 1 1

操作: CPL

 $(C) \leftarrow \overline{(C)}$

CPL bit

指令长度(字节): 2

执行周期: 1

二进制编码: 1 0 1 1 0 0 1 0 bit address

操作: CPL

 $(bit) \leftarrow (bit)$

DA A

功能: 在加法运算之后,对累加器A进行十进制调整

说明: DA指令对累加器A中存放的由此前的加法运算产生的8位数据进行调整(ADD或ADDC指令可以用来实现两个压缩BCD码的加法), 生成两个4位的数字。

如果累加器的低4位(位3~位0)大于9(xxxx1010~xxxx 1111),或者加法运算后,辅助进位标志AC为1,那么DA指令将把6加到累加器上,以在低4位生成正确的BCD数字。若加6后,低4位向上有进位,且高4位都为1,进位则会一直向前传递,以致最后进位标志被置1;但在其他情况下进位标志并不会被清零,进位标志会保持原来的值。

如果进位标志为1,或者高4位的值超过9 (1010xxxx~1111xxxx),那么DA指令将把6加到高4位,在高4位生成正确的BCD数字,但不清除标志位。若高4位有进位输出,则置进位标志为1,否则,不改变进位标志。进位标志的状态指明了原来的两个BCD数据之和是否大于99,因而DA指令使得CPU可以精确地进行十进制的加法运算。注意,OV标志不会受影响。

DA指令的以上操作在一个指令周期内完成。实际上,根据累加器A和机器状态字PSW中的不同内容,DA把00H、06H、60H、66H加到累加器A上,从而实现十进制转换。

注意:如果前面没有进行加法运算,不能直接用DA指令把累加器A中的十六进制数据转换为BCD数,此外,如果先前执行的是减法运算,DA指令也不会有所预期的效果。

举例: 如果累加器中的内容为56H(01010110B),表示十进制数56的BCD码,寄存器3的内容为67H(01100111B),表示十进制数67的BCD码。进位标志为1,则指令

ADDC A,R3

DA A

先执行标准的补码二进制加法,累加器A的值变为0BEH,进位标志和辅助进位标志被清零。

接着,DA执行十进制调整,将累加器A的内容变为24H(00100100B),表示十进制数24的BCD码,也就是56、67及进位标志之和的后两位数字。DA指令会把进位标志置位1,这表示在进行十进制加法时,发生了溢出。56、67以及1的和为124。

把BCD格式的变量加上0lH或99H,可以实现加1或者减1。假设累加器的初始值为30H(表示十进制数30),指令序列

ADD A,#99H

DA A

将把进位C置为1,累加器A的数据变为29H,因为30+99=129。加法和的低位数据可以看作减法运算的结果,即30-1=29。

指令长度(字节): 1

执行周期: 1

二进制编码: 1 1 0 1 0 1 0 0 0

操作: DA

-contents of Accumulator are BCD

IF $[[(A_{3-0}) > 9] V [(AC) = 1]]$ THEN $(A_{3-0}) \leftarrow (A_{3-0}) + 6$

AND

IF $[[(A_{7-4}) > 9] V [(C) = 1]]$ THEN $(A_{7-4}) \leftarrow (A_{7-4}) + 6$

DEC byte

功能: 把BYTE所代表的操作数减1

说明: BYTE所代表的变量被减去I。如果原来的值为00H,那么减去1后,变成0FFH。 没有标志位会受到影响。该指令支持4种操作数寻址方式:累加器寻址、寄存器寻址、直接寻址和寄存器间接寻址。

注意: 当DEC指令用于修改输出端口的状态时,BYTE所代表的数据是从端口输

出数据锁存器中获取的,而不是从引脚上读取的输入状态。

举例: 假设寄存器0的内容为7FH(01111111B),内部RAM的7EH和7FH单元的内容分别为00H和40H。则指令

DEC @R0

DEC R0

DEC @R0

执行后,寄存器0的内容变成7EH,内部RAM的7EH和7FH单元的内容分别变为0FFH和3FH。

DEC A

指令长度(字节): 1

执行周期: 1

二进制编码: 0 0 0 1 0 1 0 0 0

操作: DEC

(A)←(A) −1

DEC Rn

指令长度(字节): 1

执行周期: 1

二进制编码: 0 0 0 1 1 r r r

操作: DEC

 $(Rn)\leftarrow (Rn) - 1$

DEC direct

指令长度(字节): 2

执行周期: 1

二进制编码: 0 0 0 1 0 1 0 1 d

direct address

操作: DEC

 $(direct) \leftarrow (direct) -1$

DEC @Ri

指令长度(字节): 1

执行周期: 1

二进制编码: 0 0 0 1 0 1 1 i

操作: DEC

 $((Ri))\leftarrow((Ri))-1$

DIV AB

功能: 除法

说明: DIV指令把累加器A中的8位无符号整数除以寄存器B中的8位无符号整数,并将商置于累加器A中,余数置于寄存器B中。进位标志C和溢出标志OV被清零。

例外:如果寄存器B的初始值为00H(即除数为0),那么执行DIV指令后,累加器A和寄存器B中的值是不确定的,且溢出标志OV将被置位。但在任何情况下,进位标志C都会被清零。

举例: 假设累加器的值为251 (0FBH或11111011B), 寄存器B的值为18 (12H或

00010010B)。则指令

DIV AB

执行后,累加器的值变成13 (0DH或00001101B),寄存器B的值变成17 (11H或0001000B),正好符合251=13×18+17。进位和溢出标志都被清零。

指令长度(字节): 1

执行周期: 4

二进制编码: 1 0 0 0 0 1 0 0 0

操作: DIV

 $^{(A)_{15-8}}_{(B)_{7-0}} \leftarrow (A)/(B)$

DJNZ <byte>, <rel-addr>

功能: 减1, 若非0则跳转

说明: DJNZ指令首先将第1个操作数所代表的变量减1,如果结果不为0,则转移到第2个操作数所指定的地址处去执行。如果第1个操作数的值为00H,则减1后变为0FFH。该指令不影响标志位。跳转目标地址的计算:首先将PC值加2(即指向下一条指令的首字节),然后将第2操作数表示的有符号的相对偏移量加到PC上去即可。byte所代表的操作数可采用寄存器寻址或直接寻址。

注意:如果该指令被用来修改输出引脚上的状态,那么byte所代表的数据是从端口输出数据锁存器中获取的,而不是直接读取引脚。

举例: 假设内部RAM的40H、50H和60H单元分别存放着01H、70H和15H,则指令

DJNZ 40H, LABEL 1

DJNZ 50H, LABEL 2

DJNZ 60H, LABEL 3

执行之后,程序将跳转到标号LABEL2处执行,且相应的3个RAM单元的内容变成00H、6FH和15H。之所以第1个跳转没被执行,是因为减1后其结果为0,不满足跳转条件。

使用DJNZ指令可以方便地在程序中实现指定次数的循环,此外用一条指令就可以在程序中实现中等长度的时间延迟(2~512个机器周期)。指令序列

MOV R2.#8

TOOOLE: CPL P1.7

DJNZ R2, TOOGLE

将使得P1.7的电平翻转8次,从而在P1.7产生4个脉冲,每个脉冲将持续3个机器周期,其中2个为DJNZ指令的执行时间,1个为CPL指令的执行时间。

DJNZ Rn,rel

指令长度(字节): 2

执行周期: 2

二进制编码: 1 1 0 1 1 r r r r rel. address

操作: DJNZ

 $(PC) \leftarrow (PC) + 2$

 $(Rn) \leftarrow (Rn) - 1$

IF (Rn) > 0 or (Rn) < 0

THEN

 $(PC) \leftarrow (PC) + rel$

DJNZ direct, rel

指令长度(字节): 3

执行周期: 2 二进制编码:

操作: DJNZ

 $(PC) \leftarrow (PC) + 2$ $(direct) \leftarrow (direct) - 1$

IF (direct) > 0 or (direct) < 0

THEN

 $(PC) \leftarrow (PC) + rel$

INC <byte>

功能: 加1

说明: INC指令将

/ byte>所代表的数据加1。如果原来的值为FFH,则加1后变为00H,该指令步影响标志位。支持3种寻址模式:寄存器寻址、直接寻址、寄存器间接寻

址。

注意:如果该指令被用来修改输出引脚上的状态,那么byte所代表的数据是从端口输出数据锁存器中获取的,而不是直接读的引脚。

举例: 假设寄存器0的内容为7EH(0111110B),内部RAM的7E单元和7F单元分别存放着0FFH 和40H,则指令序列

INC @R0

INC R0

INC @R0

执行完毕后,寄存器0的内容变为7FH,而内部RAM的7EH和7FH单元的内容分别变成00H和41H。

INC A

指令长度(字节): 1

执行周期: 1

操作: INC

 $(A) \leftarrow (A)+1$

INC Rn

指令长度(字节): 1

执行周期: 1

二进制编码: 0 0 0 0 1 r r r

操作: INC

 $(Rn) \leftarrow (Rn)+1$

INC direct

指令长度(字节): 2

执行周期: 1

二进制编码: 0 0 0 0 0 1 0 1 direct address

操作: INC

 $(direct) \leftarrow (direct) + 1$

INC @Ri

指令长度(字节): 1

执行周期: 1

二进制编码: 0 0 0 0 0 1 1 i

操作: INC

 $((Ri))\leftarrow((Ri))+1$

INC DPTR

功能: 数据指针加1

说明: 该指令实现将DPTR加1功能。需要注意的是,这是16位的递增指令,低位字节

DPL从FFH增加1之后变为00H,同时进位到高位字节DPH。该操作不影响标志位。

该指令是唯一1条16位寄存器递增指令。

举例: 假设寄存器DPH和DPL的内容分别为12H和0FEH,则指令序列

INC DPTR
INC DPTR
INC DPTR

执行完毕后, DPH和DPL变成13H和01H

指令长度(字节): 1

执行周期: 2

二进制编码: 1 0 1 0 0 1 1

操作: INC

 $(DPTR) \leftarrow (DPTR)+1$

JB bit, rel

功能: 若位数据为1则跳转

说明:如果bit代表的位数据为1,则跳转到rel所指定的地址处去执行;否则,继续执行下一条指令。跳转的目标地址按照如下方式计算:先增加PC的值,使其指向下一条指令的首字节地址,然后把rel所代表的有符号的相对偏移量(指令的第3个字节)加到PC上去,新的PC值即为目标地址。该指令只是测试相应的位数据,但不会改变其数

值,而且该操作不会影响标志位。

举例: 假设端口1的输入数据为11001010B, 累加器的值为56H(01010110B)。则指令

JB P1.2, LABEL1

JB ACC.2, LABEL2

将导致程序转到标号LABEL2处去执行

指令长度(字节): 3

执行周期: 2

二进制编码: 0 0 1 0 0 0 0 0 bit address

rel. address

操作: JB

 $(PC) \leftarrow (PC) + 3$ IF (bit) = 1THEN $(PC) \leftarrow (PC) + rel$

JBC bit, rel

功能: 若位数据为1则跳转并将其清零

说明:

如果bit代表的位数据为1,则将其清零并跳转到rel所指定的地址处去执行。如果bit代表的位数据为0,则继续执行下一条指令。跳转的目标地址按照如下方式计算:先增加PC的值,使其指向下一条指令的首字节地址,然后把rel所代表的有符号的相对偏移量(指令的第3个字节)加到PC上去,新的PC值即为目标地址,而且该操作不会影响标志位。

注意:如果该指令被用来修改输出引脚上的状态,那么byte所代表的数据是从端口输出数据锁存器中获取的,而不是直接读取引脚。

举例: 假设累加器的内容为56H(01010110B),则指令序列

JBC ACC.3, LABEL1

JBC ACC.2, LABEL2

将导致程序转到标号LABEL2处去执行,且累加器的内容变为52H(01010010B)。

指令长度(字节): 3

执行周期: 2

二进制编码: 0 0 0 1 0 0 0 0 bit address rel. address

操作: JBC

 $(PC) \leftarrow (PC) + 3$ IF (bit) = 1THEN $(bit) \leftarrow 0$ $(PC) \leftarrow (PC) + rel$

JC rel

功能: 若进位标志为1,则跳转

说明: 如果进位标志为1,则程序跳转到rel所代表的地址处去执行;否则,继续执行下面的指令。跳转的目标地址按照如下方式计算:先增加PC的值,使其指向紧接JC指令的下一条指令的首地址,然后把rel所代表的有符号的相对偏移量(指令的第2个字节)加到PC上去,新的PC值即为目标地址。该操作不会影响标志位。

举例: 假设进位标志此时为0,则指令序列

JC LABEL1 CPL C JC LABEL2

执行完毕后,进位标志变成1,并导致程序跳转到标号LABEL2处去执行。

指今长度(字节): 2

执行周期: 2

二进制编码: 0 1 0 0 0 0 0 0

rel. address

操作: JC

 $(PC) \leftarrow (PC) + 2$ IF (C) = 1THEN

 $(PC) \leftarrow (PC) + rel$

JMP @A+DPTR

功能: 间接跳转。

说明: 把累加器A中的8位无符号数据和16位的数据指针的值相加,其和作为下一条将要执行的指令的地址,传送给程序计数器PC。执行16位的加法时,低字节DPL的进位会传到高字节DPH。累加器A和数据指针DPTR的内容都不会发生变化。不影响任何标志位。

举例: 假设累加器A中的值是偶数(从0到6)。下面的指令序列将使得程序跳转到位于跳转表JMP TBL 的4条AJMP指令中的某一条去执行:

 $MOV \qquad DPTR, \#JMP_TBL$

JMP @A+DPTR JMP-TBL: AJMP LABEL0

AJMP LABEL1 AJMP LABEL2 AJMP LABEL3

如果开始执行上述指令序列时,累加器A中的值为04H,那么程序最终会跳转到标号LABEL2处去执行。

注意: AJMP是一个2字节指令,因而在跳转表中,各个跳转指令的入口地址依次相差2个字节。

指令长度(字节): 1

执行周期: 2

二进制编码: 0 1 1 1 0 0 1 1

操作: JMP

 $(PC) \leftarrow (A) + (DPTR)$

JNB bit, rel

功能: 如果bit所代表的位不为1则跳转。

说明: 如果bit所表示的位为0,则转移到rel所代表的地址去执行;否则,继续执行下一条指令。跳转的目标地址如此计算:先增加PC的值,使其指向下一条指令的首字节地址,然后把rel所代表的有符号的相对偏移量(指令的第3个字节)加到PC上去,新的PC值即为目标地址。该指令只是测试相应的位数据,但不会改变其数值,而且该操

作不会影响标志位。

举例: 假设端口1的输入数据为110010108,累加器的值为56H(01010110B)。则指令序列

JNB P1.3, LABEL1

JNB ACC.3, LABEL2

执行后将导致程序转到标号LABEL2处去执行。

指令长度(字节): 3

执行周期: 2

二进制编码: 0 0 1 1 0 0 0 0 bit address rel. address

操作: JNB

 $(PC) \leftarrow (PC) + 3$ IF (bit) = 0

THEN $(PC) \leftarrow (PC) + rel$

JNC rel

功能: 若进位标志非1则跳转

说明: 如果进位标志为0,则程序跳转到rel所代表的地址处去执行;否则,继续执行下面的指令。跳转的目标地址按照如下方式计算:先增加PC的值加2,使其指向紧接JNC指令的下一条指令的地址,然后把rel所代表的有符号的相对偏移量(指令的第2个字节)加到PC上去,新的PC值即为目标地址。该操作不会影响标志位。

举例: 假设进位标志此时为1,则指令序列

JNC LABEL1

CPL C

JNC LABEL2

执行完毕后,进位标志变成0,并导致程序跳转到标号LABEL2处去执行。

指令长度(字节): 2

执行周期: 2

二进制编码: 0 1 0 1 0 0 0 0 rel. address

操作: JNC

 $(PC) \leftarrow (PC) + 2$

IF (C) = 0

THEN $(PC) \leftarrow (PC) + rel$

JNZ rel

功能: 如果累加器的内容非0则跳转

说明:如果累加器A的任何一位为1,那么程序跳转到rel所代表的地址处去执行,如果各个位都为0,继续执行下一条指令。跳转的目标地址按照如下方式计算:先把PC的值增加2,然后把rel所代表的有符号的相对偏移量(指令的第2个字节)加到PC上去,新的PC值即为目标地址。操作过程中累加器的值不会发生变化,不会影响标志位。

举例: 设累加器的初始值为00H,则指令序列

JNZ LABEL1

INC A

JNZ LAEEL2

执行完毕后,累加器的内容变成01H,且程序将跳转到标号LABEL2处去执行。

指令长度(字节): 2

执行周期: 2

二进制编码: 0 1 1 1 0 0 0 0

rel. address

操作: JNZ

 $(PC) \leftarrow (PC) + 2$

IF $(A) \neq 0$

THEN $(PC) \leftarrow (PC) + rel$

JZ rel

功能: 若累加器的内容为0则跳转

说明:如果累加器A的任何一位为0,那么程序跳转到rel所代表的地址处去执行,如果各个位都为0,继续执行下一条指令。跳转的目标地址按照如下方式计算:先把PC的值增加2,然后把rel所代表的有符号的相对偏移量(指令的第2个字节)加到PC上去,新的PC值即为目标地址。操作过程中累加器的值不会发生变化,不会影响标志位。

举例: 设累加器的初始值为01H,则指令序列

JZ LABEL1

DEC A

JZ LAEEL2

执行完毕后,累加器的内容变成00H,且程序将跳转到标号LABEL2处去执行。

指令长度(字节): 2

执行周期: 2

二进制编码: 0 1 1 0 0 0 0 0 rel. address

操作: JZ

 $(PC) \leftarrow (PC) + 2$

IF (A) = 0

THEN $(PC) \leftarrow (PC) + rel$

LCALL addr16

功能: 长调用

说明: LCALL用于调用addr16所指地址处的子例程。首先将PC的值增加3,使得PC指向紧随 LCALL的下一条指令的地址,然后把16位PC的低8位和高8位依次压入栈(低位字节 在先),同时把栈指针加2。然后再把LCALL指令的第2字节和第3字节的数据分别装 入PC的高位字节DPH和低位字节DPL,程序从新的PC所对应的地址处开始执行。因 而子例程可以位于64KB程序存储空间的任何地址处。该操作不影响标志位。

举例: 栈指针的初始值为07H,标号SUBRTN被分配的程序存储器地址为1234H。则执行如下位于地址0123H的指令后,

LCALL SUBRTN

栈指针变成09H,内部RAM的08H和09H单元的内容分别为26H和01H,且PC的当前值为1234H。

指令长度(字节): 3

执行周期: 2

二进制编码: 0 0 0 1 0 0 1 0 addr15-addr8 addr7-addr0

操作: LCALL

 $(PC) \leftarrow (PC) + 3$ $(SP) \leftarrow (SP) + 1$ $((SP)) \leftarrow (PC_{7-0})$ $(SP) \leftarrow (SP) + 1$ $((SP)) \leftarrow (PC_{15-8})$ $(PC) \leftarrow addr_{15-0}$

LJMP addr16

功能: 长跳转

说明: LJMP使得CPU无条件跳转到addr16所指的地址处执行程序。把该指令的第2字节和第3字节分别装入程序计数器PC的高位字节DPH和低位字节DPL。程序从新PC值对应的地址处开始执行。该16位目标地址可位于64KB程序存储空间的任何地址处。该操作不影响标志位。

举例: 假设标号JMPADR被分配的程序存储器地址为1234H。则位于地址1234H的指令 LJMP JMPADR

执行完毕后, PC的当前值变为1234H。

指令长度(字节): 3

执行周期: 2

二进制编码: 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 0 addr15-addr8 addr7-addr0

操作: LJMP

 $(PC) \leftarrow addr_{15-0}$

MOV <dest-byte>, <src-byte>

功能: 传送字节变量

说明: 将第2操作数代表字节变量的内容复制到第1操作数所代表的存储单元中去。该 指令不会改变源操作数,也不会影响其他寄存器和标志位。

MOV指令是迄今为止使用最灵活的指令,源操作数和目的操作数组合起来,寻址方式可达15种。

举例: 假设内部RAM的30H单元的内容为40H,而40H单元的内容为10H。端口1 的数据为 11001010B (0CAH)。则指令序列

MOV R0, #30H ;R0<=30H MOV A, @R0 ;A <= 40H MOV R1, A ;R1 <= 40H MOV B, @R1 ;B <= 10H

MOV @Rl, Pl ; RAM (40H) < = 0CAH

MOV P2. P1 :P2 #0CAH

执行完毕后,寄存器0的内容为30H,累加器和寄存器1的内容都为40H,寄存器B的内容为10H,RAM中40H单元和P2口的内容均为0CAH。

MOV A,Rn

指令长度(字节): 1

执行周期: 1

二进制编码: 1 1 1 0 1 rrr

操作: MOV

 $(A) \leftarrow (Rn)$

*MOV A, direct

指令长度(字节): 2

执行周期: 1

二进制编码: 1 1 1 0 0 1 0 1 direct address

操作: MOV

 $(A) \leftarrow (direct)$

注意: MOV A, ACC是无效指令。

MOV A,@Ri

指令长度(字节): 1

执行周期: 1

二进制编码: 1 1 1 0 0 1 1 i

操作: MOV (A) ← ((Ri))

MOV A,#data	
指令长度(字节):	2
执行周期:	1
二进制编码:	0 1 1 1 0 1 0 0 immediate data
操作:	
	(A)← #data
MOV Rn, A	
指令长度(字节):	1
执行周期:	1
二进制编码:	1 1 1 1 1 rrr
操作:	MOV
	$(Rn)\leftarrow (A)$
MOV Rn,direct	
指令长度(字节):	
执行周期:	2
二进制编码:	1 0 1 0 1 r r r direct addr.
操作:	MOV $(Rn)\leftarrow$ (direct)
MOV Rn,#data	
指令长度(字节):	2
执行周期:	1
二进制编码:	0 1 1 1 1 r r r immediate data
——此前細矩:	o i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i
一型耐编码: 操作:	MOV
操作: MOV direct, A	MOV $(Rn) \leftarrow \#data$
操作:	MOV $(Rn) \leftarrow \#data$
操作: MOV direct, A	MOV $(Rn) \leftarrow \#data$
操作: MOV direct, A 指令长度(字节):	MOV $(Rn) \leftarrow \#data$
操作: MOV direct, A 指令长度(字节): 执行周期:	$MOV \\ (Rn) \leftarrow \#data$ 2 1
操作: MOV direct, A 指令长度(字节): 执行周期: 二进制编码:	$MOV \\ (Rn) \leftarrow \#data$ 2 1 $1 1 1 1 0 1 0 1$ MOV $direct address$ MOV
操作: MOV direct, A 指令长度(字节): 执行周期: 二进制编码: 操作:	$MOV \\ (Rn) \leftarrow \#data$ 2 1 $1 1 1 1 0 1 0 1$ $MOV \\ (direct) \leftarrow (A)$
操作: MOV direct, A 指令长度(字节): 执行周期: 二进制编码: 操作: MOV direct, Rn	$\begin{array}{c} MOV \\ (Rn) \leftarrow \#data \end{array}$ $\begin{array}{c} 2 \\ 1 \\ \hline \begin{array}{c ccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$
操作: MOV direct, A 指令长度(字节): 执行周期: 二进制编码: 操作: MOV direct, Rn 指令长度(字节):	$\begin{array}{c} MOV \\ (Rn) \leftarrow \#data \end{array}$ $\begin{array}{c} 2 \\ 1 \\ \hline \begin{array}{c ccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$

MOV direct, direct	
指令长度(字节):	3
执行周期:	2
二进制编码:	1 0 0 0 0 1 0 1 dir.addr. (src)
操作:	MOV (direct)← (direct)
MOV direct, @Ri	
指令长度(字节):	2
执行周期:	2
二进制编码:	1 0 0 0 0 1 1 i direct addr.
操作:	MOV (direct)←((Ri))
MOV direct,#data	
指令长度(字节):	3
执行周期:	2
二进制编码:	0 1 1 1 0 1 0 1 direct address
操作:	$MOV $ (direct) \leftarrow #data
MOV @Ri, A	
指令长度(字节):	1
执行周期:	1
二进制编码:	1 1 1 1 0 1 1 i
操作:	$MOV \\ ((Ri)) \leftarrow (A)$
MOV @Ri, direct	
指令长度(字节):	2
执行周期:	2
二进制编码:	1 0 1 0 0 1 1 i direct addr.
操作:	MOV $((Ri)) \leftarrow (direct)$
MOV @Ri, #data	
指令长度(字节):	
执行周期:	1
二进制编码:	0 1 1 1 0 1 1 i immediate data
操作:	MOV $((Ri)) \leftarrow \#data$

MOV <dest-bit>, <src-bit>

功能: 传送位变量

说明: 将<src-bit>代表的布尔变量复制到<dest-bit>所指定的数据单元中去,两个操作数

必须有一个是进位标志,而另外一个是可直接寻址的位。本指令不影响其他寄存器和

标志位。

举例: 假设进位标志C的初值为1,端口P2中的数据是11000101B,端口1的数据被设置为

35H(00110101B)。则指令序列

MOV P1.3, C

MOV C, P3.3

MOV P1.2, C

执行后,进位标志被清零,端口1的数据变为39H(00111001B)。

MOV C,bit

指令长度(字节): 2

执行周期: 1

二进制编码: 1 0 1 0 0 0 1 1 bit address

操作: MOV

 $(C) \leftarrow (bit)$

MOV bit,C

指令长度(字节): 2

执行周期: 2

二进制编码: 1 0 0 1 0 0 1 0 bit address

操作: MOV

(bit)← (C)

MOV DPTR, #data 16

功能: 将16位的常数存放到数据指针

说明: 该指令将16位常数传递给数据指针DPTR。16位的常数包含在指令的第2字节和

第3字节中。其中DPH中存放的是#data16的高字节,而DPL中存放的是#data16的低字

节。不影响标志位。

该指令是唯一一条能一次性移动16位数据的指令。

举例: 指令:

MOV DPTR, #1234H

将立即数1234H装入数据指针寄存器中。DPH的值为12H, DPL的值为34H。

指令长度(字节): 3

执行周期: 2

二进制编码: 1 0 0 1 0 0 0 0 immediate data 15-8

操作: MOV

 $(DPTR) \leftarrow \#data_{15-0}$

DPH DPL \leftarrow #data₁₅₋₈ #data₇₋₀

MOVC A, @A+ <base-reg>

功能: 把程序存储器中的代码字节数据(常数数据)转送至累加器A

说明: MOVC指令将程序存储器中的代码字节或常数字节传送到累加器A。被传送的数据字节的地址是由累加器中的无符号8位数据和16位基址寄存器(DPTR或PC)的数值相加产生的。如果以PC为基址寄存器,则在累加器内容加到PC之前,PC需要先增加到指向紧邻MOVC之后的语句的地址;如果是以DPTR为基址寄存器,则没有此问题。在执行16位的加法时,低8位产生的进位会传递给高8位。本指令不影响标志位。

举例: 假设累加器A的值处于0~4之间,如下子例程将累加器A中的值转换为用DB伪指令(定义字节)定义的4个值之一。

REL-PC: INC A

MOVC A, @A+PC

RET

DB 66H

DB 77H

DB 88H

DB 99H

如果在调用该子例程之前累加器的值为01H,执行完该子例程后,累加器的值变为77H。MOVC指令之前的INC A指令是为了在查表时越过RET而设置的。如果MOVC和表格之间被多个代码字节所隔开,那么为了正确地读取表格,必须将相应的字节数预先加到累加器A上。

MOVC A,@A+DPTR

指令长度(字节): 1

执行周期: 2

二进制编码: 1 0 0 1 0 0 1 1

操作: MOVC

 $(A) \leftarrow ((A)+(DPTR))$

MOVC A,@A+PC

指令长度(字节): 1

执行周期: 2

二进制编码: 1 0 0 0 0 0 1 1

操作: MOVC

 $(PC) \leftarrow (PC)+1$ $(A) \leftarrow ((A)+(PC))$

MOVX <dest-byte>, <src-byte>

功能: 外部传送

说明: MOVX指令用于在累加器和外部数据存储器之间传递数据。因此在传送指令

MOVA情報不用了任氣加翻和升部数据存储都之间包建数据。因此任何这情報 MOV后附加了X。MOVX又分为两种类型,它们之间的区别在于访问外部数据RAM 的间接地址是8位的还是16位的。

对于第1种类型,当前工作寄存器组的R0和R1提供8位地址到复用端口P0。对于外部I/O扩展译码或者较小的RAM阵列,8位的地址已经够用。若要访问较大的RAM阵列,可在端口引脚上输出高位的地址信号。此时可在MOVX指令之前添加输出指令,对这些端口引脚施加控制。

对于第2种类型,通过数据指针DPTR产生16位的地址。当P2端口的输出缓冲器 发送DPH的内容时,P2的特殊功能寄存器保持原来的数据。在访问规模较大的数据 阵列时,这种方式更为有效和快捷,因为不需要额外指令来配置输出端口。

在某些情况下,可以混合使用两种类型的MOVX指令。在访问大容量的RAM空间时,既可以用数据指针DP在P2端口上输出地址的高位字节,也可以先用某条指令,把地址的高位字节从P2端口上输出,再使用通过R0或Rl间址寻址的MOVX指令。

举例:

假设有一个分时复用地址/数据线的外部RAM存储器,容量为256B(如: Intel的8155 RAM/I/O/TIMER),该存储器被连接到8051的端口P0上,端口P3被用于提供外部RAM所需的控制信号。端口P1和P2用作通用输入/输出端口。R0和R1中的数据分别为12H和34H,外部RAM的34H单元存储的数据为56H,则下面的指令序列:

MOVX A, @R1 MOVX @R0, A

将数据56H复制到累加器A以及外部RAM的12H单元中。

MOVX A,@Ri

指令长度(字节): 1

执行周期: 2

二进制编码: 1 1 1 0 0 0 1 i

操作: MOVX (A) ← ((Ri))

MOVX A,@DPTR

指令长度(字节): 1

执行周期: 2

二进制编码: 1 1 1 0 0 0 0 0

操作: MOVX

 $(A) \leftarrow ((DPTR))$

MOVX @Ri, A

指令长度(字节): 1

执行周期: 2

二进制编码: 1 1 1 1 0 0 1 i

操作: MOVX ((Ri))←(A)

MOVX @DPTR, A

指令长度(字节): 1

执行周期: 2

二进制编码: 1 1 1 1 0 0 0 0

操作: MOVX

 $(DPTR)\leftarrow (A)$

MUL AB

功能: 乘法

说明: 该指令可用于实现累加器和寄存器B中的无符号8位整数的乘法。所产生的16位乘积的低8位存放在累加器中,而高8位存放在寄存器B中。若乘积大于255(0FFH),则置位溢出标志;否则清零标志位。在执行该指令时,进位标志总是被清零。

举例: 假设累加器A的初始值为80(50H),寄存器B的初始值为160(0A0H),则指令:

MUL AB

求得乘积12 800 (3200H), 所以寄存器B的值变成32H (00110010B), 累加器被清零,溢出标志被置位,进位标志被清零。

指令长度(字节): 1

执行周期: 4

二进制编码: 1 0 1 0 0 1 0 0

操作: MUL

 $(A)_{7-0} \leftarrow (A) \times (B)$

 $(B)_{15-8}$

NOP

功能: 空操作

说明: 执行本指令后,将继续执行随后的指令。除了PC外,其他寄存器和标志位都不会有

变化。

举例: 假设期望在端口P2的第7号引脚上输出一个长时间的低电平脉冲,该脉冲持续5个机器周期(精确)。若是仅使用SETB和CLR指令序列,生成的脉冲只能持续1个机器周期。因而需要设法增加4个额外的机器周期。可以按照如下方式来实现所要求的功能(假设中断没有被启用):

CLR P2.7

NOP

NOP

NOP

NOP

SETB P2.7

指令长度(字节): 1

执行周期: 1

二进制编码: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

操作: NOP

 $(PC) \leftarrow (PC)+1$

ORL <dest-byte>, <src-byte>

功能: 两个字节变量的逻辑或运算

说明: ORL指令将由<dest-byte>和<src_byte>所指定的两个字节变量进行逐位逻辑或运算,结果存放在<dest-byte>所代表的数据单元中。该操作不影响标志位。

两个操作数组合起来,支持6种寻址方式。当目的操作数是累加器A时,源操作数可以采用寄存器寻址、直接寻址、寄存器间接寻址或者立即寻址。当目的操作数采用直接寻址方式时,源操作数可以是累加器或立即数。

注意:如果该指令被用来修改输出引脚上的状态,那么<dest-byte>所代表的数据是从端口输出数据锁存器中获取的数据,而不是从引脚上读取的数据。

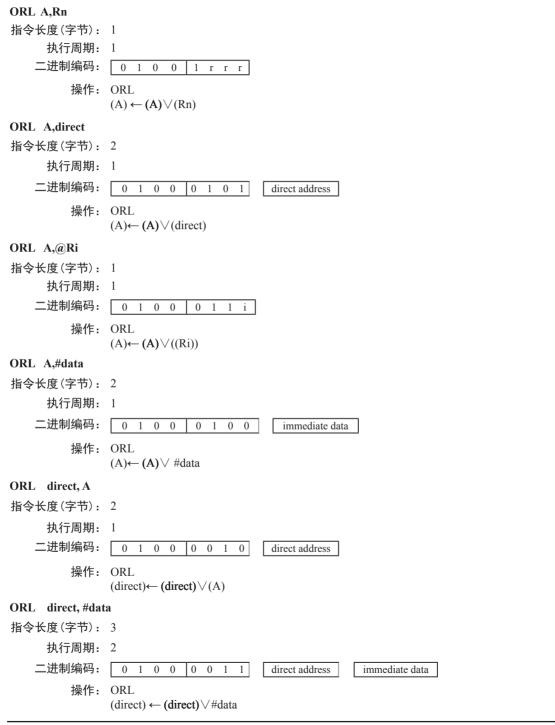
举例: 假设累加器A中数据为0C3H (11000011B), 寄存器R0中的数据为55H(01010101), 则指令:

ORL A. R0

执行后,累加器的内容变成0D7H(11010111B)。当目的操作数是直接寻址数据字节时,ORL指令可用来把任何RAM单元或者硬件寄存器中的各个位设置为1。究竟哪些位会被置1由屏蔽字节决定,屏蔽字节既可以是包含在指令中的常数,也可以是累加器A在运行过程中实时计算出的数值。执行指令:

ORL P1, #00110010B

之后,把1口的第5、4、1位置1。



ORL C, <src-bit>

功能: 位变量的逻辑或运算

说明: 如果<src-bit>所表示的位变量为1,则置位进位标志;否则,保持进位标志的当前状态不变。在汇编语言中,位于源操作数之前的"/"表示将源操作数取反后使用,但

源操作数本身不发生变化。在执行本指令时,不影响其他标志位。

举例: 当执行如下指令序列时,当且仅当P1.0=1或ACC.7=1或OV=0时,置位进位标志C:

MOV C, P1.0 ;LOAD CARRY WITH INPUT PIN P10 ORL C, ACC.7 ;OR CARRY WITH THE ACC.BIT 7

ORL C./OV :OR CARRY WITH THE INVERSE OF OV

ORL C, bit

指令长度(字节): 2

执行周期: 2

二进制编码: 0 1 1 1 0 0 1 0 bit address

操作: ORL

 $(C) \leftarrow (C) \lor (bit)$

ORL C,/bit

指令长度(字节): 2

执行周期: 2

二进制编码: 1 0 1 0 0 0 0 0 bit address

操作: ORL

 $(C) \leftarrow (C) \lor (bit)$

POP direct

功能: 出栈

说明: 读取栈指针所指定的内部RAM单元的内容,栈指针减1。然后,将读到的内容传送到

由direct所指示的存储单元(直接寻址方式)中去。该操作不影响标志位。

举例: 设栈指针的初值为32H,内部RAM的30H~32H单元的数据分别为20H、23H和

01H。则执行指令:

POP DPH

POP DPL

之后, 栈指针的值变成30H, 数据指针变为0123H。此时指令

POP SP

将把栈指针变为20H。

注意:在这种特殊情况下,在写入出栈数据(20H)之前,栈指针先减小到

2FH, 然后再随着20H的写入, 变成20H。

指令长度(字节): 2

执行周期: 2

二进制编码: 1 1 0 1 0 0 0 0 direct address

操作: POP

(diect) \leftarrow ((SP)) (SP) \leftarrow (SP) - 1

PUSH direct

功能: 压栈

说明: 栈指针首先加1,然后将direct所表示的变量内容复制到由栈指针指定的内部RAM存储单元中去。该操作不影响标志位。

举例: 设在进入中断服务程序时栈指针的值为09H,数据指针DPTR的值为0123H。则执行如下指令序列

PUSH DPL PUSH DPH

之后,栈指针变为0BH,并把数据23H和01H分别存入内部RAM的0AH和0BH存储单元之中。

指令长度(字节): 2

执行周期: 2

二进制编码: 1 1 0 0 0 0 0 0 direct address

操作: PUSH

 $(SP) \leftarrow (SP) + 1$ $((SP)) \leftarrow (direct)$

RET

功能: 从子例程返回

说明: 执行RET指令时,首先将PC值的高位字节和低位字节从栈中弹出,栈指针减2。然后,程序从形成的PC值所对应的地址处开始执行,一般情况下,该指令和ACALL或LCALL配合使用。改指令的执行不影响标志位。

举例: 设栈指针的初值为0BH,内部RAM的0AH和0BH存储单元中的数据分别为23H和01H。则指令:

RET

执行后, 栈指针变为09H。程序将从0123H地址处继续执行。

指令长度(字节): 1

执行周期: 2

二进制编码: 0 0 1 0 0 0 1 0

操作: RET

 $(PC_{15-8}) \leftarrow ((SP))$ $(SP) \leftarrow (SP) - 1$ $(PC_{7-0}) \leftarrow ((SP))$

 $(SP) \leftarrow (SP) - 1$

RETI

功能: 中断返回

说明: 执行该指令时,首先从栈中弹出PC值的高位和低位字节,然后恢复中断启用,准备接受同优先级的其他中断,栈指针减2。其他寄存器不受影响。但程序状态字PSW不会自动恢复到中断前的状态。程序将继续从新产生的PC值所对应的地址处开始执行,一般情况下是此次中断入口的下一条指令。在执行RETI指令时,如果有一个优先级较低的或同优先级的其他中断在等待处理,那么在处理这些等待中的中断之前需要执行1条指令。

举例: 设栈指针的初值为0BH,结束在地址0123H处的指令执行结束期间产生中断,内部 RAM的0AH和0BH单元的内容分别为23H和01H。则指令:

RETI

执行完毕后,栈指针变成09H,中断返回后程序继续从0123H地址开始执行。

指令长度(字节): 1

执行周期: 2

二进制编码: 0 0 1 1 0 0 1 0

操作: RETI

 $(PC_{15-8}) \leftarrow ((SP))$ $(SP) \leftarrow (SP) - 1$ $(PC_{7-0}) \leftarrow ((SP))$ $(SP) \leftarrow (SP) - 1$

RL A

功能: 将累加器A中的数据位循环左移

说明: 将累加器中的8位数据均左移1位,其中位7移动到位0。该指令的执行不影响标志位。

举例: 设累加器的内容为0C5H(11000101B),则指令

RL A

执行后,累加器的内容变成8BH(10001011B),且标志位不受影响。

指令长度(字节): 1

执行周期: 1

二进制编码: 0 0 1 0 0 0 1 1

操作: RL

 $(An+1) \leftarrow (An) \quad n = 0-6$

 $(A0) \leftarrow (A7)$

RLC A

功能: 带进位循环左移

说明: 累加器的8位数据和进位标志一起循环左移1位。其中位7移入进位标志,进位标志的

初始状态值移到位0。该指令不影响其他标志位。

举例: 假设累加器A的值为0C5H(11000101B),则指令

RLC A

执行后,将把累加器A的数据变为8BH(10001011B),进位标志被置位。

指令长度(字节): 1

执行周期: 1

二进制编码: 0 0 1 1 0 0 1 1

操作: RLC

 $(An+1) \leftarrow (An)$ n = 0-6

 $(A0) \leftarrow (C)$

 $(C) \leftarrow (A7)$

RR A

功能: 将累加器的数据位循环右移

说明: 将累加器的8个数据位均右移1位,位0将被移到位7,即循环右移,该指

令不影响标志位。

举例: 设累加器的内容为0C5H(11000101B),则指令

RR A

执行后累加器的内容变成0E2H(11100010B),标志位不受影响。

指令长度(字节): 1

执行周期: 1

二进制编码: 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 1

操作: RR

 $(An) \leftarrow (An+1)$ n = 0 - 6

 $(A7) \leftarrow (A0)$

RRC A

功能: 带进位循环右移

说明: 累加器的8位数据和进位标志一起循环右移1位。其中位0移入进位标志,进位标志的

初始状态值移到位7。该指令不影响其他标志位。

举例: 假设累加器的值为0C5H(11000101B), 进位标志为0, 则指令

RRC A

执行后,将把累加器的数据变为62H(01100010B),进位标志被置位。

指令长度(字节): 1

执行周期: 1

二进制编码: 0 0 0 1 0 0 1 1

操作: RRC

 $(An+1) \leftarrow (An) \quad n = 0-6$

 $(A7) \leftarrow (C)$

 $(C) \leftarrow (A0)$

SETB
 set>

功能: 置位

说明: SETB指令可将相应的位置1, 其操作对象可以是进位标志或其他可直接寻址的位。

该指令不影响其他标志位。

举例: 设进位标志被清零,端口1的输出状态为34H(00110100B),则指令

SETB C

SETB P1.0

执行后,进位标志变为1,端口1的输出状态变成35H(00110101B)。

SETB C

指令长度(字节): 1

执行周期: 1

二进制编码: 1 1 0 1 0 0 1 1

操作: SETB

 $(C) \leftarrow 1$

SETB bit

指令长度(字节): 2

执行周期: 1

二进制编码: 1 1 0 1 0 0 1 0 bit address

操作: SETB

 $(bit) \leftarrow 1$

SJMP rel

功能: 短跳转

说明:程序无条件跳转到rel所示的地址去执行。目标地址按如下方法计算:首先PC值加2,然后将指令第2字节(即rel)所表示的有符号偏移量加到PC上,得到的新PC值即短跳转的目标地址。所以,跳转的范围是当前指令(即SJMP)地址的前128字节和后127字节。

举例: 设标号RELADR对应的指令地址位于程序存储器的0123H地址,则指令:

SIMP RELADR

汇编后位于0100H。当执行完该指令后,PC值变成0123H。

注意: 在上例中,紧接SJMP的下一条指令的地址是0102H,因此,跳转的偏移量为0123H-0102H=21H。另外,如果SJMP的偏移量是0FEH,那么构成只有1条指令的无限循环。

指令长度(字节): 2

执行周期: 2

二进制编码: 1 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 rel. address

操作: SJMP

 $(PC) \leftarrow (PC)+2$ $(PC) \leftarrow (PC)+rel$

SUBB A, <src-byte>

功能: 带借位的减法

说明: SUBB指令从累加器中减去<src-byte>所代表的字节变量的数值及进位标志,减法运算的结果置于累加器中。如果执行减法时第7位需要借位,SUBB将会置位进位标志(表示借位);否则,清零进位标志。(如果在执行SUBB指令前,进位标志C已经被置位,这意味着在前面进行多精度的减法运算时,产生了借位。因而在执行本条指令时,必须把进位连同源操作数一起从累加器中减去。)如果在进行减法运算的时候,第3位处向上有借位,那么辅助进位标志AC会被置位;如果第6位有借位;而第7位没有,或是第7位有借位,而第6位没有,则溢出标志OV被置位。

当进行有符号整数减法运算时,若OV置位,则表示在正数减负数的过程中产生了负数:或者,在负数减正数的过程中产生了正数。

源操作数支持的寻址方式: 寄存器寻址、直接寻址、寄存器间接寻址和立即数 寻址。

举例: 设累加器中的数据为0C9H(11001001B)。寄存器*R*2的值为54H(01010100B),进位标志C被置位。则如下指令:

SUBB A. R2

执行后,累加器的数据变为74H(01110100B),进位标志C和辅助进位标志AC被清零,溢出标志C被置位。

注意: 0C9H减去54H应该是75H,但在上面的计算中,由于在SUBB指令执行前,进位标志C已经被置位,因而最终结果还需要减去进位标志,得到74H。因此,如果在进行单精度或者多精度减法运算前,进位标志C的状态未知,那么应改采用CLR C指令把进位标志C清零。

SUBB A. Rn

指令长度(字节): 1

执行周期: 1

二进制编码: 100111777

操作: SUBB

 $(A) \leftarrow (A) - (C) - (Rn)$

SUBB A, direct

指令长度(字节): 2

执行周期: 1

二进制编码: 1 0 0 1 0 1 0 1

操作: SUBB

 $(A) \leftarrow (A) - (C) - (direct)$

SUBB A, @Ri

指令长度(字节): 1

执行周期: 1

二进制编码: 1 0 0 1 0 1 1 i

操作: SUBB

 $(A) \leftarrow (A) - (C) - ((Ri))$

SUBB A, #data

指令长度(字节): 2

执行周期: 1

二进制编码: 1 0 0 1 0 1 0 0 immediate data

操作: SUBB

 $(A) \leftarrow (A) - (C) - \#data$

SWAP A

功能: 交换累加器的高低半字节

说明: SWAP指令把累加器的低4位(位3~位0)和高4位(位7~位4)数据进行交换。实际上

direct address

SWAP指令也可视为4位的循环指令。该指令不影响标志位。

举例: 设累加器的内容为0C5H(11000101B),则指令

SWAP A

执行后, 累加器的内容变成5CH(01011100B)。

指令长度(字节): 1

执行周期: 1

二进制编码: 1 1 0 0 0 1 0 0

操作: SWAP

 $(A_{3-0}) \longrightarrow (A_{7-4})$

XCH A, <byte>

功能: 交换累加器和字节变量的内容

说明: XCH指令将<byte>所指定的字节变量的内容装载到累加器,同时将累加器的旧内容 写入<byte>所指定的字节变量。指令中的源操作数和目的操作数允许的寻址方式: 寄 存器寻址、直接寻址和寄存器间接寻址。

举例: 设R0的内容为地址20H,累加器的值为3FH (00111111B)。内部RAM的20H单元的内容为75H (01110101B)。则指令

XCH A, @R0

执行后,内部RAM的20H单元的数据变为3FH (00111111B),累加器的内容变为75H(01110101B)。



指令长度(字节): 1

执行周期: 1

二进制编码: 1 1 0 0 1 1 r r r

操作: XCH

 $(A) \rightleftharpoons (Rn)$

XCH A, direct

指令长度(字节): 2

执行周期: 1

二进制编码: 1 1 0 0 0 1 0 1 direct address

操作: XCH

 $(A) \rightleftharpoons (direct)$

XCH A, @Ri

指令长度(字节): 1

执行周期: 1

二进制编码: 1 1 0 0 0 1 1 i

操作: XCH

 $(A) \longrightarrow ((Ri))$

XCHD A, @Ri

功能: 交换累加器和@Ri对应单元中的数据的低4位

说明: XCHD指令将累加器内容的低半字节(位0~3,一般是十六进制数或BCD码)和间接 寻址的内部RAM单元的数据进行交换,各自的高半字(位7~4)节不受影响。另外, 该指令不影响标志位。

举例: 设R0保存了地址20H,累加器的内容为36H (00110110B)。内部RAM的20H单元存储的数据为75H (011110101B)。则指令:

XCHD A, @R0

执行后,内部RAM 20H单元的内容变成76H (01110110B),累加器的内容变为35H(00110101B)。

指令长度(字节): 1

执行周期: 1

二进制编码: 1 1 0 1 0 1 1 i

操作: XCHD

 $(A_{3-0}) \implies (Ri_{3-0})$

XRL <dest-byte>, <src-byte>

功能: 字节变量的逻辑异或

说明: XRL指令将<dest-byte>和<src-byte>所代表的字节变量逐位进行逻辑异或运算, 结果保存在<dest-byte>所代表的字节变量里。该指令不影响标志位。

两个操作数组合起来共支持6种寻址方式: 当目的操作数为累加器时,源操作数可以采用寄存器寻址、直接寻址、寄存器间接寻址和立即数寻址; 当目的操作数是可直接寻址的数据时,源操作数可以是累加器或者立即数。

注意:如果该指令被用来修改输出引脚上的状态,那么dest-byte所代表的数据就是从端口输出数据锁存器中获取的数据,而不是从引脚上读取的数据。

举例: 如果累加器和寄存器0的内容分别为0C3H (11000011B)和0AAH(10101010B),则 指令:

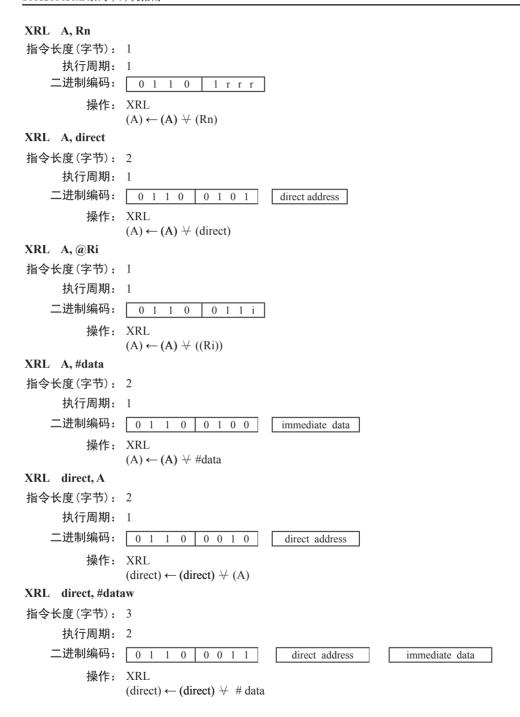
XRL A. R0

执行后, 累加器的内容变成69H (01101001B)。

当目的操作数是可直接寻址字节数据时,该指令可把任何RAM单元或者寄存器中的各个位取反。具体哪些位会被取反,在运行过程当中确定。指令:

XRL P1, #00110001B

执行后, P1口的位5、4、0被取反。



5.3.2 Instruction Definitions of Traditional 8051 MCU

ACALL addr 11

Function:

Absolute Call

Description:

ACALL unconditionally calls a subroutine located at the indicated address. The instruction increments the PC twice to obtain the address of the following instruction, then pushes the 16-bit result onto the stack (low-order byte first) and increments the Stack Pointer twice. The destination address is obtained by succesively concatenating the five high-order bits of the incremented PC opcode bits 7-5 and the second byte of the instruction. The subroutine called must therefore start within the same 2K block of the program memory as the first byte of the instruction following ACALL. No flags are affected.

Example:

Initially SP equals 07H. The label "SUBRTN" is at program memory location 0345H. After

executing the instruction,

ACALL SUBRTN

at location 0123H, SP will contain 09H, internal RAM locations 08H and 09H will contain 25H and 01H, respectively, and the PC will contain 0345H.

Bytes: 2 **Cycles:**

Encoding:

a10 a9 a8 1 0 0 1 0

a7 a6 a5 a4 a3 a2 a1 a0

Operation:

ACALL

 $(PC)\leftarrow (PC)+2$ $(SP)\leftarrow (SP) + 1$ $((SP)) \leftarrow (PC_{7-0})$ $(SP)\leftarrow (SP) + 1$

 $((SP))\leftarrow (PC_{15-8})$ $(PC_{10-0})\leftarrow$ page address

ADD A, < src-byte>

Function: Description:

Add

ADD adds the byte variable indicated to the Accumulator, leaving the result in the

Accumulator. The carry and auxiliary-carry flags are set, respectively, if there is a carryout from bit 7 or bit 3, and cleared otherwise. When adding unsigned integers, the carry flag

indicates an overflow occured.

OV is set if there is a carry-out of bit 6 but not out of bit 7, or a carry-out of bit 7 but not bit 6; otherwise OV is cleared. When adding signed integers, OV indicates a negative number produced as the sum of two positive operands, or a positive sum from two negative operands.

Four source operand addressing modes are allowed: register, direct register-indirect, or

immediate.

Example:

The Accumulator holds 0C3H(11000011B) and register 0 holds 0AAH (10101010B). The

instruction,

ADD A,R0

will leave 6DH (01101101B) in the Accumulator with the AC flag cleared and both the carry

flag and OV set to 1.

ADD A,Rn

Bytes: 1 Cycles: 1

Encoding: 0 0 1 0 1 r r r

Operation: ADD

 $(A)\leftarrow(A)+(Rn)$

ADD A, direct

Bytes: 2 Cycles: 1

Encoding: 0 0 1 0 0 1 0 1 direct address

Operation: ADD

 $(A)\leftarrow(A)+(direct)$

ADD A,@Ri

Bytes: 1 Cycles: 1

Encoding: 0 0 1 0 0 1 1 i

Operation: ADD

 $(A)\leftarrow(A)+((Ri))$

ADD A,#data

Bytes: 2 Cycles: 1

Encoding: 0 0 1 0 0 1 0 0 immediate data

Operation: ADD

 $(A)\leftarrow(A) + \#data$

ADDC A, < src-byte>

Function: Add with Carry

Description: ADDC simultaneously adds the byte variable indicated, the Carry flag and the Accumulator,

leaving the result in the Accumulator. The carry and auxiliary-carry flags are set, respectively, if there is a carry-out from bit 7 or bit 3, and cleared otherwise. When adding unsigned

integers, the carry flag indicates an overflow occured.

OV is set if there is a carry-out of bit 6 but not out of bit 7, or a carry-out of bit 7 but not out of bit 6; otherwise OV is cleared. When adding signed integers, OV indicates a negative number produced as the sum of two positive operands or a positive sum from two negative operands.

Four source operand addressing modes are allowed: register, direct, register-indirect, or immediate.

Example: The Accumulator holds 0C3H(11000011B) and register 0 holds 0AAH (10101010B) with the

Carry. The instruction,

ADDC A,R0

will leave 6EH (01101101B) in the Accumulator with the AC flag cleared and both the carry

flag and OV set to 1.

ADDC A,Rn

Bytes: 1

Cycles: 1

Encoding: 0 0 1 1 1 r r r

Operation: ADDC

 $(A)\leftarrow(A)+(C)+(Rn)$

ADDC A, direct

Bytes: 2 Cycles: 1

Encoding: 0 0 1 1 0 1 0 1 direct address

Operation: ADDC

 $(A)\leftarrow(A)+(C)+(direct)$

ADDC A,@Ri

Bytes: 1 **Cycles:** 1

Encoding: 0 0 1 1 0 1 1 i

Operation: ADDC

 $(A)\leftarrow(A)+(C)+((Ri))$

ADDC A,#data

Bytes: 2 Cycles: 1

Encoding: 0 0 1 1 0 1 0 0

immediate data

Operation: ADDC

 $(A)\leftarrow(A)+(C)+\#data$

AJMP addr 11

Function: Absolute Jump

Description: AJMP transfers program execution to the indicated address, which is formed at run-time by

concatenating the high-order five bits of the PC (after incrementing the PC twice), opcode bits 7-5, and the second byte of the instruction. The destination must therefore be within the same 2K block of program memory as the first byte of the instruction following AJMP.

Example: The label "JMPADR" is at program memory location 0123H. The instruction,

AJMP JMPADR

is at location 0345H and will load the PC with 0123H.

Bytes: 2 Cycles: 2

Encoding: a10 a9 a8 0 0 0 0 1 a7 a6 a5 a4 a3 a2 a1 a0

Operation: AJMP

 $(PC)\leftarrow (PC)+2$ $(PC_{10-0})\leftarrow$ page address

ANL <dest-byte>, <src-byte>

Function: Logical-AND for byte variables

Description: ANL performs the bitwise logical-AND operation between the variables indicated and stores

the results in the destination variable. No flags are affected.

The two operands allow six addressing mode combinations. When the destination is the Accumulator, the source can use register, direct, register-indirect, or immediate addressing; when the destination is a direct address, the source can be the Accumulator or immediate data.

Note: When this instruction is used to modify an output port, the value used as the original port data will be read from the output data latch not the input pins.

Example: If the Accumulator holds 0C3H(11000011B) and register 0 holds 55H (01010101B) then the

instruction,

ANL A,R0

will leave 41H (01000001B) in the Accumulator.

When the destination is a directly addressed byte, this instruction will clear combinations of bits in any RAM location or hardware register. The mask byte determining the pattern of bits to be cleared would either be a constant contained in the instruction or a value computed in the Accumulator at run-time. The instruction.

ANL Pl, #01110011B

will clear bits 7, 3, and 2 of output port 1.

ANL A.Rn

Bytes: 1 Cycles: 1

Encoding: 0 1 0 1 1 r r r

Operation: ANL

 $(A)\leftarrow(A) \land (Rn)$

ANL A, direct

Bytes: 2 Cycles: 1

Encoding: 0 1 0 1 0 1 0 1 direct address

Operation: ANL

 $(A)\leftarrow(A) \land (direct)$

ANL A,@Ri

Bytes: 1 Cycles: 1

Encoding: 0 1 0 1 0 1 1 i

Operation: ANL

 $(A)\leftarrow(A) \wedge ((Ri))$

ANL A.#data **Bytes:** 2 **Cycles: Encoding:** 0 1 0 1 0 1 0 0 immediate data **Operation:** ANL (A)←(A) ∧ #data ANL direct.A **Bytes:** 2 **Cycles: Encoding:** 0 1 0 1 0 0 1 0 direct address ANL **Operation:** $(direct) \leftarrow (direct) \land (A)$ ANL direct,#data **Bytes: Cycles:** 2 **Encoding:** 0 1 0 1 0 0 1 direct address immediate data **Operation:** ANL $(direct) \leftarrow (direct) \land \#data$ ANL C, <src-bit> **Function:** Logical-AND for bit variables If the Boolean value of the source bit is a logical 0 then clear the carry flag; otherwise **Description:** leave the carry flag in its current state. A slash ("/") preceding the operand in the assembly language indicates that the logical complement of the addressed bit is used as the source value, but the source bit itself is not affected. No other flsgs are affected. Only direct addressing is allowed for the source operand. **Example:** Set the carry flag if, and only if, P1.0 = 1, ACC. 7 = 1, and OV = 0: ;LOAD CARRY WITH INPUT PIN STATE MOV C, P1.0 ANL C, ACC.7 ;AND CARRY WITH ACCUM. BIT.7 ANL C, /OV ;AND WITH INVERSE OF OVERFLOW FLAG ANL C,bit **Bytes:** 2 Cycles: 2 **Encoding:** 0 0 1 0 0 0 0 bit address **Operation:** ANL $(C) \leftarrow (C) \land (bit)$

ANL C, /bit

Bytes: 2 Cycles: 2

Encoding: 1 0 1 1 0 0 0 0 bit address

Operation: ANL

 $(C)\leftarrow(C) \wedge (\overline{bit})$

CJNE <dest-byte>, <src-byte>, rel

Function: Compare and Jump if Not Equal

Description: CJNE co

CJNE compares the magnitudes of the first two operands, and branches if their values are not equal. The branch destination is computed by adding the signed relative-displacement in the last instruction byte to the PC, after incrementing the PC to the start of the next instruction. The carry flag is set if the unsigned integer value of <dest-byte> is less than the unsigned integer value of <src-byte>; otherwise, the carry is cleared. Neither operand is affected.

The first two operands allow four addressing mode combinations: the Accumulator may be compared with any directly addressed byte or immediate data, and any indirect RAM location or working register can be compared with an immediate constant.

Example:

The Accumulator contains 34H. Register 7 contains 56H. The first instruction in the sequence

sets the carry flag and branches to the instruction at label NOT-EQ. By testing the carry flag, this instruction determines whether R7 is greater or less than 60H.

If the data being presented to Port 1 is also 34H, then the instruction,

WAIT: CJNE A.P1.WAIT

clears the carry flag and continues with the next instruction in sequence, since the Accumulator does equal the data read from P1. (If some other value was being input on Pl, the program will loop at this point until the P1 data changes to 34H.)

CJNE A, direct, rel

Bytes: 3 Cycles: 2

Encoding: 1 0 1 1 0 1 0 1 direct address rel. address

Operation: $(PC) \leftarrow (PC) + 3$

IF (A) <> (direct)

THEN

 $(PC) \leftarrow (PC) + relative offset$

IF(A) < (direct)

THEN

 $(C) \leftarrow 1$

ELSE

 $(C) \leftarrow 0$

```
CJNE A,#data,rel
           Bytes: 3
         Cycles:
                    2
      Encoding:
                       1 0 1 1
                                                          immediata data
                                                                                   rel. address
                                      0 1 0 1
     Operation:
                    (PC) \leftarrow (PC) + 3
                    IF (A) <> (data)
                    THEN
                            (PC) \leftarrow (PC) + relative offset
                    IF (A) < (data)
                     THEN
                             (C) \leftarrow 1
                    ELSE
                             (C) \leftarrow 0
CJNE Rn,#data,rel
          Bytes: 3
         Cycles:
                    2
      Encoding:
                       1 0 1 1
                                       1 r r r
                                                          immediata data
                                                                                   rel. address
     Operation:
                    (PC) \leftarrow (PC) + 3
                    IF (Rn) <> (data)
                    THEN
                            (PC) \leftarrow (PC) + relative offset
                    IF (Rn) < (data)
                     THEN
                             (C) \leftarrow 1
                    ELSE
                             (C) \leftarrow 0
CJNE @Ri,#data,rel
          Bytes: 3
         Cycles:
      Encoding:
                       1 0 1 1
                                       0 1 1 i
                                                         immediate data
                                                                                  rel. address
     Operation:
                    (PC) \leftarrow (PC) + 3
                    IF ((Ri)) <> (data)
                    THEN
                            (PC) \leftarrow (PC) + relative offset
                    IF ((Ri)) < (data)
                     THEN
                             (C) \leftarrow 1
                    ELSE
                             (C) \leftarrow 0
```

CLR A

Function: Clear Accumulator

Description: The Accumulator is cleared (all bits set on zero). No flags are affected.

Example: The Accumulator contains 5CH (01011100B). The instruction,

CLR A

will leave the Accumulator set to 00H (00000000B).

Bytes: 1 **Cycles:** 1

Encoding: 1 1 1 0 0 1 0 0

Operation: CLR

 $(A)\leftarrow 0$

CLR bit

Function: Clear bit

Description: The indicated bit is cleared (reset to zero). No other flags are affected. CLR can operate on

the carry flag or any directly addressable bit.

Example: Port 1 has previously been written with 5DH (01011101B). The instruction,

CLR P1.2

will leave the port set to 59H (01011001B).

CLR C

Bytes: 1 Cycles: 1

Encoding: 1 1 0 0 0 0 1 1

Operation: CLR

 $(C) \leftarrow 0$

CLR bit

Bytes: 2 Cycles: 1

Encoding: 1 1 0 0

1 1 0 0 0 0 1 0

bit address

Operation: CLR

 $(bit) \leftarrow 0$

CPL A

Function: Complement Accumulator

Description: Each bit of the Accumulator is logically complemented (one's complement). Bits which

previously contained a one are changed to a zero and vice-versa. No flags are affected.

Example: The Accumulator contains 5CH(01011100B). The instruction,

CPL A

will leave the Accumulator set to 0A3H (101000011B).

Bytes: 1 Cycles: 1

Encoding: 1 1 1 1 0 1 0 0

Operation: CPL

 $(A) \leftarrow \overline{(A)}$

CPL bit

Function: Complement bit

Description: The bit variable specified is complemented. A bit which had been a one is changed to zero

and vice-versa. No other flags are affected. CLR can operate on the carry or any directly

addressable bit.

Note: When this instruction is used to modify an output pin, the value used as the original

data will be read from the output data latch, not the input pin.

Example: Port 1 has previously been written with 5DH (01011101B). The instruction,

CLR P1.1

CLR P1.2

will leave the port set to 59H (01011001B).

CPL C

Bytes: 1

Cycles:

Encoding: 1 0 1 1 0 0 1 1

Operation: CPL

 $(C) \leftarrow (C)$

CPL bit

Bytes: 2 Cycles: 1

Encoding: 1 0 1 1 0 0 1 0 bit address

Operation: CPL

 $(bit) \leftarrow (bit)$

DA A

Function:

Decimal-adjust Accumulator for Addition

Description:

DA A adjusts the eight-bit value in the Accumulator resulting from the earlier addition of two variables (each in packed-BCD format), producing two four-bit digits. Any ADD or ADDC instruction may have been used to perform the addition.

If Accumulator bits 3-0 are greater than nine (xxxx1010-xxxx1111), or if the AC flag is one, six is added to the Accumulator producing the proper BCD digit in the low-order nibble. This internal addition would set the carry flag if a carry-out of the low-order four-bit field propagated through all high-order bits, but it would not clear the carry flag otherwise.

If the carry flag is now set or if the four high-order bits now exceed nine(1010xxxx-111xxxx), these high-order bits are incremented by six, producing the proper BCD digit in the high-order nibble. Again, this would set the carry flag if there was a carry-out of the high-order bits, but wouldn't clear the carry. The carry flag thus indicates if the sum of the original two BCD variables is greater than 100, allowing multiple precision decimal addition. OV is not affected.

All of this occurs during the one instruction cycle. Essentially, this instruction performs the decimal conversion by adding 00H, 06H, 60H, or 66H to the Accumulator, depending on initial Accumulator and PSW conditions.

Note: DA A cannot simply convert a hexadecimal number in the Accumulator to BCD notation, nor does DA A apply to decimal subtraction.

Example:

The Accumulator holds the value 56H(01010110B) representing the packed BCD digits of the decimal number 56. Register 3 contains the value 67H (01100111B) representing the packed BCD digits of the decimal number 67. The carry flag is set. The instruction sequence.

ADDC A,R3 DA A

will first perform a standard twos-complement binary addition, resulting in the value 0BEH (10111110) in the Accumulator. The carry and auxiliary carry flags will be cleared.

The Decimal Adjust instruction will then alter the Accumulator to the value 24H (00100100B), indicating the packed BCD digits of the decimal number 24, the low-order two digits of the decimal sum of 56,67, and the carry-in. The carry flag will be set by the Decimal Adjust instruction, indicating that a decimal overflow occurred. The true sum 56, 67, and 1 is 124.

BCD variables can be incremented or decremented by adding 01H or 99H. If the Accumulator initially holds 30H (representing the digits of 30 decimal), then the instruction sequence,

ADD A,#99H DA A

will leave the carry set and 29H in the Accumulator, since 30+99=129. The low-order byte of the sum can be interpreted to mean 30-1=29.

Bytes: 1 Cycles: 1

Encoding: 1 1 0 1 0 1 0 0

Operation: DA

-contents of Accumulator are BCD

IF
$$[[(A_{3-0}) > 9] V [(AC) = 1]]$$

THEN $(A_{3-0}) \leftarrow (A_{3-0}) + 6$

AND

IF $[[(A_{7-4}) > 9] V [(C) = 1]]$ THEN $(A_{7-4}) \leftarrow (A_{7-4}) + 6$

DEC byte

Function: Decrement

Description: The variable indicated is decremented by 1. An original value of 00H will underflow to

0FFH.

No flags are affected. Four operand addressing modes are allowed: accumulator, register, direct, or register-indirect.

Note: When this instruction is used to modify an output port, the value used as the original port data will be read from the output data latch, not the input pins.

Example: Register 0 contains 7FH (01111111B). Internal RAM locations 7EH and 7FH contain 00H

and 40H, respectively. The instruction sequence,

DEC @R0

DEC R0

DEC @R0

will leave register 0 set to 7EH and internal RAM locations 7EH and 7FH set to 0FFH and 3FH.

DEC A

Bytes: 1
Cycles: 1

Encoding: 0 0 0 1 0 1 0 0

Operation: DEC

(A)←(A) −1

DEC Rn

Bytes: 1
Cycles: 1

Encoding: 0 0 0 1 1 r r r

Operation: DEC

 $(Rn)\leftarrow (Rn) - 1$

DEC direct

Bytes: 2 Cycles: 1

Encoding: 0 0 0 1 0 1 0 1 direct address

Operation: DEC

 $(direct) \leftarrow (direct) -1$

DEC @Ri

Bytes: 1 **Cycles:** 1

Encoding: 0 0 0 1 0 1 1 i

Operation: DEC

 $((Ri))\leftarrow((Ri))-1$

DIV AB

Function: Divide

Description: DIV AB divides the unsigned eight-bit integer in the Accumulator by the unsigned eight-bit

integer in register B. The Accumulator receives the integer part of the quotient; register B

receives the integer remainder. The carry and OV flags will be cleared.

Exception: if B had originally contained 00H, the values returned in the Accumulator and B-register will be undefined and the overflow flag will be set. The carry flag is cleared in any

case.

Example: The Accumulator contains 251(OFBH or 11111011B) and B contains 18(12H or 00010010B).

The instruction,

DIV AB

will leave 13 in the Accumulator (0DH or 00001101B) and the value 17 (11H or 00010010B)

in B, since $251 = (13 \times 18) + 17$. Carry and OV will both be cleared.

Bytes: 1 Cycles: 4

Encoding: 1 0 0 0 0 1 0 0

Operation: DIV

 $^{(A)_{15-8}}_{(B)_{7-0}} \leftarrow (A)/(B)$

DJNZ <byte>, <rel-addr>

Function: Decrement and Jump if Not Zero

Description: DJNZ decrements the location indicated by 1, and branches to the address indicated by the

second operand if the resulting value is not zero. An original value of 00H will underflow to 0FFH. No flags are afected. The branch destination would be computed by adding the signed relative-displacement value in the last instruction byte to the PC, after incrementing the PC to the forther of the full principle instruction.

to the first byte of the following instruction.

The location decremented may be a register or directly addressed byte.

Note: When this instruction is used to modify an output port, the value used as the original port data will be read from the output data latch, not the input pins.

Example: Internal RAM locations 40H, 50H, and 60H contain the values 01H, 70H, and 15H,

respectively. The instruction sequence,

DJNZ 40H, LABEL_1 DJNZ 50H, LABEL_2 DJNZ 60H, LABEL 3

will cause a jump to the instruction at label LABEL_2 with the values 00H, 6FH, and 15H in the three RAM locations. The first jump was not taken because the result was zero.

This instruction provides a simple way of executing a program loop a given number of times, or for adding a moderate time delay (from 2 to 512 machine cycles) with a single instruction The instruction sequence,

MOV R2,#8
TOOOLE: CPL P1.7
DJNZ R2, TOOGLE

will toggle P1.7 eight times, causing four output pulses to appear at bit 7 of output Port 1. Each pulse will last three machine cycles; two for DJNZ and one to alter the pin.

DJNZ Rn.rel

Bytes: 2 Cycles: 2

Encoding: 1 1 0 1 1 r r r r rel. address

Operation: DJNZ

$$(PC) \leftarrow (PC) + 2$$

 $(Rn) \leftarrow (Rn) - 1$
IF $(Rn) > 0$ or $(Rn) < 0$
THEN
 $(PC) \leftarrow (PC) + rel$

DJNZ direct, rel

Bytes: 3 Cycles: 2

Encoding: 1 1 0 1 0 1 0 1 direct address rel. address

Operation: DJNZ

 $(PC) \leftarrow (PC) + 2$ $(direct) \leftarrow (direct) - 1$

IF (direct) > 0 or (direct) < 0

THEN

 $(PC) \leftarrow (PC) + rel$

INC <byte>

Function: Increment

Description: INC increments the indicated variable by 1. An original value of 0FFH will overflow to

00H.No flags are affected. Three addressing modes are allowed: register, direct, or register-

indirect.

Note: When this instruction is used to modify an output port, the value used as the original

port data will be read from the output data latch, not the input pins.

Example: Register 0 contains 7EH (011111110B). Internal RAM locations 7EH and 7FH contain 0FFH

and 40H, respectively. The instruction sequence,

INC @R0 INC R0

INC @R0

will leave register 0 set to 7FH and internal RAM locations 7EH and 7FH holding (respectively) 00H and 41H.

INC A

Bytes: 1 Cycles: 1

Encoding: 0 0 0 0 0 1 0 0

Operation: INC

 $(A) \leftarrow (A)+1$

INC Rn

Bytes: 1
Cycles: 1

Encoding: 0 0 0 0 1 r r r

Operation: INC

 $(Rn) \leftarrow (Rn)+1$

INC direct

Bytes: 2 Cycles: 1

Encoding: 0 0 0 0 0 1 0 1 direct address

Operation: INC

 $(direct) \leftarrow (direct) + 1$

INC @Ri

Bytes: 1
Cycles: 1

Encoding: 0 0 0 0 0 1 1 i

Operation: INC

 $((Ri))\leftarrow((Ri))+1$

INC DPTR

Function: Increment Data Pointer

Description: Increment the 16-bit data pointer by 1. A 16-bit increment (modulo 2¹⁶) is performed; an

overflow of the low-order byte of the data pointer (DPL) from 0FFH to 00H will increment

the high-order-byte (DPH). No flags are affected.

This is the only 16-bit register which can be incremented.

Example: Register DPH and DPL contains 12H and 0FEH, respectively. The instruction sequence,

INC DPTR
INC DPTR
INC DPTR

will change DPH and DPL to 13H and 01H.

Bytes: 1 Cycles: 2

Encoding: 1 0 1 0 0 0 1 1

Operation: INC

 $(DPTR) \leftarrow (DPTR)+1$

JB bit, rel

Function: Jump if Bit set

Description: If the indicated bit is a one, jump to the address indicated; otherwise proceed with the next

instruction. The branch destination is computed by adding the signed relative-displacement in the third instruction byte to the PC, after incrementing the PC to the first byte of the next

instruction. The bit tested is not modified. No flags are affected.

Example: The data present at input port 1 is 11001010B. The Accumulator holds 56 (01010110B). The

instruction sequence, JB P1.2, LABEL1 JB ACC.2, LABEL2

will cause program execution to branch to the instruction at label LABEL2.

Bytes: 3 Cycles: 2

Encoding: 0 0 1 0 0 0 0 0 bit address rel. address

Operation: JB

 $(PC) \leftarrow (PC)+3$ IF (bit) = 1THEN

 $(PC) \leftarrow (PC) + rel$

JBC bit, rel

Function: Jump if Bit is set and Clear bit

Description: If the indicated bit is one,branch to the address indicated;otherwise proceed with the next

instruction. The bit wili not be cleared if it is already a zero. The branch destination is computed by adding the signed relative-displacement in the third instruction byte to the PC, after incrementing the PC to the first byte of the next instruction. No flags are affected.

Note: When this instruction is used to test an output pin, the value used as the original data will be read from the output data latch, not the input pin.

Example: The Accumulator holds 56H (01010110B). The instruction sequence,

JBC ACC.3, LABEL1 JBC ACC.2, LABEL2

will cause program execution to continue at the instruction identified by the label LABEL2, with the Accumulator modified to 52H (01010010B).

Bytes: 3 Cycles: 2

Encoding: 0 0 0 1 0 0 0 0 bit address rel. address

Operation: JBC

 $(PC) \leftarrow (PC) + 3$ IF (bit) = 1THEN $(bit) \leftarrow 0$ $(PC) \leftarrow (PC) + rel$

JC rel

Function: Jump if Carry is set

Description: If the carry flag is set, branch to the address indicated; otherwise proceed with the next

instruction. The branch destination is computed by adding the signed relative-displacement in the second instruction byte to the PC, after incrementing the PC twice. No flags are affected.

Example: The carry flag is cleared. The instruction sequence,

JC LABEL1 CPL C JC LABEL2s

will set the carry and cause program execution to continue at the instruction identified by the label LABEL2.

Bytes: 2 Cycles: 2

Encoding: 0 1 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 rel. address

Operation: JC

 $(PC) \leftarrow (PC) + 2$ IF (C) = 1THEN $(PC) \leftarrow (PC) + rel$

JMP @A+DPTR

Function: Jump indirect

Description: Add the eight-bit unsigned contents of the Accumulator with the sixteen-bit data pointer,

and load the resulting sum to the program counter. This will be the address for subsequent instruction fetches. Sixteen-bit addition is performed (modulo 2^{16}): a carry-out from the low-order eight bits propagates through the higher-order bits. Neither the Accumulator nor the

Data Pointer is altered. No flags are affected.

Example: An even number from 0 to 6 is in the Accumulator. The following sequence of instructions

will branch to one of four AJMP instructions in a jump table starting at JMP_TBL:

MOV DPTR, #JMP_TBL
JMP @A+DPTR

JMP-TBL: AJMP LABEL0
AJMP LABEL1
AJMP LABEL2
AJMP LABEL3

If the Accumulator equals 04H when starting this sequence, execution will jump to label LABEL2. Remember that AJMP is a two-byte instruction, so the jump instructions start at every other address.

Bytes: 1 Cycles: 2

Encoding: 0 1 1 1 0 0 1 1

Operation: JMP

 $(PC) \leftarrow (A) + (DPTR)$

JNB bit, rel

Function: Jump if Bit is not set

Description: If the indicated bit is a zero, branch to the indicated address; otherwise proceed with the next

instruction. The branch destination is computed by adding the signed relative-displacement in the third instruction byte to the PC, after incrementing the PC to the first byte of the next

instruction. The bit tested is not modified. No flags are affected.

Example: The data present at input port 1 is 11001010B. The Accumulator holds 56H (01010110B).

The instruction sequence,

JNB P1.3, LABEL1 JNB ACC.3, LABEL2

will cause program execution to continue at the instruction at label LABEL2

Bytes: 3 Cycles: 2

Encoding: 0 0 1 1 0 0 0 0 bit address rel. address

Operation: JNB

 $(PC) \leftarrow (PC) + 3$ IF (bit) = 0

THEN $(PC) \leftarrow (PC) + rel$

JNC rel

Function: Jump if Carry not set

Description: If the carry flag is a zero, branch to the address indicated; otherwise proceed with the next

instruction. The branch destination is computed by adding the signed relative-displacement in the second instruction byte to the PC, after incrementing the PC twice to point to the next

instruction. The carry flag is not modified

Example: The carry flag is set. The instruction sequence,

JNC LABEL1 CPL C JNC LABEL2

will clear the carry and cause program execution to continue at the instruction identified by the label LABEL2.

Bytes: 2 Cycles: 2

Encoding: 0 1 0 1 0 0 0 0 rel. address

Operation: JNC

 $(PC) \leftarrow (PC) + 2$ IF (C) = 0

THEN $(PC) \leftarrow (PC) + rel$

JNZ rel

Function: Jump if Accumulator Not Zero

Description: If any bit of the Accumulator is a one, branch to the indicated address; otherwise proceed

with the next instruction. The branch destination is computed by adding the signed relative-displacement in the second instruction byte to the PC, after incrementing the PC twice. The

Accumulator is not modified. No flags are affected.

Example: The Accumulator originally holds 00H. The instruction sequence,

JNZ LABEL1 INC A JNZ LAEEL2

will set the Accumulator to 01H and continue at label LABEL2.

Bytes: 2 Cycles: 2

Encoding: 0 1 1 1 0 0 0 0 rel. address

Operation: JNZ

 $(PC) \leftarrow (PC) + 2$ IF $(A) \neq 0$

THEN $(PC) \leftarrow (PC) + rel$

JZ rel

Function: Jump if Accumulator Zero

Description: If all bits of the Accumulator are zero, branch to the address indicated; otherwise proceed

with the next instruction. The branch destination is computed by adding the signed relative-displacement in the second instruction byte to the PC, after incrementing the PC twice. The

Accumulator is not modified. No flags are affected.

Example: The Accumulator originally contains 01H. The instruction sequence,

JZ LABEL1 DEC A JZ LAEEL2

will change the Accumulator to 00H and cause program execution to continue at the

instruction identified by the label LABEL2.

Bytes: 2 Cycles: 2

Encoding: 0 1 1 0 0 0 0 0

rel. address

Operation: JZ

 $(PC) \leftarrow (PC) + 2$ IF (A) = 0

THEN $(PC) \leftarrow (PC) + rel$

LCALL addr16

Function: Long call

Description: LCALL calls a subroutine loated at the indicated address. The instruction adds three to the

program counter to generate the address of the next instruction and then pushes the 16-bit result onto the stack (low byte first), incrementing the Stack Pointer by two. The high-order and low-order bytes of the PC are then loaded, respectively, with the second and third bytes of the LCALL instruction. Program execution continues with the instruction at this address. The subroutine may therefore begin anywhere in the full 64K-byte program memory address

space. No flags are affected.

Example: Initially the Stack Pointer equals 07H. The label "SUBRTN" is assigned to program memory

location 1234H. After executing the instruction,

LCALL SUBRTN

at location 0123H, the Stack Pointer will contain 09H, internal RAM locations 08H and 09H will contain 26H and 01H, and the PC will contain 1234H.

Bytes: 3 Cycles: 2

Encoding: 0 0 0 1 0 0 1 0 addr15-addr8 addr7-addr0

Operation: LCALL

 $(PC) \leftarrow (PC) + 3$ $(SP) \leftarrow (SP) + 1$ $((SP)) \leftarrow (PC_{7-0})$ $(SP) \leftarrow (SP) + 1$

 $((SP)) \leftarrow (PC_{15-8})$ $(PC) \leftarrow addr_{15-0}$

LJMP addr16

Function: Long Jump

Description: LJMP causes an unconditional branch to the indicated address, by loading the high-order

and low-order bytes of the PC (respectively) with the second and third instruction bytes. The destination may therefore be anywhere in the full 64K program memory address space. No

flags are affected.

Example: The label "JMPADR" is assigned to the instruction at program memory location 1234H. The

instruction,

LJMP JMPADR

at location 0123H will load the program counter with 1234H.

Bytes: 3 Cycles: 2

Encoding: 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 0 addr15-addr8 addr7-addr0

Operation: LJMP

 $(PC) \leftarrow addr_{15-0}$

MOV <dest-byte>, <src-byte>

Function: Move byte variable

Description: The byte variable indicated by the second operand is copied into the location specified by the

first operand. The source byte is not affected. No other register or flag is affected.

This is by far the most flexible operation. Fifteen combinations of source and destination

addressing modes are allowed.

Example: Internal RAM location 30H holds 40H. The value of RAM location 40H is 10H. The data

present at input port 1 is 11001010B (0CAH).

MOV R0, #30H ;R0< = 30H MOV A, @R0 ;A <= 40H MOV R1, A ;R1 <= 40H MOV B, @R1 ;B <= 10H

MOV @RI, PI ; RAM (40H) < = 0CAH

MOV P2, P1 ;P2 #0CAH

leaves the value 30H in register 0,40H in both the Accumulator and register 1,10H in register B, and 0CAH(1100101B) both in RAM location 40H and output on port 2.

MOV A,Rn

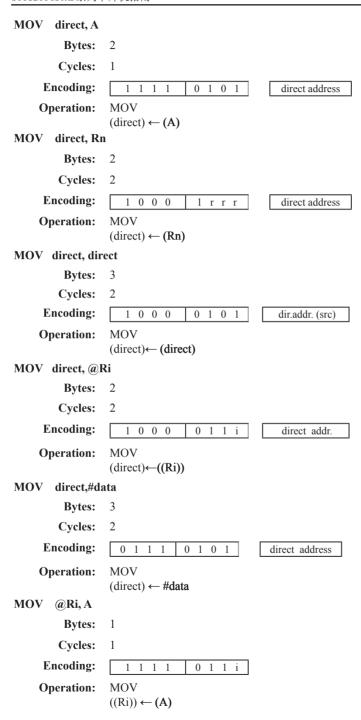
Bytes: 1 Cycles: 1

Encoding: 1 1 1 0 1 r r r

Operation: MOV

 $(A) \leftarrow (Rn)$

*MOV A,direct	
Bytes:	2
Cycles:	1
Encoding:	1 1 1 0 0 1 0 1 direct address
Operation:	MOV
	$(A)\leftarrow$ (direct)
	is not a valid instruction
MOV A,@Ri	
Bytes:	1
Cycles:	
Encoding:	1 1 1 0 0 1 1 i
Operation:	$MOV (A) \leftarrow ((Ri))$
MOV A,#data	
Bytes:	2
Cycles:	1
Encoding:	0 1 1 1 0 1 0 0 immediate data
Operation:	MOV (A)← #data
MOV Rn, A	
Bytes:	1
Cycles:	1
Encoding:	1 1 1 1 1 r r r
Operation:	MOV $(Rn)\leftarrow (A)$
MOV Rn,direct	
Bytes:	2
Cycles:	2
Encoding:	1 0 1 0 1 r r r direct addr.
Operation:	MOV $(Rn)\leftarrow$ (direct)
MOV Rn,#data	
Bytes:	2
Cycles:	1
	1
Encoding:	0 1 1 1 1 r r r immediate data
Encoding: Operation:	



MOV @Ri, direct **Bytes: Cycles:** 2 **Encoding:** 1 0 1 0 0 1 1 i direct addr. MOV **Operation:** $((Ri)) \leftarrow (direct)$ MOV @Ri, #data **Bytes:** 2 **Cycles: Encoding:** 0 1 1 1 0 1 1 i immediate data **Operation:** MOV $((Ri)) \leftarrow \#data$ MOV <dest-bit>, <src-bit> **Function:** Move bit data **Description:** The Boolean variable indicated by the second operand is copied into the location specified by the first operand. One of the operands must be the carry flag; the other may be any directly addressable bit. No other register or flag is affected. Example: The carry flag is originally set. The data present at input Port 3 is 11000101B. The data previously written to output Port 1 is 35H (00110101B). P1.3. C MOV C, P3.3 MOV P1.2, C MOV will leave the carry cleared and change Port 1 to 39H (00111001B). MOV C,bit **Bytes:** 2 Cycles: **Encoding:** 1 0 1 0 0 0 1 1 bit address MOV **Operation:** $(C) \leftarrow (bit)$ MOV bit,C **Bytes:** 2 Cycles: 2 **Encoding:** 1 0 0 1 0 0 1 0 bit address **Operation:** MOV $(bit) \leftarrow (C)$

MOV DPTR, #data 16

Function: Load Data Pointer with a 16-bit constant

Description: The Data Pointer is loaded with the 16-bit constant indicated. The 16-bit constant is loaded

into the second and third bytes of the instruction. The second byte (DPH) is the high-order

byte, while the third byte (DPL) holds the low-order byte. No flags are affected.

This is the only instruction which moves 16 bits of data at once.

Example: The instruction,

MOV DPTR, #1234H

will load the value 1234H into the Data Pointer: DPH will hold 12H and DPL will hold 34H.

Bytes: 3 Cycles: 2

Encoding: 1 0 0 1 0 0 0 0 immediate data 15-8

Operation: MOV

 $(DPTR) \leftarrow \#data_{15-0}$

DPH DPL ← #data₁₅₋₈ #data₇₋₀

MOVC A, @A+ <base-reg>

Function: Move Code byte

Description: The MOVC instructions load the Accumulator with a code byte, or constant from program

memory. The address of the byte fetched is the sum of the original unsigned eight-bit. Accumulator contents and the contents of a sixteen-bit base register, which may be either the Data Pointer or the PC. In the latter case, the PC is incremented to the address of the following instruction before being added with the Accumulator; otherwise the base register is not altered. Sixteen-bit addition is performed so a carry-out from the low-order eight bits

may propagate through higher-order bits. No flags are affected.

Example: A value between 0 and 3 is in the Accumulator. The following instructions will translate the

value in the Accumulator to one of four values defimed by the DB (define byte) directive.

REL-PC: INC A

MOVC A, @A+PC

RET

DB 66H

DB 77H

DB 88H

DB 99H

If the subroutine is called with the Accumulator equal to 01H, it will return with 77H in the Accumulator. The INC A before the MOVC instruction is needed to "get around" the RET instruction above the table. If several bytes of code separated the MOVC from the table, the corresponding number would be added to the Accumulator instead.

MOVC A,@A+DPTR

Bytes: 1 Cycles: 2

Encoding: 1 0 0 1 0 0 1 1

Operation: MOVC

 $(A) \leftarrow ((A)+(DPTR))$

MOVC A,@A+PC

Bytes: 1 Cycles: 2

Encoding: 1 0 0 0 0 0 1 1

Operation: MOVC

 $(PC) \leftarrow (PC)+1$ $(A) \leftarrow ((A)+(PC))$

MOVX <dest-byte>, <src-byte>

Function: Move External

Description: The MOVX instructions transfer data between the Accumulator and a byte of external data memory, hence the "X" appended to MOV. There are two types of instructions, differing in

whether they provide an eight-bit or sixteen-bit indirect address to the external data RAM.

In the first type, the contents of R0 or R1 in the current register bank provide an eight-bit address multiplexed with data on P0. Eight bits are sufficient for external I/O expansion decoding or for a relatively small RAM array. For somewhat larger arrays, any output port pins can be used to output higher-order address bits. These pins would be controlled by an output instruction preceding the MOVX.

In the second type of MOVX instruction, the Data Pointer generates a sixteen-bit address. P2 outputs the high-order eight address bits (the contents of DPH) while P0 multiplexes the low-order eight bits (DPL) with data. The P2 Special Function Register retains its previous contents while the P2 output buffers are emitting the contents of DPH. This form is faster and more efficient when accessing very large data arrays (up to 64K bytes), since no additional instructions are needed to set up the output ports.

It is possible in some situations to mix the two MOVX types. A large RAM array with its high-order address lines driven by P2 can be addressed via the Data Pointer, or with code to output high-order address bits to P2 followed by a MOVX instruction using R0 or R1.

Example: An external 256 byte RAM using multiplexed address/data lines (e.g., an Intel 8155 RAM/

I/O/Timer) is connected to the 8051 Port 0. Port 3 provides control lines for the external RAM. Ports 1 and 2 are used for normal I/O. Registers 0 and 1 contain 12H and 34H. Location 34H of the external RAM holds the value 56H. The instruction sequence,

MOVX A, @R1 MOVX @R0, A

copies the value 56H into both the Accumulator and external RAM location 12H.

MOVX A,@Ri

Bytes: 1 Cycles: 2

Encoding: 1 1 1 0 0 0 1 i

Operation: MOVX

 $(A) \leftarrow ((Ri))$

MOVX A,@DPTR

Bytes: 1 Cycles: 2

Encoding: 1 1 1 0 0 0 0 0

Operation: MOVX

 $(A) \leftarrow ((DPTR))$

MOVX @Ri, A

Bytes: 1 Cycles: 2

Encoding: 1 1 1 1 0 0 1 i

Operation: MOVX

 $((Ri))\leftarrow (A)$

MOVX @DPTR, A

Bytes: 1 Cycles: 2

Encoding: 1 1 1 1 0 0 0 0

Operation: MOVX

 $(DPTR)\leftarrow (A)$

MUL AB

Function: Multiply

Description: MUL AB multiplies the unsigned eight-bit integers in the Accumulator and register B. The

low-order byte of the sixteen-bit product is left in the Accumulator, and the high-order byte in B. If the product is greater than 255 (0FFH) the overflow flag is set; otherwise it is cleared.

The carry flag is always cleared

Example: Originally the Accumulator holds the value 80 (50H). Register B holds the value 160

(0A0H). The instruction,

MUL AB

will give the product 12,800 (3200H), so B is changed to 32H (00110010B) and the

Accumulator is cleared. The overflow flag is set, carry is cleared.

Bytes: 1 Cycles: 4

Encoding: 1 0 1 0 0 1 0 0

Operation: MUL

 $(A)_{7-0} \leftarrow (A) \times (B)$

 $(B)_{15-8}$

NOP

Function: No Operation

Description: Execution continues at the following instruction. Other than the PC, no registers or flags are

affected.

Example: It is desired to produce a low-going output pulse on bit 7 of Port 2 lasting exactly 5 cycles. A

simple SETB/CLR sequence would generate a one-cycle pulse, so four additional cycles must be inserted. This may be done (assuming no interrupts are enabled) with the instruction

sequence.

CLR P2.7

NOP

NOP

NOP

NOP

SETB P2.7

Bytes:

Cycles:

Encoding: $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

Operation: NOP

 $(PC) \leftarrow (PC)+1$

0 0

ORL <dest-byte>, <src-byte>

Function: Logical-OR for byte variables

Description: ORL performs the bitwise logical-OR operation between the indicated variables, storing the results in the destination byte. No flags are affected.

The two operands allow six addressing mode combinations. When the destination is the Accumulator, the source can use register, direct, register-indirect, or immediate addressing; when the destination is a direct address, the source can be the Accumulator or immediate data

Note: When this instruction is used to modify an output port, the value used as the original port data will be read from the output data latch, not the input pins.

Example: If the Accumulator holds 0C3H (11000011B) and R0 holds 55H (01010101B) then the instruction,

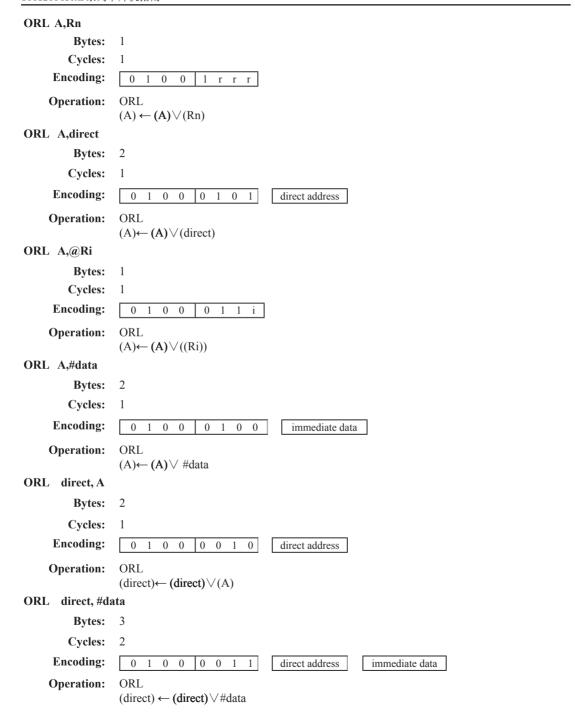
ORL A, R0

will leave the Accumulator holding the value 0D7H (11010111B).

When the destination is a directly addressed byte, the instruction can set combinations of bits in any RAM location or hardware register. The pattern of bits to be set is determined by a mask byte, which may be either a constant data value in the instruction or a variable computed in the Accumulator at run-time. The instruction,

ORL P1, #00110010B

will set bits 5,4, and 1of output Port 1.



ORL C, <src-bit>

Function: Logical-OR for bit variables

Description: Set the carry flag if the Boolean value is a logical 1; leave the carry in its current state

otherwise. A slash ("/") preceding the operand in the assembly language indicates that the logical complement of the addressed bit is used as the source value, but the source bit itself is

not affected. No other flags are affected.

Example: Set the carry flag if and only if P1.0 = 1, ACC. 7 = 1, or OV = 0:

MOV C, P1.0 ;LOAD CARRY WITH INPUT PIN P10
ORL C, ACC.7 ;OR CARRY WITH THE ACC.BIT 7
ORL C./OV :OR CARRY WITH THE INVERSE OF OV

ORL C, bit

Bytes: 2 Cycles: 2

Encoding: 0 1 1 1 0 0 1 0 bit address

Operation: ORL

 $(C) \leftarrow (C) \lor (bit)$

ORL C, /bit

Bytes: 2 Cycles: 2

Encoding: 1 0 1 0 0 0 0 0 bit address

Operation: ORL

 $(C) \leftarrow (C) \lor (\overline{bit})$

POP direct

Function: Pop from stack

Description: The contents of the internal RAM location addressed by the Stack Pointer is read, and the

Stack Pointer is decremented by one. The value read is then transferred to the directly

addressed byte indicated. No flags are affected.

Example: The Stack Pointer originally contains the value 32H, and internal RAM locations 30H

through 32H contain the values 20H, 23H, and 01H, respectively. The instruction sequence,

POP DPH POP DPL

will leave the Stack Pointer equal to the value 30H and the Data Pointer set to 0123H. At this

point the instruction,

POP SP

will leave the Stack Pointer set to 20H. Note that in this special case the Stack Pointer was

decremented to 2FH before being loaded with the value popped (20H).

Bytes: 2 Cycles: 2

Encoding: 1 1 0 1 0 0 0 0 direct address

Operation: POP

 $(diect) \leftarrow ((SP))$ $(SP) \leftarrow (SP) - 1$

PUSH direct

Function: Push onto stack

Description: The Stack Pointer is incremented by one. The contents of the indicated variable is then copied

into the internal RAM location addressed by the Stack Pointer. Otherwise no flags are

affected.

Example: On entering interrupt routine the Stack Pointer contains 09H. The Data Pointer holds the

value 0123H. The instruction sequence,

PUSH DPL PUSH DPH

will leave the Stack Pointer set to 0BH and store 23H and 01H in internal RAM locations 0AH and 0BH, respectively.

Bytes: 2 Cycles: 2

Encoding: 1 1 0 0 0 0 0 0 direct address

Operation: PUSH

 $(SP) \leftarrow (SP) + 1$ $((SP)) \leftarrow (direct)$

RET

Function: Return from subroutine

Description: RET pops the high-and low-order bytes of the PC successively from the stack, decrementing

the Stack Pointer by two. Program execution continues at the resulting address, generally the

instruction immediately following an ACALL or LCALL. No flags are affected.

Example: The Stack Pointer originally contains the value 0BH. Internal RAM locations 0AH and 0BH

contain the values 23H and 01H, respectively. The instruction,

RET

will leave the Stack Pointer equal to the value 09H. Program execution will continue at

location 0123H.

Bytes: 1 Cycles: 2

Encoding: 0 0 1 0 0 0 1 0

Operation: RET

 $\begin{array}{l} (PC_{15-8}) \leftarrow ((SP)) \\ (SP) \leftarrow (SP) -1 \\ (PC_{7-0}) \leftarrow ((SP)) \\ (SP) \leftarrow (SP) -1 \end{array}$

RETI

Function: Return from interrupt

Description: RETI pops the high- and low-order bytes of the PC successively from the stack, and restores

the interrupt logic to accept additional interrupts at the same priority level as the one just processed. The Stack Pointer is left decremented by two. No other registers are affected; the PSW is not automatically restored to its pre-interrupt status. Program execution continues at the resulting address, which is generally the instruction immediately after the point at which the interrupt request was detected. If a lower- or same-level interrupt had been pending when the RETI instruction is executed, that one instruction will be executed before the pending

interrupt is processed.

Example: The Stack Pointer originally contains the value 0BH. An interrupt was detected during the

instruction ending at location 0122H. Internal RAM locations 0AH and 0BH contain the

values 23H and 01H, respectively. The instruction,

RETI

will leave the Stack Pointer equal to 09H and return program execution to location 0123H.

Bytes: 1

Cycles: 2

Encoding: 0 0 1 1 0 0 1 0

Operation: RETI

 $(PC_{15-8}) \leftarrow ((SP))$

 $(SP) \leftarrow (SP) - 1$

 $(PC_{7-0}) \leftarrow ((SP))$

 $(SP) \leftarrow (SP) - 1$

RL A

Function: Rotate Accumulator Left

Description: The eight bits in the Accumulator are rotated one bit to the left. Bit 7 is rotated into the bit 0

position. No flags are affected.

Example: The Accumulator holds the value 0C5H (11000101B). The instruction,

RL A

leaves the Accumulator holding the value 8BH (10001011B) with the carry unaffected.

Bytes: 1

Cycles: 1

Encoding: 0 0 1 0 0 0 1 1

Operation: RL

 $(An+1) \leftarrow (An)$ n = 0-6

 $(A0) \leftarrow (A7)$

RLC A

Function: Rotate Accumulator Left through the Carry flag

Description: The eight bits in the Accumulator and the carry flag are together rotated one bit to the left. Bit

7 moves into the carry flag; the original state of the carry flag moves into the bit 0 position.

No other flags are affected.

Example: The Accumulator holds the value 0C5H (11000101B), and the carry is zero. The instruction,

RLC A

leaves the Accumulator holding the value 8BH (10001011B) with the carry set.

Bytes: 1 Cycles: 1

Encoding: 0 0 1 1 0 0 1 1

Operation: RLC

 $(An+1) \leftarrow (An)$ n = 0-6

 $(A0) \leftarrow (C)$ $(C) \leftarrow (A7)$

RR A

Function: Rotate Accumulator Right

Description: The eight bits in the Accumulator are rotated one bit to the right. Bit 0 is rotated into the bit 7

position. No flags are affected.

Example: The Accumulator holds the value 0C5H (11000101B). The instruction,

RR A

leaves the Accumulator holding the value 0E2H (11100010B) with the carry unaffected.

Bytes: 1 Cycles: 1

Encoding: 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 1

Operation: RR

 $(An) \leftarrow (An+1)$ n = 0 - 6

 $(A7) \leftarrow (A0)$

RRC A

Function: Rotate Accumulator Right through the Carry flag

Description: The eight bits in the Accumulator and the carry flag are together rotated one bit to the right.

Bit 0 moves into the carry flag; the original value of the carry flag moves into the bit 7

position. No other flags are affected.

Example: The Accumulator holds the value 0C5H (11000101B), and the carry is zero. The instruction,

RRC A

leaves the Accumulator holding the value 62H (01100010B) with the carry set.

Bytes: 1 Cycles: 1

Encoding: 0 0 0 1 0 0 1 1

Operation: RRC

 $(An+1) \leftarrow (An) \quad n = 0-6$

 $(A7) \leftarrow (C)$

 $(C) \leftarrow (A0)$

SETB <bit>

Function: Set bit

Description: SETB sets the indicated bit to one. SETB can operate on the carry flag or any directly

addressable bit. No other flags are affected

The carry flag is cleared. Output Port 1 has been written with the value 34H (00110100B). **Example:**

> The instructions. **SETB** C

> > P1.0

0 0

will leave the carry flag set to 1 and change the data output on Port 1 to 35H (00110101B).

SETB C

Bytes: 1 **Cycles:**

Encoding: 0 1 0 0 1

Operation: SETB

 $(C) \leftarrow 1$

SETB

SETB bit

Bytes: 2 **Cycles:**

Encoding: 0 1 1 **Operation: SETB**

(bit) $\leftarrow 1$

SJMP rel

Function: Short Jump

Description: Program control branches unconditionally to the address indicated. The branch destination is

bit address

computed by adding the signed displacement in the second instruction byte to the PC, after incrementing the PC twice. Therefore, the range of destinations allowed is from 128bytes

preceding this instruction to 127 bytes following it.

0

Example: The label "RELADR" is assigned to an instruction at program memory location 0123H. The

instruction.

SJMP RELADR

will assemble into location 0100H. After the instruction is executed, the PC will contain the

value 0123H.

(*Note*: Under the above conditions the instruction following SJMP will be at 102H. Therefore, the displacement byte of the instruction will be the relative offset (0123H - 0102H) = 21H. Put another way, an SJMP with a displacement of 0FEH would be an one-instruction infinite

loop).

Bytes: 2 **Cycles:** 2

Encoding: 1 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 rel. address

Operation: SJMP

> $(PC) \leftarrow (PC)+2$ $(PC) \leftarrow (PC) + rel$

SUBB A, <src-byte>

Function: Subtract with borrow

Description: SUBB subtracts the indicated variable and the carry flag together from the Accumulator,

leaving the result in the Accumulator. SUBB sets the carry (borrow)flag if a borrow is needed for bit 7, and clears C otherwise.(If C was set before executing a SUBB instruction, this indicates that a borrow was needed for the previous step in a multiple precision subtraction, so the carry is subtracted from the Accumulator along with the source operand). AC is set if a borrow is needed for bit 3, and cleared otherwise. OV is set if a borrow is needed into bit 6, but not into bit 7, or into bit 7, but not bit 6.

When subtracting signed integers OV indicates a negative number produced when a negative value is subtracted from a positive value, or a positive result when a positive number is subtracted from a negative number.

The source operand allows four addressing modes: register, direct, register-indirect, or immediate.

Example: The Accumulator holds 0C9H (11001001B), register 2 holds 54H (01010100B), and the

carry flag is set. The instruction,

SUBB A, R2

will leave the value 74H (01110100B) in the accumulator, with the carry flag and AC cleared but OV set.

Notice that 0C9H minus 54H is 75H. The difference between this and the above result is due to the carry (borrow) flag being set before the operation. If the state of the carry is not known before starting a single or multiple-precision subtraction, it should be explicitly cleared by a CLR C instruction.

SUBB A, Rn

Bytes:

Cycles:

Encoding: 1 0 0 1 1 r r r

Operation: SUBB

 $(A) \leftarrow (A) - (C) - (Rn)$

SUBB A, direct

Bytes: 2 Cycles: 1

Encoding: 1 0 0 1 0 1 0

direct address

Operation: SUBB

 $(A) \leftarrow (A) - (C) - (direct)$

SUBB A, @Ri

Bytes: 1 Cycles: 1

Encoding: 1 0 0 1 0 1 1 i

Operation: SUBB

 $(A) \leftarrow (A) - (C) - ((Ri))$

SUBB A, #data

Bytes: 2 Cycles: 1

Encoding: 1 0 0 1 0 1 0 0 immediate data

Operation: SUBB

 $(A) \leftarrow (A) - (C) - \#data$

SWAP A

Function: Swap nibbles within the Accumulator

Description: SWAP A interchanges the low- and high-order nibbles (four-bit fields) of the Accumulator

(bits 3-0 and bits 7-4). The operation can also be thought of as a four-bit rotate instruction.

No flags are affected.

Example: The Accumulator holds the value 0C5H (11000101B). The instruction,

SWAP A

leaves the Accumulator holding the value 5CH (01011100B).

Bytes: 1 Cycles: 1

Encoding: 1 1 0 0 0 1 0 0

Operation: SWAP

 $(A_{3-0}) \rightleftharpoons (A_{7-4})$

XCH A, <byte>

Function: Exchange Accumulator with byte variable

Description: XCH loads the Accumulator with the contents of the indicated variable, at the same time

writing the original Accumulator contents to the indicated variable. The source/destination

operand can use register, direct, or register-indirect addressing.

Example: R0 contains the address 20H. The Accumulator holds the value 3FH (00111111B). Internal

RAM location 20H holds the value 75H (01110101B). The instruction,

XCH A, @R0

will leave RAM location 20H holding the values 3FH (00111111B) and 75H (01110101B) in

the accumulator.

XCH A, Rn

Bytes: 1 Cycles: 1

Encoding: 1 1 0 0 1 r r r

Operation: XCH

 $(A) \longrightarrow (Rn)$

XCH A, direct

Bytes: 2 Cycles: 1

Encoding: 1 1 0 0 0 1 0 1 direct address

Operation: XCH

 $(A) \rightleftharpoons (direct)$

XCH A, @Ri

Bytes: Cvcles:

Encoding: 1 0 0 0 1 1

Operation:

 $(A) \rightleftharpoons ((Ri))$

XCHD A, @Ri

Function: Exchange Digit

Description: XCHD exchanges the low-order nibble of the Accumulator (bits 3-0), generally representing

> a hexadecimal or BCD digit, with that of the internal RAM location indirectly addressed by the specified register. The high-order nibbles (bits 7-4) of each register are not affected. No

flags are affected.

R0 contains the address 20H. The Accumulator holds the value 36H (00110110B). Internal **Example:**

RAM location 20H holds the value 75H (01110101B). The instruction,

XCHD A, @R0

will leave RAM location 20H holding the value 76H (01110110B) and 35H (00110101B) in

the accumulator.

Bytes: Cycles:

Encoding: 1 0 0 1 1 i

Operation:

 $(A_{3-0}) \rightleftharpoons (Ri_{3-0})$

XRL <dest-byte>, <src-byte>

Function: Logical Exclusive-OR for byte variables

Description: XRL performs the bitwise logical Exclusive-OR operation between the indicated variables,

storing the results in the destination. No flags are affected.

The two operands allow six addressing mode combinations. When the destination is the Accumulator, the source can use register, direct, register-indirect, or immediate addressing; when the destination is a direct address the source can be the Accumulator or immediate data.

(Note: When this instruction is used to modify an output port, the value used as the original port data will be read from the output data latch, not the input pins.)

Example: If the Accumulator holds 0C3H (11000011B) and register 0 holds 0AAH (10101010B) then

the instruction.

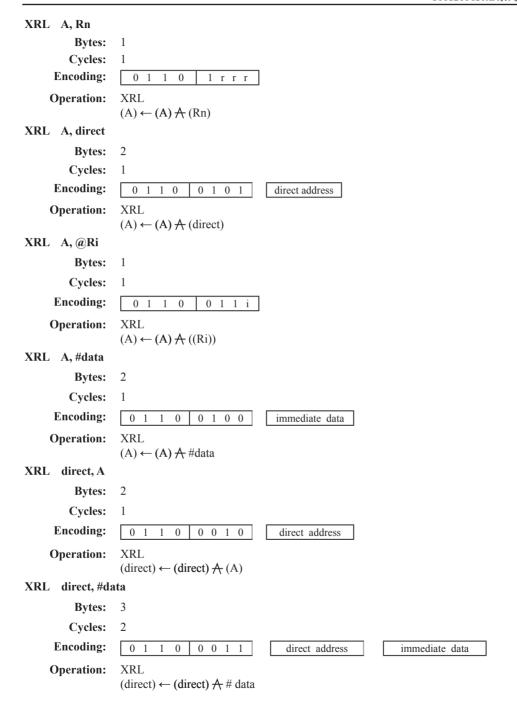
XRL A, R0

will leave the Accumulator holding the vatue 69H (01101001B).

When the destination is a directly addressed byte, this instruction can complement combinnation of bits in any RAM location or hardware register. The pattern of bits to be complemented is then determined by a mask byte, either a constant contained in the instruction or a variable computed in the Accumulator at run-time. The instruction,

XRL P1, #00110001B

will complement bits 5,4 and 0 of outpue Port 1.



第6章 中断系统

中断系统是为使CPU具有对外界紧急事件的处理能力而设置的。

当中央处理机CPU正在处理某件事的时候外界发生了紧急事件请求,要求CPU暂停当前的工作,转而去处理这个紧急事件,处理完以后,再回到原来被中断的地方,继续原来的工作,这样的过程称为中断。实现这种功能的部件称为中断系统,请示CPU中断的请求源称为中断源。微型机的中断系统一般允许多个中断源,当几个中断源同时向CPU请求中断,要求为它服务的时候,这就存在CPU优先响应哪一个中断源请求的问题。通常根据中断源的轻重缓急排队,优先处理最紧急事件的中断请求源,即规定每一个中断源有一个优先级别。CPU总是先响应优先级别最高的中断请求。

当CPU正在处理一个中断源请求的时候(执行相应的中断服务程序),发生了另外一个优先级比它还高的中断源请求。如果CPU能够暂停对原来中断源的服务程序,转而去处理优先级更高的中断请求源,处理完以后,再回到原低级中断服务程序,这样的过程称为中断嵌套。这样的中断系统称为多级中断系统,没有中断嵌套功能的中断系统称为单级中断系统。

STC12C5410AD系列单片机提供了9个中断请求源,它们分别是:外部中断0(INT0)、定时器0中断、外部中断1(INT1)、定时器1中断、串口(UART)中断、A/D转换中断和SPI中断、PCA模块中断和低压检测(LVD)中断。所有的中断都具有4个中断优先级。用户可以用关总中断允许位(EA/IE.7)或相应中断的允许位来屏蔽所有的中断请求,也可以用打开相应的中断允许位来使CPU响应相应的中断申请;每一个中断源可以用软件独立地控制为开中断或关中断状态;每一个中断的优先级别均可用软件设置。高优先级的中断请求可以打断低优先级的中断,反之,低优先级的中断请求不可以打断高优先级及同优先级的中断。当两个相同优先级的中断同时产生时,将由查询次序来决定系统先响应哪个中断。STC12C5410AD系列单片机的各个中断查询次序如下表6-1所示:

表6-1 中断查询次序

中断源	中断 向量 地址	相同优先级内 的查询次序	中断优先级 设置 (IPH,IP)	优先级0	优先 级1	优先 级2	优先级3	中断请求标志位	中断允许控制位
INT0 (外部中断 0)	0003H	0 (highest)	PX0H, PX0	0, 0	0, 1	1, 0	1, 1	IE0	EX0/EA
Timer 0	000BH	1	PT0H, PT0	0, 0	0, 1	1, 0	1, 1	TF0	ET0/EA
INT1 (外部中断1)	0013H	2	PX1H, PX1	0, 0	0, 1	1, 0	1, 1	IE1	EX1/EA
Timer1	001BH	3	PT1H, PT1	0, 0	0, 1	1, 0	1, 1	TF1	ET1/EA
UART	0023H	4	PSH, PS	0, 0	0, 1	1, 0	1, 1	RI+TI	
ADC/SPI	002BH	5	PADC_SPIH, PADC_SPI	0, 0	0, 1	1, 0	1, 1	ADC_FLAG+SPIF	(EADCI+ESPI) / EADC_SPI / EA
PCA/LVD	0033Н	6 (lowest)	PPCA_LVDH, PPCA_LVD	0, 0	0, 1	1, 0	1, 1	CF+CCF0+CCF1+ CCF2+CCF3+LVDF	(ECF+ECCF0+ECCF1+ ECCF2+ECCF3+ELVD) /EPCA_LVD/EA

通过设置新增加的特殊功能寄存器IPH中的相应位,可将中断优先级设为四级,如果只设置IP,那么中断优先级就只有两级,与传统8051单片机两级中断优先级完全兼容。

如果使用C语言编程,中断查询次序号就是中断号,例如:

void	Int0_Routine(void)	interrupt 0;
void	Timer0_Rountine(void)	interrupt 1;
void	Int1_Routine(void)	interrupt 2;
void	Timer1_Rountine(void)	interrupt 3;
void	UART_Routine(void)	interrupt 4;
void	ADC_SPI_Routine(void)	interrupt 5;
void	PCA LVD Routine(void)	interrupt 6;

6.1 中断结构

STC12C5410AD系列单片机的中断系统结构示意图如图6-1所示

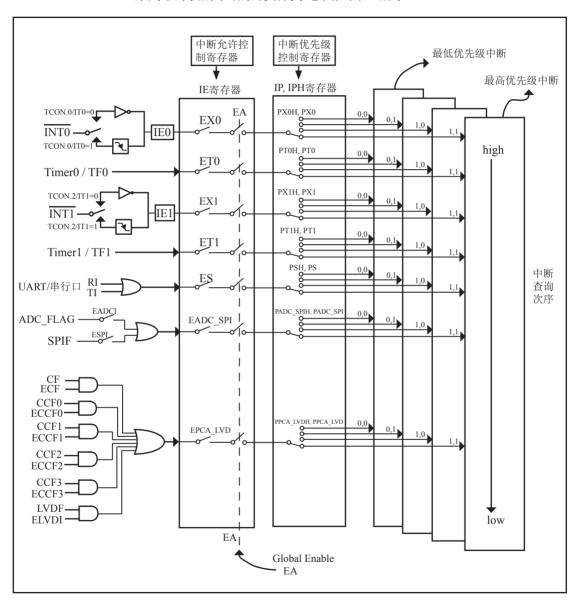


图6-1 STC12C5410AD系列中断系统结构图

外部中断0($\overline{\text{INT0}}$)和外部中断1($\overline{\text{INT1}}$)既可低电平触发,也可下降沿触发。请求两个外部中断的标志位是位于寄存器TCON中的IE0/TCON.1和IE1/TCON.3。当外部中断服务程序被响应后,中断请求标志位IE0和IE1会自动被清0。TCON寄存器中的IT0/TCON.0和IT1/TCON.2决定了外部中断0和1是低电平触发方式还是下降沿触发方式。如果ITx = 0(x = 0,1),那么系统在INTx(x = 0,1)脚探测到低电平后可产生外部中断。如果ITx = 1(x = 0,1),那么系统在INTx(x = 0,1)脚探测下降沿后可产生外部中断。外部中断0($\overline{\text{INT0}}$)和外部中断1($\overline{\text{INT1}}$)还可以用于将单片机从掉电模式唤醒。

定时器0和1的中断请求标志位是TF0和TF1。当定时器寄存器THx/TLx(x = 0,1)溢出时,溢出标志位TFx(x = 0,1)会被置位,定时器中断发生。当单片机转去执行该定时器中断时,定时器的溢出标志位TFx(x = 0,1)会被硬件清除。

当串行口接收中断请求标志位RI和串行口发送中断请求标志位TI中的任何一个被置为1后,串行口中断都会产生。

如果要允许A/D转换中断则需要将几个相应的控制位置1:

- 1、将EADCI置1,允许ADC中断,这是ADC中断的单独控制位。
- 2、将EADCI_SPI置1,允许ADC中断及SPI中断,这是ADC中断及SPI中断的总中断控制位,此位不打开,也是无法产生ADC中断的。
- 3、将EA置1,打开单片机总中断控制位,此位不打开,也是无法产生ADC中断的A/D中断服务程序中要用软件清A/D中断请求标志位ADC FLAG。

如果要允许SPI中断则需要将几个相应的控制位置1:

- 1、将ESPI置1,允许SPI中断,这是SPI中断的单独控制位。
- 2、将EADCI_SPI置1,允许ADC中断及SPI中断,这是ADC中断及SPI中断的总中断控制位,此位不打开,也是无法产生SPI中断的。
- 3、将EA置1,打开单片机总中断控制位,此位不打开,也是无法产生SPI 中断的 SPI中断服务程序中要用软件清SPI中断请求标志位SPIF。

如果要允许低压中断则需要将几个相应的控制位置1:

- 1、将ELVDI置1,允许低压检测中断,这是低压中断的单独控制位。
- 2、将EPCA_LVD置1,允许PCA模块中断及低压检测中断,这是PCA模块中断及低压检测中断的总中断控制位,此位不打开,也是无法产生低压检测中断的。
- 3、将EA置1,打开单片机总中断控制位,此位不打开,也是无法产生低压检测中断的低压检测中断服务程序中要用软件清低压中断请求标志位LVDF。

5V单片机, 3.7V(±0.1)以下为低压, 3V单片机, 2.4V(±0.1)以下为低压, 如ELVDI=1(允许低压中断),则会产生低压中断

如果要允许PCA中断则需要将几个相应的控制位置1:

- 1、将ECF/ECCF0/ECCF1/ECCF2/ECCF3中断允许位需要置1的位置1,允许PCA模块中相应的模块产生中断,这些是PCA模块中相应模块的单独控制位。
- 2、将EPCA_LVD置1,允许PCA模块中断及低压检测中断,这是PCA模块中断及低压检测中断的总中断控制位,此位不打开,也是无法产生PCA中断的。
- 3、将EA置1,打开单片机总中断控制位,此位不打开,也是无法产生PCA中断的PCA中断服务程序中要用软件清相应的PCA中断请求标志位CF/CCF0/CCF1/CCF2/CCF3。

各个中断触发行为总结如下表6-2所示:

表6-2 中断触发

中断源	触发行为
INT0 (外部中断0)	(IT0/TCON.0 = 1): 下降沿 (IT0/TCON.0 = 0): 低电平
Timer 0	定时器0溢出
INT1 (外部中断1)	(IT1/TCON.2 = 1): 下降沿 (IT1/TCON.2 = 0): 低电平
Timer1	定时器1溢出
UART	发送或接受完成
ADC	A/D转换完成
LVD	电源电压下降到低于LVD检测电压
SPI	SPIF=1

6.2 中断寄存器

符号	描述	地址	MS	SB		位地址	上及符号	寻		LSB	复位值
IE	Interrupt Enable	A8H	EA	EPCA_	LVD EA	ADC_SPI	ES I	ET1 E	X1 ET	EX0	0000 0000B
IP	Interrupt Priority Low	В8Н	-	PPCA_I	VD PA	ADC_SP	I PS	PT1 P	X1 PT	O PX0	x000 0000B
IPH	Interrupt Priority High	В7Н	- I	PPCA_LV	TDH PA	DC_SPIH	PSHP	Т1Н РУ	х1Н РТО	Н РХ0Н	x000 0000B
TCON	Timer Control	88H	TF	1 TR1	TF0	TR0	IE1	IT1	IE0	IT0	0000 0000B
SCON	Serial Control	98H	SM0/	FE SM	I SM2	2 REN	TB8	RB8	TI	RI	0000 0000B
AUXR	Auxiliary register	8EH	T0x1	2 T1x12	UART	_M0x6 I	EADCI	ESPI E	LVDI	- -	0000 00xxB
PCON	Power Control	87H	SMO	D SMO	D0 LVI	OF POF	GF1	GFO	PD	IDL	0011 0000B
ADC_CONTR	ADC Control	С5Н	ADC_I	POWER SP	EED1 SPE	ED0 ADC_F	LAG ADO	_START	CHS2 CH	IS1 CHS0	0000 0000B
CCON	PCA Control Register	D8H	CF	CR	-	-	CCF3	CCF2	CCF1	CCF0	00xx 0000B
CMOD	PCA Mode Register	D9H	CID	L -	-	-	CPS2	CPS1	CPS0	ECF	00xx 0000B
CCAPM0	PCA Module 0 Mode Register	DAH	-	ECOM0	CAPP0	CAPN0	MAT0	TOG0	PWM0	ECCF0	x000 0000B
CCAPM1	PCA Module 1 Mode Register	DBH	-	ECOM1	CAPP1	CAPN1	MAT1	TOG1	PWM1	ECCF1	x000 0000B
CCAPM2	PCA Module 2 Mode Register	DCH	-	ECOM2	CAPP2	CAPN2	MAT2	TOG2	PWM2	ECCF2	x000 0000B
ССАРМ3	PCA Module 3 Mode Register	DDH	-	ECOM3	CAPP3	CAPN3	MAT3	TOG3	PWM3	ECCF3	x000 0000B
SPSTAT	SPI Status register	84H	SPI	F WCO	L -	-	-	-	-	-	

上表中列出了与STC12C5410AD系列单片机中断相关的所有寄存器,下面逐一地对部分寄存器进行介绍。

1. 中断允许寄存器IE、AUXR和WAKE CLKO

STC12C5410AD系列单片机CPU对中断源的开放或屏蔽,每一个中断源是否被允许中断,是由内部的中断允许寄存器IE(IE为特殊功能寄存器,它的字节地址为A8H)控制的,其格式如下:

IE: 中断允许寄存器(可位寻址)

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	B4	В3	B2	В1	В0
IE	A8H	name	EA	EPCA_LVD	EADC_SPI	ES	ET1	EX1	ET0	EX0

EA: CPU的总中断允许控制位,EA=1, CPU开放中断,EA=0, CPU屏蔽所有的中断申请。 EA的作用是使中断允许形成两级控制。即各中断源首先受EA控制;其次还受各中断源自己的中断允许控制位控制。

EPCA_LVD: PCA模块中断和低压检测中断允许位。这是PCA模块中断及低压检测LVD中断的总中断控制位,此位不打开,也是无法产生PCA中断和LVD中断的。

EPCA_LVD=1,允许PCA模块中断低压检测中断; EPCA_LVD=0,禁止PCA模块中断低压检测中断。

EADC_SPI: A/D转换中断和SPI中断允许位,这是ADC中断及SPI中断的总中断控制位,此位不打开,也是无法产生ADC中断和SPI中断的。

EADC_SPI=1, 允许A/D转换中断和SPI中断; EADC_SPI=0, 禁止A/D转换中断和SPI中断。

ES : 串行口1中断允许位。ES=1,允许串行口中断; ES=0,禁止串行口中断。

ET1: 定时/计数器T1的溢出中断允许位。ET1=1,允许T1中断;ET1=0,禁止T1中断。

EX1:外部中断1中断允许位。EX1=1,允许外部中断1中断;EX1=0,禁止外部中断1中断。

ET0: T0的溢出中断允许位。ET0=1,允许T0中断;ET0=0禁止T0中断。

EX0:外部中断0中断允许位。EX0=1,允许中断;EX0=0禁止中断。

AUXR:辅助寄存器(不可位寻址)

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	B4	В3	B2	B1	В0
AUXR	8EH	name	T0x12	T1x12	UART_M0x6	EADCI	ESPI	ELVDI	-	-

EADCI: A/D转换中断单独允许位。

EADCI=1,允许A/D转换中断; EADCI=0,禁止A/D转换中断。

ESPI: SPI中断单独允许位。

ESPI=1, 允许SPI中断; ESPI=0, 禁止SPI中断。

ELVDI: 低压检测LVD中断单独允许位。

ESPI=1,允许低压检测LVD中断; ESPI=0,禁止低压检测LVD中断。

WAKE CLKO: Clock output and Power-down Wakeup Control register (不可位寻址)

SFR Name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	B4	В3	B2	B1	В0
WAKE_CLKO	8FH	name	PCAWAKEUP	RXD_PIN_IE	T1_PIN_IE	T0_PIN_IE	-	-	T1CLKO	T0CLKO

- B7 PCAWAKEUP: 在掉电模式下,是否允许PCA上升沿/下降沿中断唤醒powerdown。
 - 0: 禁止PCA上升沿/下降沿中断唤醒powerdown;
 - 1: 允许PCA上升沿/下降沿中断唤醒powerdown。
- B6-RXD PIN IE: 掉电模式下,允许P3.0(RXD)下降沿置RI,也能使RXD唤醒powerdown.
 - 0:禁止P3.0(RXD)下降沿置RI,也禁止RXD唤醒powerdown;
 - 1: 允许P3.0(RXD)下降沿置RI, 也允许RXD唤醒powerdown。
- B5-T1_PIN_IE: 掉电模式下,允许T1/P3.5脚下降沿置T1中断标志,也能使T1脚唤醒powerdown.
 - 0: 禁止T1/P3.5脚下降沿置T1中断标志,也禁止T1脚唤醒powerdown;
 - 1: 允许T1/P3.5脚下降沿置T1中断标志,也允许T1脚唤醒powerdown。
- B4-T0 PIN IE: 掉电模式下,允许T0/P3.4脚下降沿置T0中断标志,也能使T0脚唤醒powerdown.
 - 0:禁止T0/P3.4脚下降沿置T0中断标志,也禁止T0脚唤醒powerdown;
 - 1: 允许T0/P3.4脚下降沿置T0中断标志,也允许T0脚唤醒powerdown。

T1CLKO和T0CLKO与定时器有关,在此不作介绍

STC12C5410AD系列单片机复位以后,IE、AUXR和WAKE_CLKO被清0,由用户程序置"1"或清"0"IE、AUXR和WAKE_CLKO相应的位,实现允许或禁止各中断源的中断申请,若使某一个中断源允许中断必须同时使CPU开放中断。更新IE的内容可由位操作指令来实现(SETB BIT; CLR BIT),也可用字节操作指令实现(即MOV IE,#DATA,ANL IE,#DATA;ORL IE,#DATA;MOV IE,A等)。更新AUXR和WAKE_CLKO(不可位寻址)的内容可用MOV AUXR,#DATA与MOV WAKE CLKO #DATA指令来解决。

2. 中断优先级控制寄存器IP和IPH

传统8051单片机具有两个中断优先级,即高优先级和低优先级,可以实现两级中断嵌套。 STC12C5410AD系列单片机通过设置新增加的特殊功能寄存器(IPH)中的相应位,可将中断优先级设置为4个中断优先级;如果只设置IP,那么中断优先级只有两级,与传统8051单片机两级中断优先级完全兼容。

- 一个正在执行的低优先级中断能被高优先级中断所中断,但不能被另一个低优先级中断所中断,一直执行到结束,遇到返回指令RETI,返回主程序后再执行一条指令才能响应新的中断申请。以上所述可归纳为下面两条基本规则:
 - 1. 低优先级中断可被高优先级中断所中断,反之不能。
 - 2. 任何一种中断(不管是高级还是低级),一旦得到响应,不会再被它的同级中断所中断 STC12C5410AD系列单片机的片内各优先级控制寄存器的格式如下:

IPH: 中断优先级控制寄存器高(不可位寻址)

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	В4	В3	B2	В1	В0
IPH	В7Н	name	-	PPCA_LVDH	PADC_SPIH	PSH	PT1H	PX1H	РТ0Н	PX0H

IP: 中断优先级控制寄存器低(可位寻址)

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	B5	B4	В3	B2	B1	В0
IP	B8H	name	-	PPCA_LVD	PADC_SPI	PS	PT1	PX1	PT0	PX0

PPCA LVDH, PPCA LVD: PCA中断和低压检测LVD中断优先级控制位。

当PPCA_LVDH = 0且PPCA_LVD = 0时, PCA中断和低压检测LVD中断为最低优先级中断(优先级0)当PPCA_LVDH = 0且PPCA_LVD = 1时, PCA中断和低压检测LVD中断为较低优先级中断(优先级1)当PPCA_LVDH = 1且PPCA_LVD = 0时, PCA中断和低压检测LVD中断为较高优先级中断(优先级2)当PPCA_LVDH = 1且PPCA_LVD = 1时, PCA中断和低压检测LVD中断为最高优先级中断(优先级3)

PADC SPIH, PADC SPI: A/D转换中断和SPI中断优先级控制位。

当PADC_SPIH,=0且PADC_SPI=0时,A/D转换中断和SPI中断为最低优先级中断(优先级0)当PADC_SPIH=0且PADC_SPI=1时,A/D转换中断和SPI中断为较低优先级中断(优先级1)当PADC_SPIH=1且PADC_SPI=0时,A/D转换中断和SPI中断为较高优先级中断(优先级2)当PADC_SPIH=1且PADC_SPI=1时,A/D转换中断和SPI中断为最高优先级中断(优先级3)

PSH. PS: 串口1中断优先级控制位。

当PSH=0且PS=0时, 串口1中断为最低优先级中断(优先级0)

当PSH=0目PS=1时, 串口1中断为较低优先级中断(优先级1)

当PSH=1月PS=0时, 串口1中断为较高优先级中断(优先级2)

当PSH=1目PS=1时, 串口1中断为最高优先级中断(优先级3)

PT1H, PT1: 定时器1中断优先级控制位。

当PT1H=0目PT1=0时, 定时器1中断为最低优先级中断(优先级0)

当PT1H=0月PT1=1时, 定时器1中断为较低优先级中断(优先级1)

当PT1H=1目PT1=0时, 定时器1中断为较高优先级中断(优先级2)

当PT1H=1目PT1=1时, 定时器1中断为最高优先级中断(优先级3)

PX1H, PX1:外部中断1优先级控制位。

当PX1H=0目PX1=0时,外部中断1为最低优先级中断(优先级0)

当PX1H=0目PX1=1时,外部中断1为较低优先级中断(优先级1)

当PX1H=1目PX1=0时,外部中断1为较高优先级中断(优先级2)

当PX1H=1且PX1=1时,外部中断1为最高优先级中断(优先级3)

PTOH, PTO: 定时器0中断优先级控制位。

当PT0H=0目PT0=0时, 定时器0中断为最低优先级中断(优先级0)

当PT0H=0月PT0=1时, 定时器0中断为较低优先级中断(优先级1)

当PT0H=1目PT0=0时, 定时器0中断为较高优先级中断(优先级2)

当PT0H=1且PT0=1时, 定时器0中断为最高优先级中断(优先级3)

PX0H. PX0:外部中断0优先级控制位。

当PX0H=0且PX0=0时,外部中断0为最低优先级中断(优先级0)

当PX0H=0目PX0=1时,外部中断0为较低优先级中断(优先级1)

当PX0H=1 月PX0=0时,外部中断0为较高优先级中断(优先级2)

当PX0H=1目PX0=1时,外部中断0为最高优先级中断(优先级3)

中断优先级控制寄存器IP和IPH的各位都由可用户程序置"1"和清"0"。但IP寄存器可位操作,所以可用位操作指令或字节操作指令更新IP的内容。而IPH寄存器的内容只能用字节操作指令来更新。STC12C5410AD系列单片机复位后IP和IPH均为00H,各个中断源均为低优先级中断。

3. 定时器/计数器控制寄存器TCON

TCON为定时器/计数器T0、T1的控制寄存器,同时也锁存T0、T1溢出中断源和外部请求中断源等,TCON格式如下:

TCON: 定时器/计数器中断控制寄存器(可位寻址)

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	В4	В3	В2	В1	В0
TCON	88H	name	TF1	TR1	TF0	TR0	IE1	IT1	IE0	IT0

TF1: T1溢出中断标志。T1被允许计数以后,从初值开始加1计数。当产生溢出时由硬件置 "1" TF1,向CPU请求中断,一直保持到CPU响应中断时,才由硬件清 "0" (也可由 查询软件清 "0")。

TR1: 定时器1的运行控制位。

TF0: T0溢出中断标志。T0被允许计数以后,从初值开始加1计数,当产生溢出时,由硬件置 "1"TF0,向CPU请求中断,一直保持CPU响应该中断时,才由硬件清0(也可由查询 软件清0)。

TR0: 定时器0的运行控制位。

IE1:外部中断1请求源(INT1/P3.3)标志。IE1=1,外部中断向CPU请求中断,当CPU响应该中断时由硬件清"0"IE1。

IT1:外部中断1中断源类型选择位。IT1=0, INT1/P3.3引脚上的低电平信号可触发外部中断 1。IT1=1,外部中断1为下降沿触发方式。

IE0: 外部中断0请求源(INTO/P3.2)标志。IE0=1外部中断0向CPU请求中断,当CPU响应外部中断时,由硬件清"0"IE0(边沿触发方式)。

IT0:外部中断0中断源类型选择位。IT0=0, INT0/P3.2引脚上的低电平可触发外部中断0。IT0=1, 外部中断0为下降沿触发方式。

4. 串行口控制寄存器SCON

SCON为串行口控制寄存器,SCON格式如下:

SCON: 串行口控制寄存器(可位寻址)

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	В4	В3	B2	В1	В0
SCON	98H	name	SM0/FE	SM1	SM2	REN	TB8	RB8	TI	RI

RI: 串行口1接收中断标志。若串行口1允许接收且以方式0工作,则每当接收到第8位数据时置1;若以方式1、2、3工作且SM2=0时,则每当接收到停止位的中间时置1;当串行口以方式2或方式3工作且SM2=1时,则仅当接收到的第9位数据RB8为1后,同时还要接收到停止位的中间时置1。RI为1表示串行口1正向CPU申请中断(接收中断),RI必须由用户的中断服务程序清零。

TI: 串行口1发送中断标志。串行口1以方式0发送时,每当发送完8位数据,由硬件置1;若以方式1、方式2或方式3发送时,在发送停止位的开始时置1。TI=1表示串行口1正在向CPU申请中断(发送中断)。值得注意的是,CPU响应发送中断请求,转向执行中断服务程序时并不将TI清零,TI必须由用户在中断服务程序中清零。

SCON寄存器的其他位与中断无关,在此不作介绍。

5. 低压检测中断相关寄存器: 电源控制寄存器PCON

PCON为电源控制寄存器, PCON格式如下:

PCON: 电源控制寄存器

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	B4	В3	В2	B1	В0
PCON	87H	name	SMOD	SMOD0	LVDF	POF	GF1	GF0	PD	IDL

LVDF: 低压检测标志位, 同时也是低压检测中断请求标志位。

如果内部工作电压Vcc低于低压检测门槛电压,该位自动置1,与低压检测中断是否被允许无关。即在内部工作电压Vcc低于低压检测门槛电压时,不管有没有允许低压检测中断,该位都自动为1。该位要用软件清0,清0后,如内部工作电压Vcc继续低于低压检测门槛电压,该位又被自动设置为1。

电源控制寄存器PCON中的其他位与低压检测中断无关,在此不作介绍。

在中断允许寄存器IE中,低压检测中断相应的允许位是EPCA LVD/IE.6

IE: 中断允许寄存器(可位寻址)

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	B5	B4	В3	B2	B1	В0
IE	A8H	name	EA	EPCA_LVD	EADC_SPI	ES	ET1	EX1	ET0	EX0

EA: 中断允许总控制位。

EA=0, 屏蔽了所有的中断请求;

EA=1, 开放总中断, 但每个中断源还有自己的独立允许控制位。

EA的作用是使中断允许形成两级控制。即各中断源首先受EA控制;其次还受各中断源自己的中断允许控制位控制。

EPCA LVD: PCA模块中断和低压检测中断允许位。

EPCA_LVD=0,禁止PCA模块和低压检测中断;

EPCA LVD=1,允许PCA模块和低压检测中断。

6. A/D转换控制寄存器ADC CONTR

ADC CONTR为A/D转换控制寄存器,ADC CONTR格式如下:

ADC CONTR: A/D转换控制寄存器

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	B4	В3	B2	В1	В0
ADC_CONTR	C5H	name	ADC_POWER	SPEED1	SPEED0	ADC_FLAG	ADC_START	CHS2	CHS1	CHS0

ADC_POWER: ADC电源控制位。当ADC_POWER=0时,关闭ADC电源; 当ADC_PWOER=1时,打开ADC电源。

ADC_FLAG: ADC转换结束标志位,可用于请求A/D转换的中断。当A/D转换完成后,

ADC_FLAG=1,要用软件清0。不管是A/D转换完成后由该位申请产生中断,还是由软件查询该标志位A/D转换是否结束,当A/D转换完成后,

ADC FLAG=1,一定要软件清0。

ADC START: ADC转换启动控制位,设置为"1"时,开始转换,转换结束后为0。

A/D转换控制寄存器ADC CONTR中的其他位与中断无关,在此不作介绍。

在中断允许寄存器IE中, A/D转换器的中断允许位是EADC SPI/IE.5

IE: 中断允许寄存器(可位寻址)

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	B5	В4	В3	В2	B1	В0
IE	A8H	name	EA	EPCA_LVD	EADC_SPI	ES	ET1	EX1	ET0	EX0

EA: 中断允许总控制位。

EA=0, 屏蔽了所有的中断请求:

EA=1, 开放总中断, 但每个中断源还有自己的独立允许控制位。

EA的作用是使中断允许形成两级控制。即各中断源首先受EA控制;其次还受各中断源自己的中断允许控制位控制。

EADC SPI: A/D转换中断和SPI中断允许位。

EADC_SPI=0, 禁止A/D转换中断和SPI中断;

EADC SPI=1, 允许A/D转换中断和SPI中断。

6.3 中断优先级

STC12C5410AD系列单片机的所有的中断都具有4个中断优先级,对于这些中断请求源可编程为高优先级中断或低优先级中断,可实现两级中断服务程序嵌套。一个正在执行的低优先级中断能被高优先级中断所中断,但不能被另一个低优先级中断所中断,一直执行到结束,遇到返回指令RETI,返回主程序后再执行一条指令才能响应新的中断申请。以上所述可归纳为下面两条基本规则:

- 1. 低优先级中断可被高优先级中断所中断,反之不能。
- 2. 任何一种中断(不管是高级还是低级),一旦得到响应,不会再被它的同级中断所中断。

当同时收到几个同一优先级的中断要求时,哪一个要求得到服务,取决于内部的查询次序。这相当于在每个优先级内,还同时存在另一个辅助优先级结构,STC12C5410AD系列单片机各中断优先查询次序如下:



如果使用C语言编程,中断查询次序号就是中断号,例如:

void	Int0_Routine(void)	interrupt 0;
void	Timer0_Rountine(void)	interrupt 1;
void	Int1_Routine(void)	interrupt 2;
void	Timer1_Rountine(void)	interrupt 3;
void	UART_Rountine(void)	interrupt 4;
void	ADC_SPI_Routine(void)	interrupt 5;
void	PCA_LVD_Routine(void)	interrupt 6;

6.4 中断处理

当某中断产生而且被CPU响应,主程序被中断,接下来将执行如下操作:

- 1. 当前正被执行的指令全部执行完毕;
- 2. PC值被压入栈;
- 3. 现场保护:
- 4. 阻止同级别其他中断:
- 5. 将中断向量地址装载到程序计数器PC;
- 6. 执行相应的中断服务程序。

中断服务程序ISR完成和该中断相应的一些操作。ISR以RETI(中断返回)指令结束,将PC值从栈中取回,并恢复原来的中断设置,之后从主程序的断点处继续执行。

当某中断被响应时,被装载到程序计数器PC中的数值称为中断向量,是同该中断源相对应的中断服务程序的起始地址。各中断源服务程序的入口地址(即中断向量)为:

中断源	中断向量
External Interrupt 0	0003H
Timer 0	000BH
External Interrupt 1	0013H
Timer 1	001BH
UART	0023H
ADC/SPI	002BH
PCA/LVD	0033H

当"转去执行中断"时,引起中断的标志位将被硬件自动清零。由于中断向量入口地址位于程序存储器的开始部分,所以主程序的第1条指令通常为跳转指令,越过中断向量区(LJMP MAIN)。

注意:不能用RET指令代替RETI指令

RET指令虽然也能控制PC返回到原来中断的地方,但RET指令没有清零中断优先级状态触发器的功能,中断控制系统会认为中断仍在进行,其后果是与此同级或低级的中断请求将不被响应。

若用户在中断服务程序中进行了入栈操作,则在RETI指令执行前应进行相应的出栈操作,即在中断服务程序中PUSH指令与POP指令必须成对使用,否则不能正确返回断点。

6.5 外部中断

外部中断0(INT0)和外部中断1(INT1)触发有两种触发方式,下降沿触发方式和低电平触发方式。

TCON寄存器中的IT0/TCON.0和IT1/TCON.2决定了外部中断0和1是下降沿触发还是低电平触发。如果IT $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}(\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}, \mathbf{1})$,那么系统在INT $\mathbf{x}(\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}, \mathbf{1})$ 脚探测到下降沿后可产生外部中断。如果IT $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{1}(\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}, \mathbf{1})$,那么系统在INT $\mathbf{x}(\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}, \mathbf{1})$ 脚探测低电平后才可产生外部中断。外部中断 0(INT0)和外部中断1(INT1)还可以用于将单片机从掉电模式唤醒。

由于系统每个时钟对外部中断引脚采样1次,所以为了确保被检测到,输入信号应该至少维持2个系统时钟。如果外部中断是仅下降沿触发,要求必须在相应的引脚维持高电平至少1个系统时钟,而且低电平也要持续至少一个系统时钟,才能确保该下降沿被CPU检测到。同样,如果外部中断是低电平可触发,则要求必须在相应的引脚维持低电平至少2个系统时钟,这样才能确保CPU能够检测到该低电平信号。

6.6 中断测试程序

6.6.1 外部中断0(INT0)的测试程序

1. 程序1——演示外部中断0的下降沿中断

C程序:

```
/*_____*/
/* --- STC MCU Limited -----*/
/* --- 演示STC 1T 系列单片机外部中断0(下降沿) -----*/
/* 如果要在程序中使用或在文章中引用该程序, -----*/
/* 请在程序中或文章中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 -----*/
/*____*/
#include "reg51.h"
//External interrupt0 service routine
void exint0() interrupt 0
                              //INT0, interrupt 0 (location at 0003H)
void main()
      IT0 = 1;
                              //set INT0 interrupt type (1:Falling 0:Low level)
      EX0 = 1;
                              //enable INT0 interrupt
      EA = 1;
                              //open global interrupt switch
      while (1);
```

汇编程序:

/*			*/
			*/
/* 演	示STC 17	Γ系列单片机外部中	断0(下降沿)*/
/* 如果	要在程序	中使用或在文章中	引用该程序,*/
/* 请在	程序中或	文章中注明使用了5	STC的资料及程序*/
/*			*/
		1.1	
;ınterrup	ot vector t	able	
	ORG	0000Н	
	LJMP	MAIN	
	201111	1111111	
	ORG	0003H	;INT0, interrupt 0 (location at 0003H)
	LJMP	EXINT0	
;			
	ORG	0100H	
MAIN:	ORG	0100H	
MIAIIN.	MOV	SP,#7FH	;initial SP
	SETB	IT0	;set INT0 interrupt type (1:Falling 0:Low level)
	SETB	EX0	;enable INT0 interrupt
	SETB	EA	;open global interrupt switch
	SJMP	\$,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
;			
;Externa	ıl interrup	t0 service routine	
EXINT(
	RETI		
•			
,			
	END		

2. 程序2——演示外部中断0的下降沿中断唤醒掉电模式

C程序:

```
/*_____*/
/* --- STC MCU Limited -----*/
/* --- 演示STC 1T 系列单片机外部中断0(下降沿)唤醒掉电模式 -----*/
/* 如果要在程序中使用或在文章中引用该程序, -----*/
/* 请在程序中或文章中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 -----*/
#include "reg51.h"
#include "intrins.h"
//External interrupt0 service routine
void exint0( )
              interrupt 0
                                    //INT0, interrupt 0 (location at 0003H)
void main()
       IT0 = 1;
                                    //set INT0 interrupt type (1:Falling 0:Low level)
       EX0 = 1;
                                    //enable INT0 interrupt
       EA = 1;
                                    //open global interrupt switch
       while (1)
              INT0 = 1;
                                    //ready read INT0 port
              while (!INT0);
                                    //check INT0
              nop ();
              nop ();
              PCON = 0x02;
                                    //MCU power down
              _nop_();
              nop ();
              P1++;
}
```

汇编程序:

/ *				*/
/* S7	гс мси	Limited		*/
				0(下降沿)唤醒掉电模式*/
				1 该程序,
				的资料及程序*/
				*/
/				
;				
;interrup	ot vector to	able		
	ORG	0000Н		
	LJMP	MAIN		
	ORG	0003H		;INT0, interrupt 0 (location at 0003H)
	LJMP	EXINT0)	
:				
,	0.00	040077		
	ORG	0100H		
MAIN:	1.6017	CD	UGDI.	100
	MOV	SP,	#7FH	;initial SP
	SETB	ITO		;set INT0 interrupt type (1:Falling 0:Low level)
	SETB	EX0		;enable INT0 interrupt
1.00P	SETB	EA		;open global interrupt switch
LOOP:	CEED	D ITTO		1.00
	SETB	INT0	P	;ready read INT0 port
	JNB	INT0,	\$;check INT0
	NOP			
	NOP			
	MOV	PCON,	#02H	;MCU power down
	NOP			
	NOP			
	CPL	P1.0		
	SJMP	LOOP		
;				
;Externa	ıl interrup	t0 service i	routine	
EXINT():			
	RETI			
,				
	END			

6.6.2 外部中断1(INT1)的测试程序

1. 程序1——演示外部中断1的下降沿中断

C程序:

```
/*_____*/
/* --- STC MCU Limited -----*/
/* --- 演示STC 1T 系列单片机外部中断1(下降沿) -----*/
/* 如果要在程序中使用或在文章中引用该程序, -----*/
/* 请在程序中或文章中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 -----*/
#include "reg51.h"
//External interrupt1 service routine
void exint1() interrupt 2
                          //INT1, interrupt 2 (location at 0013H)
}
void main()
      IT1 = 1;
                          //set INT1 interrupt type (1:Falling only 0:Low level)
      EX1 = 1;
                          //enable INT1 interrupt
                          //open global interrupt switch
      EA = 1;
      while (1);
```

汇编程序:

/ *				*/
/* ST	C MCU	Limited		*/
/* 演	示STC 1	T 系列单片	计机外部中断	1(下降沿)*/
]该程序,*/
				的资料及程序*/
				*/
;				
;interrup	ot vector t	able		
	ORG	0000Н		
	LJMP	MAIN		
	ORG	0013H		;INT1, interrupt 2 (location at 0013H)
	LJMP	EXINT1		, , ,
;				
	ORG	0100H		
MAIN:				
	MOV	SP,	#7FH	;initial SP
	SETB	IT1		;set INT1 interrupt type (1:Falling 0:Low level)
	SETB	EX1		;enable INT1 interrupt
	SETB	EA		open global interrupt switch
	SJMP	\$		
*		t1 service		
EXINT:	1:			
	RETI			
·,				
	END			

2. 程序2——演示外部中断1的下降沿中断唤醒掉电模式

C程序:

```
/*_____*/
/* --- STC MCU Limited -----*/
/* --- 演示STC 1T 系列单片机外部中断1(下降沿)唤醒掉电模式 -----*/
/* 如果要在程序中使用或在文章中引用该程序, -----*/
/* 请在程序中或文章中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 -----*/
/*_____*/
#include "reg51.h"
#include "intrins.h"
//External interrupt0 service routine
void exint1() interrupt 2
                                 //INT1, interrupt 2 (location at 0013H)
void main()
      IT1 = 1;
                                 //set INT1 interrupt type (1:Falling 0:Low level)
      EX1 = 1;
                                 //enable INT1 interrupt
      EA = 1;
                                 //open global interrupt switch
      while (1)
             INT1 = 1;
                                 //ready read INT1 port
             while (!INT1);
                                 //check INT1
             _nop_();
             nop ();
                                 //MCU power down
             PCON = 0x02;
             _nop_();
             _nop_();
             P1++;
```

汇编程序:

/*			*/
/* ST	C MCU I	imited	*/
	部中断1(下降沿)唤醒掉电模式*/		
	中引用该程序,*/		
			了STC的资料及程序*/
			·*/
,			,
*			
;interrup	ot vector to	able	
	ORG	0000H	
	LJMP	MAIN	
		0013H	;INT1, interrupt 2 (location at 0013H)
	LJMP	EXINT1	
;			
	ORG	0100H	
MAIN:	1.6017	OD HADIT	1.11.1.00
	MOV	,	;initial SP
	SETB		;set INT1 interrupt type (1:Falling 0:Low level)
	SETB		;enable INT1 interrupt
	SETB	EA	open global interrupt switch
LOOP:			
	SETB	INT1	;ready read INT1 port
	JNB	INT1,\$;check INT1
	NOP		
	NOP		
	MOV	PCON,#02H	;MCU power down
	NOP		
	NOP		
	CPL	P1.0	
	SJMP	LOOP	
:			
,		t1 service routine	
	-		
EXINT:			
	RETI		
;			
	END		

6.6.3 定时器0中断(下降沿中断,可用于唤醒掉电模式)的测试程序

1. C程序:

```
/*_____*/
/* --- STC MCU Limited -----*/
/* --- 演示STC 1T 系列单片机定时器0中断(下降沿),可将单片机从掉电模式唤醒 --*/
/* 如果要在程序中使用或在文章中引用该程序, -----*/
/* 请在程序中或文章中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 -----*/
#include "reg51.h"
#include "intrins.h"
sfr WAKE CLKO = 0x8f;
//External interrupt0 service routine
void t0int() interrupt 1
                                 //T0 interrupt, interrupt 1 (location at 000BH)
}
void main()
       WAKE CLKO = 0x10;
                                 //enable T0 falling edge wakeup MCU from power-down mode
       ET0 = 1:
                                 //enable T0 interrupt
                                 //open global interrupt switch
      EA = 1;
       while (1)
                                 //ready read T0 port
             T0 = 1;
             while (!T0);
                                 //check T0
             nop ();
             nop ();
             PCON = 0x02;
                                 //MCU power down
             nop ();
             _nop_();
             P1++;
```

2. 汇编程序:

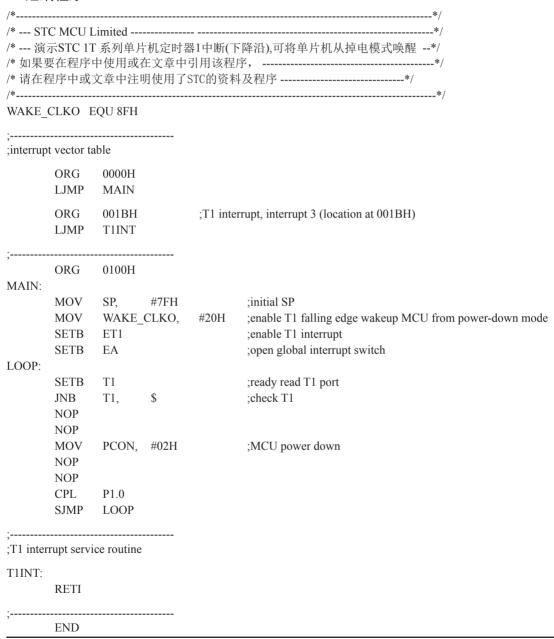
/*					*/
/* ST	C MCU	Limited			*/
					降沿),可将单片机从掉电模式唤醒*/
					序,*/
					4 及程序*/
					*/
WAKE_	CLKO	EQU 8FH			
;					
;interrup	t vector	table			
	ORG	0000H			
	LJMP	MAIN			
	ORG	000BH			;T0 interrupt, interrupt 1 (location at 000BH)
	LJMP	T0INT			
;					
	ORG	0100H			
MAIN:					
	MOV	SP,#7FI			;initial SP
	MOV	WAKE	_CLKO,	#10H	;enable T0 falling edge wakeup MCU from power-down mode
	SETB	ET0			;enable T0 interrupt
	SETB	EA			open global interrupt switch
LOOP:					
	SETB	T0			;ready read T0 port
	JNB	T0	,\$;check T0
	NOP				
	NOP				
	MOV	PCON,	#02H		;MCU power down
	NOP				
	NOP				
	CPL	P1.0			
	SJMP	LOOP			
,		ice routine			
	rupt ser v	ice routine			
T0INT:	RETI				
;	END				

6.6.4 定时器1中断(下降沿中断,可用于唤醒掉电模式)的测试程序

1. C程序:

```
/*_____*/
/* --- STC MCU Limited -----*/
/* --- 演示STC 1T 系列单片机定时器1中断(下降沿),可将单片机从掉电模式唤醒 --*/
/* 如果要在程序中使用或在文章中引用该程序, -----*/
/* 请在程序中或文章中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 -----*/
#include "reg51.h"
#include "intrins.h"
sfr
      WAKE CLKO = 0x8f;
//External interrupt0 service routine
void t1int() interrupt 3
                                 //T1 interrupt, interrupt 3 (location at 001BH)
{
void main()
      WAKE CLKO = 0x20;
                                 //enable T1 falling edge wakeup MCU from power-down mode
      ET1 = 1;
                                 //enable T1 interrupt
      EA = 1;
                                 //open global interrupt switch
      while (1)
             T1 = 1;
                                 //ready read T1 port
             while (!T1);
                                 //check T1
             _nop_();
             nop ();
             PCON = 0x02;
                                 //MCU power down
             _nop_();
             _nop_();
             P1++;
```

2. 汇编程序:



6.6.5 RxD中断(RxD/P3.0下降沿中断,可用于唤醒掉电模式)的测试程序

1. C程序:

```
/*_____*/
/* --- STC MCU Limited -----*/
/* --- 演示STC 1T 系列单片机串行口RxD中断(下降沿),可将单片机从掉电模式唤醒 --*/
/* 如果要在程序中使用或在文章中引用该程序, -----*/
/* 请在程序中或文章中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 -----*/
#include "reg51.h"
#include "intrins.h"
typedef unsigned char BYTE;
typedef unsigned int WORD;
/*Declare SFR associated with the PCA */
sfr WAKE CLKO = 0x8F;
void uart isr() interrupt 4 using 1
      if (RI)
            RI = 0;
void main()
      WAKE CLKO = 0x40;
                         //enable RXD falling edge wakeup MCU from power-down mode
      ES = 1:
      EA = 1;
      while (1)
                               //ready read RXD port
            RXD = 1;
            while (!RXD);
                               //check RXD
            nop ();
             nop ();
            PCON = 0x02;
                                //MCU power down
            nop ();
             nop ();
            P2++;
```

2. 汇编程序:

```
*/
/* --- STC MCU Limited -----*/
/* --- 演示STC 1T 系列单片机串行口RxD中断(下降沿),可将单片机从掉电模式唤醒 --*/
/* 如果要在程序中使用或在文章中引用该程序, -----*/
/* 请在程序中或文章中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 -----*/
:/*Declare SFR associated with the PCA */
WAKE CLKO
           EOU
                 8FH
     ORG
           0000H
     LJMP
           MAIN
     ORG
           0023H
UART ISR:
     JBC
           RI,
                 EXIT
                                  ;clear RI flag
EXIT:
     RETI
     ORG
           0100H
MAIN:
     MOV
           WAKE CLKO,
                                  ;enable RXD falling edge wakeup MCU
                       #40H
                                  ;from power-down mode
     SETB
           ES
     SETB
           EA
LOOP:
     SETB
           RXD
                                  ;ready read RXD port
     JNB
                                  ;check RXD
           RXD,
     NOP
     NOP
     MOV
           PCON, #02H
                                  ;MCU power down
     NOP
     NOP
     CPL
           P1.0
     SJMP
           LOOP
     END
```

6.6.7 PCA模块中断(可用于唤醒掉电模式)的测试程序

1. C程序:

```
/*_____*/
/* --- STC MCU Limited -----*/
/* --- 演示STC 1T 系列单片机PCA模块中断,可将单片机从掉电模式唤醒 ------*/
/* 如果要在程序中使用或在文章中引用该程序, -----*/
/* 请在程序中或文章中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 -----*/
/*______*/
#include "reg51.h"
#include "intrins.h"
typedef unsigned char BYTE;
typedef unsigned int WORD;
/*Declare SFR associated with the PCA */
       EPCAI
sbit
                     = IE^6;
sfr
       WAKE CLKO
                     = 0x8F;
sfr
       CCON = 0xD8;
                                          //PCA control register
                                          //PCA module-0 interrupt flag
       CCF0
              = CCON^0:
sbit
       CCF1
              = CCON^1:
                                          //PCA module-1 interrupt flag
sbit
       CR
              = CCON^6;
                                          //PCA timer run control bit
sbit
sbit
       CF
              = CCON^7;
                                          //PCA timer overflow flag
                                          //PCA mode register
sfr
       CMOD = 0xD9:
       CL
              = 0xE9:
                                          //PCA base timer LOW
sfr
sfr
       CH
              = 0xF9;
                                          //PCA base timer HIGH
                                          //PCA module-0 mode register
sfr
       CCAPM0= 0xDA:
sfr
       CCAP0L = 0xEA;
                                          //PCA module-0 capture register LOW
       CCAP0H = 0xFA;
                                          //PCA module-0 capture register HIGH
sfr
sfr
       CCAPM1= 0xDB:
                                          //PCA module-1 mode register
sfr
       CCAP1L = 0xEB;
                                          //PCA module-1 capture register LOW
                                          //PCA module-1 capture register HIGH
sfr
       CCAP1H = 0xFB;
                                          //PCA module-2 mode register
sfr
       CCAPM2 = 0xDC;
                                          //PCA module-2 capture register LOW
sfr
       CCAP2L = 0xEC;
       CCAP2H = 0xFC;
                                          //PCA module-2 capture register HIGH
sfr
                                          //PCA module-3 mode register
sfr
       CCAPM3 = 0xDD:
       CCAP3L = 0xED;
                                          //PCA module-3 capture register LOW
sfr
sfr
       CCAP3H = 0xFD;
                                          //PCA module-3 capture register HIGH
sfr
       PCAPWM0 = 0xF2:
sfr
       PCAPWM1 = 0xF3;
       PCAPWM2 = 0xF4;
sfr
sfr
       PCAPWM3 = 0xF5;
```

```
sbit
         PCA LED = P1^0;
                                              //PCA test LED
         CCP0
sbit
                  = P3^7:
void PCA isr() interrupt 7 using 1
         CCF0 = 0;
                                              //Clear interrupt flag
         PCA LED = !PCA LED;
                                              //toggle the test pin while CCP0(P3.7) have a falling edge
void main()
         CCON = 0;
                                    //Initial PCA control register
                                    //PCA timer stop running
                                    //Clear CF flag
                                    //Clear all module interrupt flag
                                     //Reset PCA base timer
         CL = 0:
         CH = 0:
                                    //Set PCA timer clock source as Fosc/12
         CMOD = 0x00;
                                    //Disable PCA timer overflow interrupt
                                    //PCA module-0 capture by a negative tigger on CCP0(P3.7)
         CCAPM0 = 0x11;
                                    //and enable PCA interrupt
//
         CCAPM0 = 0x21;
                                    //PCA module-0 capture by a rising edge on CCP0(P3.7)
                                    //and enable PCA interrupt
//
         CCAPM0 = 0x31;
                                    //PCA module-0 capture by a transition (falling/rising edge)
                                    //on CCP0(P3.7) and enable PCA interrupt
         WAKE CLKO = 0x80;
                                     //enable PCA falling/raising edge wakeup MCU from power-down mode
         CR = 1:
                                     //PCA timer start run
         EPCAI = 1;
         EA = 1;
         while (1)
                  CCP0 = 1;
                                              //ready read CCP0 port
                                              //check CCP0
                  while (!CCP0);
                  nop ();
                  nop ();
                  PCON = 0x02;
                                              //MCU power down
                  nop ();
                  nop ();
                  P2++;
```

2. 汇编程序:

```
/*______*/
/* --- STC MCU Limited -----*/
/* --- 演示STC 1T 系列单片机PCA模块中断,可将单片机从掉电模式唤醒 ------*/
/* 如果要在程序中使用或在文章中引用该程序, ------*/
/* 请在程序中或文章中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 -----*/
:/*Declare SFR associated with the PCA */
EPCAI
              BIT
                     IE 6
WAKE CLKO
              EOU
                     8FH
      EOU
             0D8H
CCON
                                   ;PCA control register
CCF0
       BIT
              CCON.0
                                   ;PCA module-0 interrupt flag
CCF1
       BIT
              CCON.1
                                   ;PCA module-1 interrupt flag
CR
       BIT
             CCON 6
                                   ;PCA timer run control bit
CF
                                   ;PCA timer overflow flag
       BIT
              CCON.7
CMOD EQU
              0D9H
                                   ;PCA mode register
CL
       EOU
              0E9H
                                   :PCA base timer LOW
CH
       EQU
              0F9H
                                   :PCA base timer HIGH
CCAPM0
              EQU
                     0DAH
                                   ;PCA module-0 mode register
CCAP0L
              EQU
                     0EAH
                                   ;PCA module-0 capture register LOW
CCAP0H
              EQU
                     0FAH
                                   ;PCA module-0 capture register HIGH
CCAPM1
              EQU
                     0DBH
                                   ;PCA module-1 mode register
CCAP1L
              EOU
                     0EBH
                                   ;PCA module-1 capture register LOW
CCAP1H
              EQU
                     0FBH
                                   ;PCA module-1 capture register HIGH
                                   ;PCA module-2 mode register
CCAPM2
              EOU
                     0DCH
CCAP2L
              EQU
                     0ECH
                                   ;PCA module-2 capture register LOW
                     0FCH
                                   ;PCA module-2 capture register HIGH
CCAP2H
              EQU
CCAPM3
              EQU
                     0DDH
                                   ;PCA module-3 mode register
                                   ;PCA module-3 capture register LOW
CCAP3L
              EQU
                     0EDH
CCAP3H
                                   ;PCA module-3 capture register HIGH
              EQU
                     0FDH
PCA LED
              BIT
                     P1.1
                                   ;PCA test LED
CCP0
              BIT
                     P3.7
```

				31U12U341UAD系列平月机相片
;	ORG LJMP	0000H MAIN		
_ ~	ORG	0033H		
PCA_IS		CCEO		
	CLR	CCF0		;Clear interrupt flag
	CPL RETI	PCA_LED		;toggle the test pin while CCP0(P3.7) have a falling edge
·				
,	ORG	0100H		
MAIN:				
	MOV	CCON, #0		;Initial PCA control register
				;PCA timer stop running
				;Clear CF flag
				;Clear all module interrupt flag
	CLR	A		;
	MOV	CL, A		;Reset PCA base timer
	MOV	CH, A		;
	MOV	CMOD, #00H		;Set PCA timer clock source as Fosc/12
		~~		;Disable PCA timer overflow interrupt
	MOV	CCAPM0,	#11H	;PCA module-0 capture by a falling edge on CCP0(P3.7)
	MOV	CCADMO	//2111	;and enable PCA interrupt
,	MOV	CCAPM0,	#21H	;PCA module-0 capture by a rising edge on CCP0(P3.7)
	MOV	CCAPM0,	#31H	;and enable PCA interrupt ;PCA module-0 capture by a transition (falling/rising edge)
,	WO V	CCAI WIO,	#3111	;on CCP0(P3.7) and enable PCA interrupt
·,	MOV	WAKE_CLKO,	#80H	;enable PCA falling/raising edge wakeup MCU from
	IVIO V	WARE_CLRO,	#6011	;power-down mode
	SETB	CR		;PCA timer start run
	SETB	EPCAI		,. 0.12 (1.11)
	SETB	EA		
I OOD.				
LOOP:	SETB	CCP0		;ready read CCP0 port
	JNB	CCP0, \$;check CCP0
	NOP	CCI 0, \$, check CCI 0
	NOP			
	MOV	PCON, #02H		;MCU power down
	NOP			, p p
	NOP			
	CPL	P1.0		
	SJMP	LOOP		
;	END			
	END			

第7章 定时器/计数器

STC12C5410AD系列单片机有6个定时器,其中定时器0和定时器1两个16位定时器,与传统8051的定时器完全兼容,也可以设置为1T模式,当在定时器1做波特率发生器时,定时器0可以当两个8位定时器用(另外4路PCA/PWM可以再实现4个16位定时器)。

STC12C5410AD系列单片机内部设置的两个16位定时器/计数器T0和T1都具有计数方式和定时方式两种工作方式。对每个定时器/计数器(T0和T1),在特殊功能寄存器TMOD中都有一控制位一来选择T0或T1为定时器还是计数器。定时器/计数器的核心部件是一个加法(也有减法)的计数器,其本质是对脉冲进行计数。只是计数脉冲来源不同:如果计数脉冲来自系统时钟,则为定时方式,此时定时器/计数器每12个时钟或者每1个时钟得到一个计数脉冲,计数值加1;如果计数脉冲来自单片机外部引脚(T0为P3.4,T1为P3.5),则为计数方式,每来一个脉冲加1

当定时器/计数器工作在定时模式时,特殊功能寄存器AUXR中的T0x12和T1x12分别决定是系统时钟/12还是系统时钟/1(不分频)后让T0和T1进行计数。当定时器/计数器工作在计数模式时,对外部脉冲计数不分频。

定时器/计数器0有4种工作模式:模式0(13位定时器/计数器),模式1(16位定时器/计数器模式),模式2(8位自动重装模式),模式3(两个8位定时器/计数器)。定时器/计数器1除模式3外,其他工作模式与定时器/计数器0相同,T1在模式3时无效,停止计数。

7.1 定时器/计数器的相关寄存器

符号	描述	地址	MSI	位地址及其符号 MSB LSB						复位值	
TCON	定时器控制寄存器	88H	TF1	TR1	TF0	TR0	IE1	IT1	IE0	IT0	0000 0000B
TMOD	定时器模式寄存器	89H	GATE	C/T	M1	M0	GATE	C/T	M1	M0	0000 0000B
TL0	Timer Low 0	8AH									
TL1	Timer Low 1	8BH									
TH0	Timer High 0	8CH									0000 0000B
TH1	Timer High 1	8DH									0000 0000B
AUXR	辅助寄存器	8EH	T0x12	T1x12	UART_N	10x6 EA	ADCI ES	SPI EL	VDI .	- -	0000 00xxB
WAKE_CLKO	时钟输出和掉电唤 醒寄存器	8FH	PCAWAKI	EUPRXD	_PIN_IE	Γ1_PIN_II	E T0_PIN_	Е - -	TICLKO	T0CLKO	0000 xx00B

1. 定时器/计数器控制寄存器TCON

TCON为定时器/计数器T0、T1的控制寄存器,同时也锁存T0、T1溢出中断源和外部请求中断源等,TCON格式如下:

TCON: 定时器/计数器中断控制寄存器(可位寻址)

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	В4	В3	B2	B1	В0
TCON	88H	name	TF1	TR1	TF0	TR0	IE1	IT1	IE0	IT0

- TF1: 定时器/计数器T1溢出标志。T1被允许计数以后,从初值开始加1计数。当最高位产生溢出时由硬件置"1"TF1,向CPU请求中断,一直保持到CPU响应中断时,才由硬件清"0"TF1(TF1也可由程序查询清"0")。
- TR1: 定时器T1的运行控制位。该位由软件置位和清零。当GATE(TMOD.7)=0, TR1=1时就允许T1开始计数,TR1=0时禁止T1计数。当GATE(TMOD.7)=1,TR1=1且INT1输入高电平时,才允许T1计数。
- TF0: 定时器/计数器T0溢出中断标志。T0被允许计数以后,从初值开始加1计数,当最高位产生溢出时,由硬件置"1"TF0,向CPU请求中断,一直保持CPU响应该中断时,才由硬件清"0"TF0(TF0也可由程序查询清"0")。
- TR0: 定时器T0的运行控制位。该位由软件置位和清零。当GATE(TMOD.3)=0, TR0=1时就允许T0开始计数,TR0=0时禁止T0计数。当GATE(TMOD.3)=1,TR1=0且INT0输入高电平时,才允许T0计数。
- IE1:外部中断1请求源(INT1/P3.3)标志。IE1=1,外部中断向CPU请求中断,当CPU响应该中断时由硬件清"0"IE1。
- IT1: 外部中断1触发方式控制位。IT1=0时,外部中断1为低电平触发方式,当<u>INT1</u> (P3.3)输入低电平时,置位IE1。采用低电平触发方式时,外部中断源(输入到INT1)必须保持低电平有效,直到该中断被CPU响应,同时在该中断服务程序执行完之前,外部中断源必须被清除(P3.3要变高),否则将产生另一次中断。当IT1=1时,则外部中断1(INT1)端口由"1"→"0"下降沿跳变,激活中断请求标志位IE1,向主机请求中断处理。
- IE0:外部中断0请求源(INTO/P3.2)标志。IE0=1外部中断0向CPU请求中断,当CPU响应外部中断时,由硬件清"0"IE0(边沿触发方式)。
- ITO: 外部中断0触发方式控制位。ITO=0时,外部中断0为低电平触发方式,当INTO (P3.2)输入低电平时,置位IEO。采用低电平触发方式时,外部中断源(输入到INTO)必须保持低电平有效,直到该中断被CPU响应,同时在该中断服务程序执行完之前,外部中断源必须被清除(P3.2要变高),否则将产生另一次中断。当ITO=1时,则外部中断0(INTO)端口由"1"→"0"下降沿跳变,激活中断请求标志位IE1,向主机请求中断处理。

2. 定时器/计数器工作模式寄存器TMOD

定时和计数功能由特殊功能寄存器TMOD的控制位C/T进行选择,TMOD寄存器的各位信息如下表所列。可以看出,2个定时/计数器有4种操作模式,通过TMOD的M1和M0选择。2个定时/计数器的模式0、1和2都相同,模式3不同,各模式下的功能如下所述。

寄存器TMOD各位的功能描述

TMOD 地址	: 89	Н							复位值: 00H
不可位寻址	_	_	_					•	
	7 	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	٦
\ \ \	ATE	C/T	M1	M0	GATE	C/T	M1	M0	
_		定印	才 器1			定时	· 十器0		,
位	符号		功能	Ě					
TMOD.7/	GATI	Ε			訓定时器 干定时器			INT1 期	为高及TR1控制位置1
TMOD.3/	GATI	Ε			刮定时器 干定时器			INT0 期	为高及TRO控制位置1
TMOD.6/	C/T								,清零则用作定时器 (从T1/P3.5脚输入)
TMOD.2/	C/T								,清零则用作定时器 (从T0/P3.4脚输入)
TMOD.5/TMOD.4	M1、	M0	定即	寸器定时	寸器/计数	数器1模5	式选择		
	0	0		. –	器/计数器 整个8位:		8048定	时模式,	TL1只用低5位参与
	0	1	161	立定时智	器/计数器	器,TL1、	TH1全	用	
	1	0	8位	自动重	装载定时	甘器, 当溢	盆出时将	TH1存放	文的值自动重装入TL1.
	1	1	定即	寸器/计	数器1此	时无效	(停止)	十数)。	
TMOD.1/TMOD.0	M1,	M0	定即	寸器/计	数器0模	式选择			
	0	0		. –	器/计数器 整个8位:		8048定	时模式,	TL0只用低5位参与
	0	1	161	立定时智	器/计数器	器,TLO、	THO全	用	
	1	0	8位	自动重	装载定时	器,当	溢出时料	各THO存	放的值自动重装入TLO
	1	1	器/	计数器		示准定时	器0的扩	空制位控	TLO作为一个8位定时 控制。THO仅作为一个

3. 辅助寄存器AUXR

STC12C5410AD系列单片机是 1T 的8051单片机,为兼容传统8051,定时器0和定时器1复位后是传统8051的速度,即12分频,这是为了兼容传统8051。但也可不进行12分频,通过设置新增加的特殊功能寄存器AUXR,将T0,T1设置为1T。普通111条机器指令是固定的,快3到24倍,无法改变。

AUXR格式如下:

AUXR: 辅助寄存器

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	B5	B4	В3	B2	B1	В0
AUXR	8EH	name	T0x12	T1x12	UART_M0x6	EADCI	ESPI	ELVDI	-	-

STC12C5410AD系列是 1T 的8051单片机,为了兼容传统8051,定时器0和定时器1复位后是传统8051的速度,即12分频,这是为了兼容传统8051。但也可不进行12分频,实现真正的1T。

T0x12: 定时器0速度控制位。

- 0: 定时器0速度是8051单片机定时器的速度,即12分频;
- 1: 定时器0速度是8051单片机定时器速度的12倍,即不分频。

T1x12: 定时器1速度控制位。

- 0: 定时器1速度是8051单片机定时器的速度,即12分频;
- 1: 定时器1速度是8051单片机定时器速度的12倍,即不分频。

如果UART串口用T1作为波特率发生器,则由T1x12位决定UART串口是12T还是1T。

STC12C5410AD系列是1T的8051单片机,为了兼容传统8051,UART串口复位后是兼容传统8051的。 UART M0x6: 串口模式0的通信速度设置位。

- 0: UART串口模式0的速度是传统8051单片机串口的速度,即12分频;
- 1: UART串口模式0的速度是传统8051单片机串口速度的6倍,即2分频。

如果用定时器T1做波特率发生器时,UART串口的速度由T1的溢出率决定

AUXR寄存器的其他位是与中断有关的, 在此不作介绍。

4. WAKE CLKO: 时钟输出和掉电唤醒寄存器

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	В4	В3	В2	B1	В0
WAKE_CLKO	8FH	name	PCAWAKEUP	RXD_PIN_IE	T1_PIN_IE	T0_PIN_IE	-	-	T1CLKO	T0CLKO

PCAWAKEUP: 在掉电模式下,是否允许PCA上升沿/下降沿中断唤醒powerdown。

- 0: 禁止PCA上升沿/下降沿中断唤醒powerdown:
- 1: 允许PCA上升沿/下降沿中断唤醒powerdown。

RXD_PIN_IE: 掉电模式下,允许P3.0(RXD)下降沿置RI,也能使RXD唤醒powerdown.

- 0: 禁止P3.0(RXD)下降沿置RI, 也禁止RXD唤醒powerdown;
- 1: 允许P3.0(RXD)下降沿置RI, 也允许RXD唤醒powerdown。

T1 PIN IE: 掉电模式下,允许T1/P3.5脚下降沿置T1中断标志,也能使T1脚唤醒powerdown.

- 0: 禁止T1/P3.5脚下降沿置T1中断标志,也禁止T1脚唤醒powerdown;
- 1: 允许T1/P3.5脚下降沿置T1中断标志,也允许T1脚唤醒powerdown。

TO PIN IE: 掉电模式下,允许T0/P3.4脚下降沿置T0中断标志,也能使T0脚唤醒powerdown.

- 0: 禁止T0/P3.4脚下降沿置T0中断标志,也禁止T0脚唤醒powerdown;
- 1: 允许T0/P3.4脚下降沿置T0中断标志,也允许T0脚唤醒powerdown。

T1CLKO: 是否允许将P3.5/T1脚配置为定时器T1的时钟输出CLKOUT1

1: 允许将P3.5/T1脚配置为定时器T1的时钟输出CLKOUT1,此时定时器T1只能工作 在模式2(8位自动重装模式),CLKOUT1输出时钟频率= T1溢出率/2

T1工作在1T模式时的输出频率 = SYSclk / (256 - TH1)/2

T1工作在12T模式时的输出频率 = SYSclk / 12 / (256 - TH1) / 2

- 0: 不允许将P3.5/T1脚配置为定时器T1的时钟输出CLKOUT1
- TOCLKO: 是否允许将P3.4/T0脚配置为定时器T0的时钟输出CLKOUT0
 - 1: 允许将P3.4/T0脚配置为定时器T0的时钟输出CLKOUT0,此时定时器T0只能工作在模式2(8位自动重装模式), CLKOUT0输出时钟频率 = T0溢出率 / 2

T0工作在1T 模式时的输出频率 = SYSclk / (256 - TH0)/2

T0工作在12T模式时的输出频率 = SYSclk / 12 / (256 - TH0) / 2

0: 不允许将P3.4/T0脚配置为定时器T0的时钟输出CLKOUT0

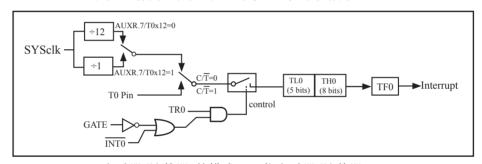
7.2 定时器/计数器0工作模式

通过对寄存器TMOD中的M1(TMOD.1)、M0(TMOD.0)的设置,定时器/计数器0有4种不同的工作模式

7.2.1 模式0(13位定时器/计数器)

将定时器设置成模式0时类似8048定时器,即8位计数器带32分频的预分频器。下图所示为定时器/计数器的模式0工作方式。此模式下,定时器0配置为13位的计数器,由TL0的低5位和TH0的8位所构成。TL0低5位溢出向TH0进位,TH0计数溢出置位TCON中的溢出标志位TF0。GATE (TMOD. 3)=0 时,如TR0=1,则定时器计数。GATE=1 时,允许由外部输入INT1控制定时器1,INT0控制定时器0,这样可实现脉宽测量。TR0为TCON寄存器内的控制位,TCON寄存器各位的具体功能描述见TCON寄存器各位的具体功能描述表。

在模式0下定时器/计数器0作为13位定时器/计数器,如下图所示。



定时器/计数器0的模式 0:13位定时器/计数器

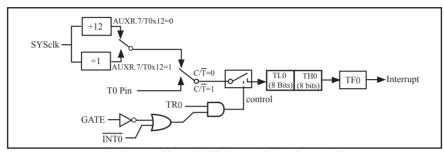
当C/T=0时,多路开关连接到系统时钟的分频输出,T0对时钟周期计数,T0工作在定时方式。当C/T=1时,多路开关连接到外部脉冲输入P3.4/T0,即T0工作在计数方式。

STC12C5410AD系列单片机的定时器有两种计数速率:一种是12T模式,每12个时钟加1,与传统8051单片机相同;另外一种是1T模式,每个时钟加1,速度是传统8051单片机的12倍。T0的速率由特殊功能寄存器AUXR中的T0x12决定,如果T0x12=0,T0则工作在12T模式;如果T0x12=1,T0则工作在1T模式。

该模式下的13位寄存器包含THO全部8个位及TLO的低5位。TLO的高3位不定,可将其忽略。 置位运行标志(TRO)不能清零此寄存器。模式0的操作对于定时器0及定时器1都是相同的。2 个不同的GATE位(TMOD. 7和TMOD. 3)分别分配给定时器1及定时器0。

7.2.2 模式1(16位定时器/计数器)

模式1除了使用了TH0及TL0全部16位外,其他与模式0完全相同。即此模式下定时器/**计数**器0作为16位定时器/计数器,如下图所示。



定时器/计数器0的模式1:16位定时器/计数器

此模式下,定时器配置为16位定时器/计数器,由TL0的8位和TH0的8位所构成。TL0的8位 溢出向TH0进位,TH0计数溢出置位TCON中的溢出标志位TF0。

当GATE=0 (TMOD.3)时,如TR0=1,则定时器计数。GATE=1时,允许由外部输入INT0控制定时器0,这样可实现脉宽测量。TR0为TCON寄存器内的控制位,TCON寄存器各位的具体功能描述见上节TCON寄存器的介绍。

当 C/\overline{T} =0时,多路开关连接到系统时钟的分频输出,T0对时钟周期计数,T0工作在定时方式。当 C/\overline{T} =1时,多路开关连接到外部脉冲输入P3.4/T0,即T0工作在计数方式。

STC12C5410AD系列单片机的定时器有两种计数速率:一种是12T模式,每12个时钟加1,与传统8051单片机相同;另外一种是1T模式,每个时钟加1,速度是传统8051单片机的12倍。T0的速率由特殊功能寄存器AUXR中的T0x12决定,如果T0x12=0,T0则工作在12T模式;如果T0x12=1,T0则工作在1T模式。

定时器0工作在16位定时器/计数器模式的测试程序

1. C程序:

```
/*_____*/
/* --- STC MCU Limited -----*/
/* --- 演示STC 1T 系列单片机定时器0的16位定时器/计数器模式 --*/
/* 如果要在程序中使用或在文章中引用该程序, -----*/
/* 请在程序中或文章中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 -----*/
/*_____*/
#include "reg51.h"
typedef unsigned char BYTE;
typedef unsigned int WORD;
//-----
/* define constants */
#define FOSC
            18432000L
#define MODE 1T
                        //Timer clock mode, comment this line is 12T mode, uncomment is 1T mode
#ifdef MODE 1T
#define T1MS (65536-FOSC/1000)
                                        //1ms timer calculation method in 1T mode
#else
#define T1MS (65536-FOSC/12/1000)
                                        //1ms timer calculation method in 12T mode
#endif
/* define SFR */
                                        //Auxiliary register
sfr
      AUXR
                    0x8e;
      TEST LED =
                    P0^0;
                                        //work LED. flash once per second
sbit
/* define variables */
WORD count:
                                        //1000 times counter
//-----
/* Timer0 interrupt routine */
void tm0 isr() interrupt 1 using 1
      TL0 = T1MS:
                                        //reload timer0 low byte
      TH0 = T1MS >> 8;
                                        //reload timer0 high byte
                                        //1ms * 1000 -> 1s
      if (count -- == 0)
      {
             count = 1000;
                                        //reset counter
             TEST LED = ! TEST LED;
                                        //work LED flash
//-----
```

```
/* main program */
void main()
#ifdef
         MODE 1T
                                               //timer0 work in 1T mode
         AUXR
                  = 0x80;
#endif
         TMOD = 0x01;
                                               //set timer0 as mode1 (16-bit)
         TL0
                  = T1MS:
                                               //initial timer0 low byte
         TH0
                  = T1MS >> 8;
                                               //initial timer0 high byte
                                               //timer0 start running
         TR0
                  = 1:
                                               //enable timer0 interrupt
         ET0
                  = 1:
                                               //open global interrupt switch
         EA
                  = 1:
                                               //initial counter
                  = 0:
         count
         while (1);
                                               //loop
```

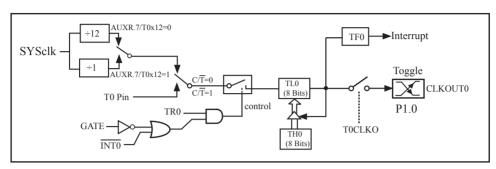
2. 汇编程序:

```
/*_____*/
/* --- STC MCU Limited -----*/
/* --- 演示STC 1T 系列单片机定时器0的16位定时器/计数器模式 ---*/
/* 如果要在程序中使用或在文章中引用该程序, -----*/
/* 请在程序中或文章中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 -----*/
;/* define constants */
#define MODE1T
                         ;Timer clock mode, comment this line is 12T mode, uncomment is 1T mode
#ifdef
      MODE1T
T1MS
      EQU
             0B800H
                           ;1ms timer calculation method in 1T mode is (65536-18432000/1000)
#else
T1MS
      EQU
             0FA00H
                           ;1ms timer calculation method in 12T mode is (65536-18432000/12/1000)
#endif
:/* define SFR */
                                  ;Auxiliary register
AUXR
             DATA
                    8EH
             BIT
                    P1.0
                                  ;work LED, flash once per second
TEST LED
:/* define variables */
COUNT
             DATA
                                  ;1000 times counter (2 bytes)
                    20H
```

```
ORG
                0000H
        LJMP
                MAIN
        ORG
                000BH
        LJMP
                TM0 ISR
;/* main program */
MAIN:
#ifdef
        MODE 1T
                                                 ;timer0 work in 1T mode
        MOV
                AUXR, #80H
#endif
        MOV
                TMOD, #01H
                                                 ;set timer0 as mode1 (16-bit)
        MOV
                TL0,
                        #LOW
                                T1MS
                                                 ;initial timer0 low byte
                                                 ;initial timer0 high byte
        MOV
                TH0.
                        #HIGH T1MS
        SETB
                TR0
                                                 ;timer0 start running
        SETB
                ET0
                                                 ;enable timer0 interrupt
                                                 open global interrupt switch
        SETB
                EA
        CLR
                Α
        MOV
                COUNT, A
        MOV
                COUNT+1, A
                                                 :initial counter
        SJMP
                $
;/* Timer0 interrupt routine */
TM0 ISR:
        PUSH
                ACC
        PUSH
                PSW
        MOV
                TL0,
                                                 ;reload timer0 low byte
                        #LOW T1MS
        MOV
                TH0.
                        #HIGH T1MS
                                                 ;reload timer0 high byte
        MOV
                        COUNT
                A,
        ORL
                        COUNT+1
                                                 ;check whether count(2byte) is equal to 0
                A,
        JNZ
                SKIP
        MOV
                COUNT, #LOW 1000
                                                 :1ms * 1000 -> 1s
                COUNT+1, #HIGH 1000
        MOV
        CPL
                TEST LED
                                                 ;work LED flash
SKIP:
        CLR
                C
        MOV
                        COUNT
                A,
                                                 :count--
        SUBB
                        #1
                A,
        MOV
                COUNT, A
        MOV
                A,
                        COUNT+1
        SUBB
                        #0
                A,
        MOV
                COUNT+1, A
        POP
                PSW
        POP
                ACC
        RETI
        END
```

7.2.3 模式2(8位自动重装模式)

此模式下定时器/计数器0作为可自动重装载的8位计数器,如下图所示。



定时器/计数器0的模式 2: 8位自动重装

TL0的溢出不仅置位TF0,而且将TH0内容重新装入TL0,TH0内容由软件预置,重装时TH0内容不变。

在此模式下,当T0CLKO/WAKE_CLKO.0=1时,P1.0/ADC0管脚配置为定时器0的时钟输出CLKOUT0。输出时钟频率=T0溢出率/2

如果C/T=0, 定时器/计数器T0对内部系统时钟计数,则:

T0工作在1T模式(AUXR.7/T0x12=1)时的输出时钟频率=(SYSclk)/(256-TH0)/2

T0工作在12T模式(AUXR.7/T0x12=0)时的输出时钟频率=(SYSclk)/12/(256-TH0)/2

如果 $C/\overline{T}=1$, 定时器/计数器T0是对外部脉冲输入(P1.0/ADC0)计数,则:

输出时钟频率 = (T0 Pin CLK) / (256-TH0) / 2

;定时器0中断(下降沿中断)的测试程序,定时器0工作在8位自动重装模式;下面程序中的定时器中断不能将单片机从掉电模式唤醒

1. C程序:

```
/*_____*/
/* --- STC MCU Limited -----*/
/* --- STC 1T Series MCU T0(Falling edge) Demo -----*/
/* If you want to use the program or the program referenced in the */
/* article, please specify in which data and procedures from STC */
/*_____*/
#include "reg51.h"
sfr
       AUXR = 0x8e;
                                       //Auxiliary register
//T0 interrupt service routine
void t0int() interrupt 1
                                       //T0 interrupt (location at 000BH)
}
void main()
       AUXR = 0x80;
                                       //timer0 work in 1T mode
       TMOD = 0x06;
                                       //set timer0 as counter mode2 (8-bit auto-reload)
       TL0 = TH0 = 0xff;
                                       //fill with 0xff to count one time
       TR0 = 1:
                                       //timer0 start run
       ET0 = 1:
                                       //enable T0 interrupt
       EA = 1;
                                       //open global interrupt switch
        while (1);
```

2. 汇编程序:

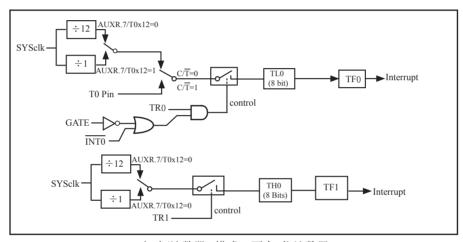
	DATA	08EH		;Auxiliary register
	t vector ta	 able		
	ORG	0000Н		
	LJMP	MAIN		
	ORG	000BH		;T0 interrupt (location at 000BH)
	LJMP	TOINT		,10 menupi (iocanon at 000311)
;				
	ORG	0100H		
MAIN:				
	MOV	SP,	#7FH	;initial SP
	MOV	AUXR,		;timer0 work in 1T mode
	MOV	TMOD,		;set timer0 as counter mode2 (8-bit auto-reload
	MOV	A,	#0FFH	
	MOV	TL0,	A	;fill with 0xff to count one time
	MOV	TH0,	A	
	SETB	TR0		;timer0 start run
	SETB	ET0		;enable T0 interrupt
	SETB	EA		open global interrupt switch
	SJMP	\$		
•		ce routine		
, i o iiitei	rupt servi	ice routine		
T0INT:				
101N1:	RETI			

7.2.4 模式3(两个8位计数器)

对定时器1,在模式3时,定时器1停止计数,效果与将TR1设置为0相同。

对定时器0,此模式下定时器0的TL0及TH0作为2个独立的8位计数器。下图为模式3时的定时器0逻辑图。TL0占用定时器0的控制位: C/T、GATE、TR0、INT0及TF0。TH0限定为定时器功能(计数器周期),占用定时器1的TR1及TF1。此时,TH0控制定时器1中断。

模式3是为了增加一个附加的8位定时器/计数器而提供的,使单片机具有三个定时器/计数器。模式3只适用于定时器/计数器0,定时器T1处于模式3时相当于TR1=0,停止计数,而T0可作为两个定时器用。



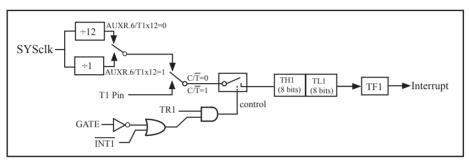
定时/计数器0模式3:两个8位计数器

7.3 定时器/计数器1工作模式

通过对寄存器TMOD中的M1(TMOD.5)、M0(TMOD.4)的设置,定时器/计数器1有3种不同的工作模式。

7.3.1 模式0(13位定时器/计数器)

此模式下定时器/**计数器1作为13位定时器/计数器**,有TL1的低5位和TH1的8位所构成,如下图所示。模式0的操作对于定时器1和定时器0是相同的。



定时器/计数器1的模式 0: 13位定时器/计数器

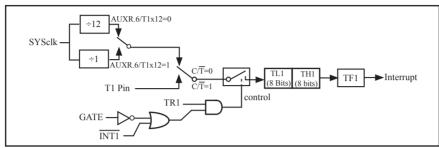
当GATE=0(TMOD.7)时,如TR1=1,则定时器计数。GATE=1时,允许由外部输入INT1控制定时器1,这样可实现脉宽测量。TR1为TCON寄存器内的控制位,TCON寄存器各位的具体功能描述见上节TCON寄存器的介绍。

当 C/\overline{T} =0时,多路开关连接到系统时钟的分频输出,T1对时钟周期计数,T1工作在定时方式。当 C/\overline{T} =1时,多路开关连接到外部脉冲输入P3.5/T1,即T1工作在计数方式。

STC12C5410AD系列单片机的定时器有两种计数速率:一种是12T模式,每12个时钟加1,与传统8051单片机相同;另外一种是1T模式,每个时钟加1,速度是传统8051单片机的12倍。T1的速率由特殊功能寄存器AUXR中的T1x12决定,如果T1x12=0,T1则工作在12T模式;如果T1x12=1,T1则工作在1T模式。

7.3.2 模式1(16位定时器/计数器)

此模式下定时器/计数器1作为16位定时器/计数器,如下图所示。



定时器/计数器1的模式1:16位定时器/计数器

此模式下,定时器1配置为16位定时器/计数器,由TL1的8位和TH1的8位所构成。TL1的8位 溢出向TH1进位,TH1计数溢出置位TCON中的溢出标志位TF1。

当GATE=0 (TMOD.7)时,如TR1=1,则定时器计数。GATE=1时,允许由外部输入INT1控制定时器1,这样可实现脉宽测量。TR1为TCON寄存器内的控制位,TCON寄存器各位的具体功能描述见上节TCON寄存器的介绍。

当 C/\overline{T} =0时,多路开关连接到系统时钟的分频输出,T1对时钟周期计数,T1工作在定时方式。当 C/\overline{T} =1时,多路开关连接到外部脉冲输入P3.5/T1,即T1工作在计数方式。

STC12C5410AD系列单片机的定时器有两种计数速率:一种是12T模式,每12个时钟加1,与传统8051单片机相同;另外一种是1T模式,每个时钟加1,速度是传统8051单片机的12倍。T1的速率由特殊功能寄存器AUXR中的T1x12决定,如果T1x12=0,T1则工作在12T模式;如果T1x12=1,T1则工作在1T模式。

定时器1工作在16位定时器/计数器模式的测试程序

1. C程序:

```
/*_____*/
/* --- STC MCU Limited ------*/
/* --- 演示STC 1T 系列单片机定时器1的16位定时器/计数器模式 --*/
/* 如果要在程序中使用或在文章中引用该程序, -----*/
/* 请在程序中或文章中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 -----*/
/*_____*/
#include "reg51.h"
typedef unsigned char
                    BYTE;
typedef unsigned int
                    WORD:
//-----
/* define constants */
#define FOSC
            18432000L
#define MODE 1T
                        //Timer clock mode, comment this line is 12T mode, uncomment is 1T mode
#ifdef MODE 1T
#define T1MS (65536-FOSC/1000)
                                        //1ms timer calculation method in 1T mode
#else
#define T1MS (65536-FOSC/12/1000)
                                        //1ms timer calculation method in 12T mode
#endif
/* define SFR */
                                        //Auxiliary register
sfr
      AUXR
                    0x8e;
      TEST LED =
                    P0^0;
                                        //work LED. flash once per second
sbit
/* define variables */
WORD count:
                                        //1000 times counter
//-----
/* Timer0 interrupt routine */
void tm1 isr() interrupt 3 using 1
      TL1 = T1MS:
                                        //reload timer1 low byte
      TH1 = T1MS >> 8;
                                        //reload timer1 high byte
                                        //1ms * 1000 -> 1s
      if (count -- == 0)
      {
                                        //reset counter
             count = 1000;
             TEST LED = ! TEST LED;
                                        //work LED flash
//-----
```

```
/* main program */
void main( )
#ifdef
         MODE 1T
                                               //timer1 work in 1T mode
         AUXR
                  = 0x40;
#endif
         TMOD = 0x10:
                                               //set timer1 as mode1 (16-bit)
                                               //initial timer1 low byte
         TL1
                  = T1MS:
         TH1
                  = T1MS >> 8:
                                               //initial timer1 high byte
                                               //timer1 start running
         TR1
                  = 1:
                                               //enable timer1 interrupt
         ET1
                  = 1;
                                               //open global interrupt switch
         EΑ
                  = 1:
                                               //initial counter
         count
                  = 0;
         while (1);
                                               //loop
```

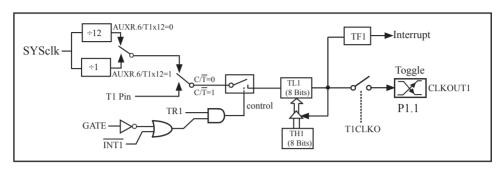
2. 汇编程序:

```
/*_____*/
/* --- STC MCU Limited -----*/
/* --- 演示STC 1T 系列单片机定时器1的16位定时器/计数器模式 ---*/
/* 如果要在程序中使用或在文章中引用该程序, -----*/
/* 请在程序中或文章中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 -----*/
/*____*/
;/* define constants */
#define MODE 1T
                        ;Timer clock mode, comment this line is 12T mode, uncomment is 1T mode
#ifdef
      MODE 1T
T1MS
                         ;1ms timer calculation method in 1T mode is (65536-18432000/1000)
      EOU
            0B800H
#else
                         ;1ms timer calculation method in 12T mode is (65536-18432000/12/1000)
T1MS
      EOU
            0FA00H
#endif
:/* define SFR */
AUXR
        DATA
                   8EH
                                ;Auxiliary register
                                ;work LED, flash once per second
TEST LED BIT
                   P1 0
;/* define variables */
COUNT DATA 20H
                                ;1000 times counter (2 bytes)
```

```
ORG
                0000H
        LJMP
                MAIN
        ORG
                001BH
        LJMP
                TM1_ISR
;/* main program */
MAIN:
#ifdef MODE1T
        MOV
                AUXR, #40H
                                                 ;timer1 work in 1T mode
#endif
        MOV
                TMOD, #10H
                                                 ;set timer1 as mode1 (16-bit)
        MOV
                                                 ;initial timer1 low byte
                TL1,
                        #LOW T1MS
                                                 ;initial timer1 high byte
        MOV
                TH1.
                        #HIGH T1MS
                                                 ;timer1 start running
        SETB
                TR1
                                                 ;enable timer1 interrupt
        SETB
                ET1
        SETB
                EA
                                                 open global interrupt switch
        CLR
        MOV
                COUNT, A
        MOV
                COUNT+1,A
                                                 initial counter:
        SJMP
                $
;/* Timer1 interrupt routine */
TM1 ISR:
        PUSH
                ACC
        PUSH
                PSW
        MOV
                TL1,
                        #LOW T1MS
                                                 ;reload timer1 low byte
        MOV
                TH1,
                        #HIGH T1MS
                                                 ;reload timer1 high byte
        MOV
                A,
                        COUNT
        ORL
                        COUNT+1
                                                 ;check whether count(2byte) is equal to 0
                A,
        JNZ
                SKIP
                                                 ;1ms * 1000 -> 1s
        MOV
                COUNT, #LOW 1000
        MOV
                COUNT+1,
                                 #HIGH 1000
        CPL
                TEST LED
                                                 ;work LED flash
SKIP:
        CLR
                C
        MOV
                A,
                        COUNT
                                                 :count--
        SUBB
                        #1
                A,
                COUNT, A
        MOV
        MOV
                        COUNT+1
                A,
        SUBB
                        #0
                A.
        MOV
                COUNT+1,A
        POP
                PSW
        POP
                ACC
        RETI
        END
```

7.3.3 模式2(8位自动重装模式)

此模式下定时器/计数器1作为可自动重装载的8位计数器,如下图所示。



定时器/计数器1的模式2:8位自动重装

TL1的溢出不仅置位TF1,而且将TH1内容重新装入TL1,TH1内容由软件预置,重装时TH1内容不变。

当T1CLKO/WAKE CLKO.1=1时, P1.1/ADC1管脚配置为定时1的时钟输出。

输出时钟频率 = T1 溢出率/2

如果C/T=0, 定时器/计数器T1对内部系统时钟计数,则

T1工作在1T模式(AUXR.6/T1x12=1)时的输出时钟频率=(SYSclk)/(256-TH1)/2

T1工作在12T模式(AUXR.6/T1x12=0)时的输出时钟频率=(SYSclk)/12/(256-TH1)/2

如果 $C/\overline{T}=1$,定时器/计数器T1是对外部脉冲输入(P1.1/ADC1)计数,则:

输出时钟频率 = (T1 Pin CLK) / (256-TH1) / 2

;定时器1中断(下降沿中断)的测试程序,定时器1工作在8位自动重装模式;下面程序中的定时器中断不能将单片机从掉电模式唤醒

1. C程序:

```
/*_____*/
/* --- STC MCU Limited -----*/
/* --- STC 1T Series MCU T1(Falling edge) Demo -----*/
/* If you want to use the program or the program referenced in the */
/* article, please specify in which data and procedures from STC */
/*____*/
#include "reg51.h"
sfr AUXR = 0x8e;
                                              //Auxiliary register
//T1 interrupt service routine
void t1int() interrupt 3
                                              //T1 interrupt (location at 001BH)
}
void main()
       AUXR = 0x40:
                                      //timer1 work in 1T mode
       TMOD = 0x60;
                                      //set timer1 as counter mode2 (8-bit auto-reload)
                                      //fill with 0xff to count one time
       TL1 = TH1 = 0xff;
                                       //timer1 start run
       TR1 = 1:
       ET1 = 1;
                                      //enable T1 interrupt
                                       //open global interrupt switch
       EA = 1;
       while (1);
```

2. 汇编程序:

```
/*_____*/
/* --- STC MCU Limited -----*/
/* --- STC 1T Series MCU T1(Falling edge) Demo -----*/
/* If you want to use the program or the program referenced in the */
/* article, please specify in which data and procedures from STC */
/*____*/
AUXR DATA 08EH
                                    ;Auxiliary register
•-----
;interrupt vector table
       ORG
              0000H
       LJMP
              MAIN
       ORG
              001BH
                                    ;T1 interrupt (location at 001BH)
       LJMP
              T1INT
       ORG
              0100H
MAIN:
       MOV
              SP,
                     #7FH
                                    ;initial SP
       MOV
              AUXR, #40H
                                    ;timer1 work in 1T mode
       MOV
              TMOD, #60H
                                    ;set timer1 as counter mode2 (8-bit auto-reload)
       MOV
              A,
                     #0FFH
       MOV
              TL1,
                                    ;fill with 0xff to count one time
                     Α
       MOV
              TH1,
                     Α
       SETB
              TR1
                                    ;timer1 start run
       SETB
              ET1
                                    ;enable T1 interrupt
       SETB
              EA
                                    ;open global interrupt switch
       SJMP
              $
;T1 interrupt service routine
T1INT:
       RETI
       END
```

7.4 可编程时钟输出及测试程序(C程序和汇编程序)

STC12C5410AD系列单片机有2路可编程时钟输出:CLKOUT0/ADC0/P1.0, CLKOUT1/ADC1/P1.1

与可编程时钟输出有关的特殊功能寄存器:

AUXR: Auxiliary register

SFR Name	Address	bit	В7	В6	B5	B4	В3	B2	B1	В0
AUXR	8EH	name	T0x12	T1x12	UART_M0x6	EADCI	ESPI	ELVDI	-	-

WAKE CLKO: Clock output and Power-down Wakeup Control register

SFR Name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	B4	В3	B2	B1	В0
WAKE_CLKO	8FH	name	PCAWAKEUP	RXD_PIN_IE	T1_PIN_IE	T0_PIN_IE	LVD_WAKE	-	T1CLKO	T0CLKO

特殊功能寄存器AUXR/WAKE CLKO/BRT的C语言声明:

sfr AUXR = 0x8E; //特殊功能寄存器AUXR的地址声明

sfr WAKE_CLKO = 0x8F; //新增加特殊功能寄存器WAKE_CLKO的地址声明

特殊功能寄存器IRC CLKO/INT CLKO/AUXR的汇编语言声明:

AUXR EQU 8EH ;特殊功能寄存器AUXR的地址声明

WAKE_CLKO EQU 8FH ;新增加的特殊功能寄存器WAKE_CLKO的地址声明

如何利用CLKOUT0/P1.0和CLKOUT1/P1.1管脚输出时钟:

CLKOUT0/P1.0和CLKOUT1/P1.1的时钟输出控制由WAKE_CLKO寄存器的T0CLKO位和T1CLKO位控制。CLKOUT0的输出时钟频率由定时器0控制, CLKOUT1的输出时钟频率由定时器1控制, 相应的定时器需要工作在定时器的模式2方式(8位自动重装载模式),不要允许相应的定时器中断,免得CPU反复进中断.

新增加的特殊功能寄存器: WAKE CLKO(地址: 0x8F)

WAKE_CLKO: Clock output and Power-down Wakeup Control register (不可位寻址)

SFR Name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	B4	В3	B2	B1	В0
WAKE_CLKO	8FH	name	PCAWAKEUP	RXD_PIN_IE	T1_PIN_IE	T0_PIN_IE	-	-	T1CLKO	T0CLKO

- B7 PCAWAKEUP: 在掉电模式下,是否允许PCA上升沿/下降沿中断唤醒powerdown。
 - 0: 禁止PCA上升沿/下降沿中断唤醒powerdown;
 - 1: 允许PCA上升沿/下降沿中断唤醒powerdown。
- B6-RXD_PIN_IE: 掉电模式下,允许P3.0(RXD)下降沿置RI, 也能使RXD唤醒powerdown.
 - 0:禁止P3.0(RXD)下降沿置RI,也禁止RXD唤醒powerdown;
 - 1: 允许P3.0(RXD)下降沿置RI, 也允许RXD唤醒powerdown。
- B5-T1 PIN IE: 掉电模式下,允许T1/P3.5脚下降沿置T1中断标志,也能使T1脚唤醒powerdown.
 - 0:禁止T1/P3.5脚下降沿置T1中断标志,也禁止T1脚唤醒powerdown;
 - 1: 允许T1/P3.5脚下降沿置T1中断标志,也允许T1脚唤醒powerdown。

- B4-T0 PIN IE: 掉电模式下,允许T0/P3.4脚下降沿置T0中断标志,也能使T0脚唤醒powerdown.
 - 0:禁止T0/P3.4脚下降沿置T0中断标志,也禁止T0脚唤醒powerdown;
 - 1: 允许T0/P3.4脚下降沿置T0中断标志,也允许T0脚唤醒powerdown。
- B1-T1CLKO: 是否允许将P1.1/ADC1脚配置为定时器T1的时钟输出CLKOUT1
 - 1: 允许将P1.1脚配置为定时器T1的时钟输出CLKOUT1, 此时定时器T1只能工作 在模式2(8位自动重装模式), CLKOUT1输出时钟频率= T1溢出率/2 T1工作在1T模式时的输出频率 = SYSclk / (256 - TH1)/2 T1工作在12T模式时的输出频率 = SYSclk / 12 / (256 - TH1)/2
 - 0: 不允许将P1.1脚配置为定时器T1的时钟输出CLKOUT1
- B0-T0CLKO: 是否允许将P1.0/ADC0脚配置为定时器T0的时钟输出CLKOUT0
 - 1: 允许将P1.0脚配置为定时器T0的时钟输出CLKOUT0, 此时定时器T0只能工作 在模式2(8位自动重装模式), CLKOUT0输出时钟频率 = T0溢出率 / 2 T0工作在1T 模式时的输出频率 = SYSclk / (256 - TH0) / 2 T0工作在12T模式时的输出频率 = SYSclk / 12 / (256 - TH0) / 2
 - 0: 不允许将P1.0脚配置为定时器T0的时钟输出CLKOUT0

特殊功能寄存器: AUXR(地址: 0x8E)

AUXR: Auxiliary register (不可位寻址)

SFR Name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	B4	В3	B2	B1	В0
AUXR	8EH	name	T0x12	T1x12	UART_M0x6	EADCI	ESPI	ELVDI	-	-

- B7-T0x12: 定时器0速度控制位。
 - 0: 定时器0速度是8051单片机定时器的速度,即12分频;
 - 1: 定时器0速度是8051单片机定时器速度的12倍,即不分频。
- B6-T1x12: 定时器1速度控制位。
 - 0: 定时器1速度是8051单片机定时器的速度,即12分频:
 - 1: 定时器1速度是8051单片机定时器速度的12倍,即不分频。

如果UART串口用T1作为波特率发生器,则由T1x12位决定UART串口是12T还是1T。

- B5 UART M0x6: 串口模式0的通信速度设置位。
 - 0: UART串口模式0的速度是传统8051单片机串口的速度,即12分频;
 - 1: UART串口模式0的速度是传统8051单片机串口速度的6倍, 即2分频。

7.4.1 定时器0的可编程时钟输出的测试程序

1. C程序:

```
/*_____*/
/* --- STC MCU Limited -----*/
/* --- 演示STC 1T 系列单片机定时器0的可编程时钟输-----*/
/* 如果要在程序中使用或在文章中引用该程序, -----*/
/* 请在程序中或文章中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 -----*/
/*_____*/
#include "reg51.h"
//----
/* define constants */
#define FOSC
             18432000L
//#define MODE 1T
                         //Timer clock mode, comment this line is 12T mode, uncomment is 1T mode
#ifdef
       MODE 1T
#define F38 4KHz
                    (256-FOSC/2/38400)
                                         //38.4KHz frequency calculation method of 1T mode
#else
#define F38 4KHz
                    (256-FOSC/2/12/38400)
                                         //38.4KHz frequency calculation method of 12T mode
#endif
/* define SFR */
sfr
       AUXR
                    = 0x8e:
                                         //Auxiliary register
                                         //wakeup and clock output control register
sfr
       WAKE CLKO
                    = 0x8f:
                                         //timer0 clock output pin
sbit
       T0CLKO
                    = P1^{0}:
//-----
/* main program */
void main()
#ifdef
       MODE 1T
       AUXR =
                                         //timer0 work in 1T mode
                    0x80;
#endif
       TMOD =
                    0x02;
                                         //set timer0 as mode2 (8-bit auto-reload)
       TL0
             =
                    F38 4KHz;
                                         //initial timer0
       TH0
                    F38 4KHz;
                                         //initial timer0
       TR0
                    1;
                                         //timer0 start running
                                         //enable timer0 clock output
       WAKE CLKO = 0x01;
       while (1);
                                         //loop
```

2. 汇编程序:

```
/*_____*/
/* --- STC MCU Limited -----*/
/* --- 演示STC 1T 系列单片机定时器0的可编程时钟输-----*/
/* 如果要在程序中使用或在文章中引用该程序, -----*/
/* 请在程序中或文章中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 -----*/
/*_____*/
;/* define constants */
#define MODE 1T
                       ;Timer clock mode, comment this line is 12T mode, uncomment is 1T mode
#ifdef
      MODE 1T
                   ;38.4KHz frequency calculation method of 1T mode is (256-18432000/2/38400)
F38 4KHz EQU 010H
#else
F38 4KHz EQU 0ECH
                     ;38.4KHz frequency calculation method of 12T mode (256-18432000/2/12/38400)
#endif
:/* define SFR */
AUXR
             DATA
                   08EH
                                       ;Auxiliary register
                                       ;wakeup and clock output control register
WAKE CLKO
                   08FH
            DATA
                                       ;timer0 clock output pin
T0CLKO
             BIT
                   P1.0
      ORG
            0000H
      LJMP MAIN
•
:/* main program */
MAIN:
#ifdef MODE1T
      MOV
             AUXR, #80H
                                       ;timer0 work in 1T mode
#endif
      MOV
                   #02H
                                       ;set timer0 as mode2 (8-bit auto-reload)
            TMOD,
      MOV
            TL0,
                   #F38 4KHz
                                       ;initial timer0
      MOV THO,
                                       ;initial timer0
                   #F38 4KHz
      SETB TR0
      MOV WAKE CLKO, #01H
                                       ;enable timer0 clock output
      SJMP $
      END
```

7.4.2 定时器1的可编程时钟输出的测试程序

1. C程序:

```
/*_____*/
/* --- STC MCU Limited -----*/
/* --- 演示STC 1T 系列单片机定时器1的可编程时钟输-----*/
/* 如果要在程序中使用或在文章中引用该程序, -----*/
/* 请在程序中或文章中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 -----*/
#include "reg51.h"
//-----
/* define constants */
#define FOSC
             18432000L
//#define MODE 1T
                         //Timer clock mode, comment this line is 12T mode, uncomment is 1T mode
#ifdef
       MODE 1T
#define F38 4KHz
                   (256-FOSC/2/38400)
                                          //38.4KHz frequency calculation method of 1T mode
#else
#define F38 4KHz (256-FOSC/2/12/38400)
                                          //38.4KHz frequency calculation method of 12T mode
#endif
/* define SFR */
sfr
       AUXR
                   = 0x8e:
                                          //Auxiliary register
sfr
       WAKE_CLKO = 0x8f;
                                          //wakeup and clock output control register
sbit
      T1CLKO
                   = P1^1:
                                          //timer1 clock output pin
//-----
/* main program */
void main()
#ifdef
       MODE 1T
       AUXR = 0x40:
                                          //timer1 work in 1T mode
#endif
       TMOD = 0x20;
                                          //set timer1 as mode2 (8-bit auto-reload)
           = F38 4KHz;
                                          //initial timer1
       TL1
       TH1 = F38 4KHz;
                                          //initial timer1
                                          //timer1 start running
       TR1 = 1:
       WAKE CLKO = 0x02;
                                          //enable timer1 clock output
       while (1);
                                          //loop
```

2. 汇编程序:

```
/*_____*/
/* --- STC MCU Limited -----*/
/* --- 演示STC 1T 系列单片机定时器1的可编程时钟输-----*/
/* 如果要在程序中使用或在文章中引用该程序, -----*/
/* 请在程序中或文章中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 -----*/
;/* define constants */
#define MODE 1T
                         ;Timer clock mode, comment this line is 12T mode, uncomment is 1T mode
#ifdef
      MODE 1T
F38 4KHz EQU 010H ;38.4KHz frequency calculation method of 1T mode is (256-18432000/2/38400)
#else
F38 4KHz EQU 0ECH
                      ;38.4KHz frequency calculation method of 12T mode (256-18432000/2/12/38400)
#endif
:/* define SFR */
AUXR
             DATA
                    08EH
                                         ;Auxiliary register
WAKE CLKO
             DATA
                    08FH
                                         :wakeup and clock output control register
T1CLKO
                                         ;timer1 clock output pin
             BIT
                    P1.1
             H0000
      ORG
      LJMP MAIN
._____
;/* main program */
MAIN:
#ifdef
      MODE 1T
      MOV
             AUXR, #40H
                                         ;timer1 work in 1T mode
#endif
             TMOD, #20H
      MOV
                                         ;set timer1 as mode2 (8-bit auto-reload)
      MOV
             TL1,
                    #F38 4KHz
                                         ;initial timer1
      MOV
             TH1.
                    #F38 4KHz
                                         :initial timer1
      SETB
             TR1
      MOV
             WAKE CLKO, #02H
                                         ;enable timer1 clock output
      SJMP
             $
      END
```

7.5 古老Intel 8051单片机定时器0/1的应用举例

【例1】 定时/计数器编程,定时/计数器的应用编程主要需考虑:根据应用要求,通过程序初始化,正确设置控制字,正确计算和计算计数初值,编写中断服务程序,适时设置控制位等。通常情况下,设置顺序大致如下:

- 1)工作方式控制字(TMOD、T2CON)的设置:
- 2) 计数初值的计算并装入THx、TLx、RCAP2H、RCAP2L;
- 3)中断允许位ETx、EA的设置, 使主机开放中断;
- 4) 启/停位TRx的设置等。

现以定时/计数器0或1为例作一简要介绍。

8051系列单片机的定时器/计数器0或1是以不断加1进行计数的,即属加1计数器,因此,就不能直接将实际的计数值作为计数初值送入计数寄存器THx、TLx中去,而必须将实际计数值以2⁸、2¹³、2¹⁶为模求补,以其补码作为计数初值设置THx和TLx。

设:实际计数值为X,计数器长度为n(n=8、13、16),则应装入计数器THx、TLx中的计数初值为 2^n-x ,式中 2^n 为取模值。例如,工作方式0的计数长度为13位,则n=13,以 2^{13} 为模,工作方式1的计数长度为16,则n=16,以 2^{16} 为模等等。所以,计数初值为 $(x) = 2^n-x$ 。

对于定时模式,是对机器周期计数,而机器周期与选定的主频密切相关。因此,需根据应用系统所选定的主频计算出机器周期值。现以主频6MHz为例,则机器周期为:

实际定时时间 $Tc = x \cdot Tp$

式中Tp为机器周期,Tc为所需定时时间,x为所需计数次数。Tp和Tp一般为已知值,在求出Tp后即可求得所需计数值x,再将x求补码,即求得定时计数初值。即

$$(x) \grave{x} = 2^n - x$$

例如,设定时时间Tc = 5ms,机器周期TP = 2μs,可求得定时计数次数

$$x = \frac{5ms}{2 \mu s} = 2500 \%$$

设选用工作方式1,则n=16,则应设置的定时时间计数初值为:

(x) 补= 2^{16} - x=65536-2500=63036,还需将它分解成两个8位十六进制数,分别求得低8位为3CH装入TLx,高8位为F6H装入THx中。

工作方式0、1、2的最大计数次数分别为8192、65536和256。 对外部事件计数模式,只需根据实际计数次数求补后变换成两个十六进制码即可。 【例2】 定时/计数器应用编程,设某应用系统,选择定时/计数器1定时模式,定时时间Tc = 10ms,主频频率为12MHz,每10ms向主机请求处理。选定工作方式1。计算得计数初值:低8位初值为FOH,高8位初值为D8H。

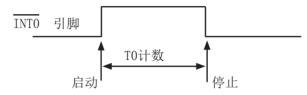
(1) 初始化程序

所谓初始化,一般在主程序中根据应用要求对定时/计数器进行功能选择及参数设定等预置程序,本例初始化程序如下:

START:	;主程序段
MOV SP, #60H	; 设置堆栈区域
MOV TMOD, #10H	;选择T1、定时模式,工作方式1
MOV TH1, #OD8H	; 设置高字节计数初值
MOV TL1, #0F0H	; 设置低字节计数初值
SETB EA	;)
SETB ET1	,
:	; 其他初始化程序
SETB TR1	; 启动T1开始计时
:	; 继续主程序
(2) 中断服务程序	
INTT1: PUSH A	; 7
PUSH DPL	; > 现场保护
PUSH DPH	, J
:	
MOV TL1, #0F0H	; 〕 重新胃初值
MOV TH1, #OD8H	;
:	;中断处理主体程序
POP DPH	; 7
POP DPL	; → 现场恢复
POP A	;)
RETI	; 返回

这里展示了中断服务子程序的基本格式。STC12C5410AD系列单片机的中断属于矢量中断,每一个矢量中断源只留有8个字节单元,一般是不够用的,常需用转移指令转到真正的中断服务子程序区去执行。

【例3】 对外部正脉冲测宽。选择定时/计数器2进行脉宽测试较方便,但也可选用定时/计数器0或定时/计数器1进行测宽操作。本例选用定时/计数器0(T0)以定时模式,工作方式1对INT0引脚上的正脉冲进行脉宽测试。



设置GATE为1,机器周期TP为1µs。本例程序段编制如下:

INTTO:	MOV	TMOD, #09H	;设T0为定时方式1,GATE为1
	MOV	TLO, #00H	;);
	MOV	THO, #00H	;} THO, TLO清0
	CLR	EX0	;关 INTO 中断
LOP1:	JB	P3.2, LOP1	;等待INTO引低电平
LOP2:	JNB	P3.2, LOP2	;等待INTO引脚高电平
	SETB	TR0	; 启动T0开始计数
LOP3:	ЈВ	P3.2, LOP3	;等待INTO低电平
	CLR	TR0	;停止T0计数
	MOV	A, TLO	; 低字节计数值送A
	MOV	B, THO	; 高字节计数值送B
	:		; 计算脉宽和处理

【例4】 利用定时/计数器0或定时/计数器1的Tx端口改造成外部中断源输入端口的应用设计。

在某些应用系统中常会出现原有的两个外部中断源INT0和INT1不够用,而定时/计数器有多余,则可将Tx用于增加的外部中断源。现选择定时/计数器1为对外部事件计数模式工作方式2(自动再装入),设置计数初值为FFH,则T1端口输入一个负跳变脉冲,计数器即回0溢出,置位对应的中断请求标志位TF1为1,向主机请求中断处理,从而达到了增加一个外部中断源的目的。应用定时/计数器1(T1)的中断矢量转入中断服务程序处理。其程序示例如下:

(1) 主程序段:

ORG 0000H **A.TMP** : 转主程序 MATN ORG 001BH LIMP INTER : 转T1中断服务程序 ORG 0100 : 主程序入口 MATN: SP, #60H : 设置堆栈区 MOV ;设置定时/计数器1,计数方式2 MOV TMOD, #60H : 设置计数常数 MOV TL1, #OFFH TH1, #0FFH MOV **SETB** : 开中断 EΑ SETB ET1 : 开定时/计数器1中断 **SETB** TR1 : 启动定时/计数器1计数

(2) 中断服务程序(具体处理程序略)



这是中断服务程序的基本格式。

【例5】 某应用系统需通过P1.0和P1.1分别输出周期为200 μ s和400 μ s的方波。为此,系统选用定时器/计数器0(T0),定时方式3,主频为6MHz,TP=2 μ s,经计算得定时常数为9CH和38H。

本例程序段编制如下:

(1) 初始化程序段

;设置T0定时方式3 PLT0: MOV TMOD, #03H MOV TLO, #9CH ;设置TL0初值 ;设置THO初值 THO, #38H MOV **SETB** EΑ **SETB** ET0 **SETB** ET1 **SETB** TR0 ; 启动 SETB TR1 ; 启动

(2) 中断服务程序段

1)

```
INTOP:
           TLO, #9CH
                                   : 重新设置初值
     MOV
           P1.0
                                   ;对P1.0输出信号取反
     CPL
     RETI
                                   : 返回
2)
INT1P
                                   : 重新设置初值
     MOV
           THO, #38H
     CPL
           P1. 1
                                   : 对P1.1输出信号取反
     RETT
                                   : 返回
```

在实际应用中应注意的问题如下。

(1) 定时/计数器的实时性

定时/计数器启动计数后,当计满回0溢出向主机请求中断处理,由内部硬件自动进行。但从回0溢出请求中断到主机响应中断并作出处理存在时间延迟,且这种延时随中断请求时的现场环境的不同而不同,一般需延时3个机器周期以上,这就给实时处理带来误差。大多数应用场合可忽略不计,但对某些要求实时性苛刻的场合,应采用补偿措施。

这种由中断响应引起的时间延时,对定时/计数器工作于方式0或1而言有两种含义:一是由于中断响应延时而引起的实时处理的误差;二是如需多次且连续不间断地定时/计数,由于中断响应延时,则在中断服务程序中再置计数初值时已延误了若干个计数值而引起误差,特别是用于定时就更明显。

例如选用定时方式1设置系统时钟,由于上述原因就会产生实时误差。这种场合应采用动态补偿办法以减少系统始终误差。所谓动态补偿,即在中断服务程序中对THx、TLx重新置计数初值时,应将THx、TLx从回0溢出又重新从0开始继续计数的值读出,并补偿到原计数初值中去进行重新设置。可考虑如下补偿方法:

: 禁止中断 CLR EΑ A, TLx MOV ; 读TLx中已计数值 A, #LOW : LOW为原低字节计数初值 ADD MOV TLx, A : 设置低字节计数初值 ; 原高字节计数初值送A A, #HIGH MOV ADDC A, THx : 高字节计数初值补偿 MOV THx, A : 置高字节计数初值 : 开中断 SETB EΑ

(2) 动态读取运行中的计数值

在动态读取运行中的定时/计数器的计数值时,如果不加注意,就可能出错。这是因为不可能在同一时刻同时读取THx和TLx中的计数值。比如,先读TLx后读THx,因为定时/计数器处于运行状态,在读TLx时尚未产生向THx进位,而在读THx前已产生进位,这时读得的THx就不对了;同样,先读THx后读TLx也可能出错。

一种可避免读错的方法是:先读THx,后读TLx,将两次读得的THx进行比较;若两次读得的值相等,则可确定读的值是正确的,否则重复上述过程,重复读得的值一般不会再错。此法的软件编程如下:

RDTM: MOV A, THx ; 读取THx存A中
MOV RO, TLx ; 读取TLx存R0中
CJNE A, THx, RDTM ; 比较两次THx值,若相等,则读得的
; 值正确,程序往下执行,否则重读
MOV R1, A ; 将THx存于R1中

:

第8章 串行口通信

STC12C5410AD系列单片机具有1个采用UART(Universal Asychronous Receiver/Transmitter)工作方式的全双工串行通信接口。串行口由2个数据缓冲器、一个移位寄存器、一个串行控制寄存器和一个波特率发生器等组成。串行口的数据缓冲器由2个互相独立的接收、发送缓冲器构成,可以同时发送和接收数据。发送缓冲器只能写入而不能读出,接收缓冲器只能读出而不能写入,因而两个缓冲器可以共用一个地址码。串行口的两个缓冲器统称为串行通信特殊功能寄存器SBUF,其共用的地址码是99H。

STC12C5410AD系列单片机的两个串行口都有4种工作方式,其中两种方式的波特率是可变的,另两种是固定的,以供不同应用场合选用。用户可用软件设置不同的波特率和选择不同的工作方式。主机可通过查询或中断方式对接收/发送进行程序处理,使用十分灵活。STC-12C5410AD系列单片机串行口对应的硬件部分是TxD/P3.1和RxD/P3.0引脚。

STC12C5410AD系列单片机的串行通信口,除用于数据通信外,还可方便地构成一个或多个并行I/O口,或作串一并转换,或用于扩展串行外设等。

8.1 串行口的相关寄存器

符号	描述	地址	位地址及符号 MSB LSB	复位值
AUXR	Auxiliary register	8EH	T0x12 T1x12 UART_M0x6 EADCI ESPI ELVDI	0000 00xxB
SCON	Serial Control	98H	SM0/FE SM1 SM2 REN TB8 RB8 TI RI	0000 0000B
SBUF	Serial Buffer	99H		xxxx xxxxB
PCON	Power Control	87H	SMOD SMODO LVDF POF GF1 GF0 PD IDL	0011 0000B
IE	Interrupt Enable	A8H	$\verb EA \verb EPCA_LVD EADC_SPI ES $	0000 0000B
IP	Interrupt Priority Low	В8Н	- PPCA_LVD PADC_LVD PS PT1 PX1 PT0 PX0	x000 0000B
IPH	Interrupt Priority High	В7Н	- PPCA_LVDH PADC_LVDH PSH PT1H PX1H PT0H PX0H	x000 0000B
SADEN	Slave Address Mask	В9Н		0000 0000B
SADDR	Slave Address	А9Н		0000 0000B
WAKE_CLKO	CLK_Output Power down Wake-up control register	8FH	PCAWAKEUP RXD_PIN_IE T1_PIN_IE T0_PIN_IE - T1CLKO T0CLKO	0000 xx00B

1. 串行口的控制寄存器SCON和PCON

STC12C5410AD系列单片机的串行口设有两个控制寄存器:串行控制寄存器SCON和波特率选择特殊功能寄存器PCON。

串行控制寄存器SCON用于选择串行通信的工作方式和某些控制功能。其格式如下:

SCON: 串行控制寄存器 (可位寻址)

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	В4	В3	В2	B1	В0
SCON	98H	name	SM0/FE	SM1	SM2	REN	TB8	RB8	TI	RI

SM0/FE: 当PCON寄存器中的SMOD0/PCON.6位为1时,该位用于帧错误检测。当检测到一个 无效停止位时,通过UART接收器设置该位。它必须由软件清零。

当PCON寄存器中的SMOD0/PCON.6位为0时,该位和SM1一起指定串行通信的工作方式,如下表所示。

其中SM0、SM1按下列组合确定串行口1的工作方式:

SM0	SM1	工作方式	功能说明	波特率
0	0	方式0	同步移位串行 方式:移位寄 存器	
0	1	方式1	8位UART, 波特率可变	(2 ^{SMOD} /32)×(定时器1的溢出率)
1	0	方式2	9位UART	(2 ^{SMOD} / 64) x SYSclk系统工作时钟频率
1	1	方式3	9位UART, 波特率可变	(2 ^{SMOD} /32)x(定时器1的溢出率)

当T1x12=0时, 定时器1的溢出率=SYSclk/12/(256-TH1):

当T1x12 = 1时, 定时器1的溢出率 = SYSclk / (256 - T H1)

SM2: 允许方式2或方式3多机通信控制位。

在方式2或方式3时,如果SM2位为1且REN位为1,则接收机处于地址帧筛选状态。此时可以利用接收到的第9位(即RB8)来筛选地址帧:若RB8=1,说明该帧是地址帧,地址信息可以进入SBUF,并使RI为1,进而在中断服务程序中再进行地址号比较;若RB8=0,说明该帧不是地址帧,应丢掉且保持RI=0。在方式2或方式3中,如果SM2位为0且REN位为1,接收收机处于地址帧筛选被禁止状态。不论收到的RB8为0或1,均可使接收到的信息进入SBUF,并使RI=1,此时RB8通常为校验位.

方式1和方式0是非多机通信方式,在这两种方式时,要设置SM2应为0。

REN: 允许/禁止串行接收控制位。由软件置位REN,即REN=1为允许串行接收状态,可启动串行接收器RxD,开始接收信息。软件复位REN,即REN=0,则禁止接收。

TB8: 在方式2或方式3,它为要发送的第9位数据,按需要由软件置位或清0。例如,可用作数据的校验位或多机通信中表示地址帧/数据帧的标志位。在方式0和方式1中,该位不用.

RB8: 在方式2或方式3,是接收到的第9位数据,作为奇偶校验位或地址帧/数据帧的标志位。 方式0中不用RB8(置SM2=0).方式1中也不用RB8(置SM2=0,RB8是接收到的停止位)。

- TI: 发送中断请求中断标志位。在方式0,当串行发送数据第8位结束时,由内部硬件自动置位,即TI=1,向主机请求中断,响应中断后TI必须用软件清零,即TI=0。在其他方式中,则在停止位开始发送时由内部硬件置位,即TI=1,响应中断后TI必须用软件清零。
- RI: 接收中断请求标志位。在方式0,当串行接收到第8位结束时由内部硬件自动置位RI=1,向主机请求中断,响应中断后RI必须用软件清零,即RI=0。在其他方式中,串行接收到停止位的中间时刻由内部硬件置位,即RI=1,向CPU发中断申请,响应中断后RI必须由软件清零。

SCON的所有位可通过整机复位信号复位为全"0"。SCON的字节地址为98H,可位寻址,各位地址为98H~~9FH,可用软件实现位设置。

串行通信的中断请求: 当一帧发送完成,内部硬件自动置位TI,即TI=1,请求中断处理; 当接收完一帧信息时,内部硬件自动置位RI,即RI=1,请求中断处理。由于TI和RI以"或逻辑"关系向主机请求中断,所以主机响应中断时事先并不知道是TI还是RI请求的中断,必须在中断服务程序中查询TI和RI进行判别,然后分别处理。因此,两个中断请求标志位均不能由硬件自动置位,必须通过软件清0,否则将出现一次请求多次响应的错误。

电源控制寄存器PCON中的SMOD/PCON. 7用于设置方式1、方式2、方式3的波特率是否加倍。

电源控制寄存器PCON格式如下:

PCON: 电源控制寄存器 (不可位寻址)

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	B4	В3	B2	B1	В0
PCON	87H	name	SMOD	SMOD0	LVDF	POF	GF1	GF0	PD	IDL

SMOD: 波特率选择位。当用软件置位SMOD,即SMOD=1,则使串行通信方式1、2、3的波特率加倍:SMOD=0,则各工作方式的波特率加倍。复位时SMOD=0。

SMOD0: 帧错误检测有效控制位。当SMOD0=1, SCON寄存器中的SM0/FE位用于FE(帧错误检测)功能; 当SMOD0=0, SCON寄存器中的SM0/FE位用于SM0功能,和SM1一起指定串行口的工作方式。复位时SMOD0=0

2. 串行口数据缓冲寄存器SBUF

STC12C5410AD系列单片机的串行口缓冲寄存器(SBUF)的地址是99H,实际是2个缓冲器,写SBUF的操作完成待发送数据的加载,读SBUF的操作可获得已接收到的数据。两个操作分别对应两个不同的寄存器,1个是只写寄存器,1个是只读寄存器。

串行通道内设有数据寄存器。在所有的串行通信方式中,在写入SBUF信号(MOV SBUF, A)的控制下,把数据装入相同的9位移位寄存器,前面8位为数据字节,其最低位为移位寄存器的输出位。根据不同的工作方式会自动将"1"或TB8的值装入移位寄存器的第9位,并进行发送.

串行通道的接收寄存器是一个输入移位寄存器。在方式0时它的字长为8位,其他方式时为9位。当一帧接收完毕,移位寄存器中的数据字节装入串行数据缓冲器SBUF中,其第9位则装入SCON寄存器中的RB8位。如果由于SM2使得已接收到的数据无效时,RB8和SBUF中内容不变.

由于接收通道内设有输入移位寄存器和SBUF缓冲器,从而能使一帧接收完将数据由移位 寄存器装入SBUF后,可立即开始接收下一帧信息,主机应在该帧接收结束前从SBUF缓冲器中 将数据取走,否则前一帧数据将丢失。SBUF以并行方式送往内部数据总线。

3. 辅助寄存器AUXR

辅助寄存器AUXR的格式及各位含义如下:

AUXR:辅助寄存器(不可位寻址)

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	В4	В3	B2	В1	В0
AUXR	8EH	name	T0x12	T1x12	UART_M0x6	EADCI	ESPI	ELVDI	-	-

T0x12: 定时器0速度设置位

- 0, 定时器0是传统8051速度, 12分频;
- 1. 定时器0的速度是传统8051的12倍,不分频

T1x12: 定时器1速度设置位

- 0, 定时器1是传统8051速度, 12分频;
- 1、定时器1的速度是传统8051的12倍,不分频

如果UART串口用定时器1做波特率发生器,T1x12位就可以控制UART串口是12T还是1T了。

UART M0x6: 串行口模式0的通信速度设置位

- 0, UART串口的模式0是传统12T的8051速度, 12分频;
- 1, UART串口的模式0的速度是传统12T的8051的6倍, 2分频

寄存器AUXR中的其他位是与中断有关的, 在此不作介绍。

5. 从机地址控制寄存器SADEN和SADDR

为了方便多机通信,STC12C5410AD系列单片机设置了从机地址控制寄存器SADEN和SADDR。其中SADEN是从机地址掩模寄存器(地址为B9H,复位值为00H),SADDR是从机地址寄存器(地址为A9H,复位值为00H)。

6. 与串行口中断相关的寄存器IE、IP和IPH

串行口中断允许位ES位于中断允许寄存器IE中,中断允许寄存器的格式如下:

IE: 中断允许寄存器(可位寻址)

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	B4	В3	B2	В1	В0
IE	A8H	name	EA	EPCA_LVD	EADC_SPI	ES	ET1	EX1	ET0	EX0

EA: CPU的总中断允许控制位,EA=1, CPU开放中断,EA=0, CPU屏蔽所有的中断申请。 EA的作用是使中断允许形成多级控制。即各中断源首先受EA控制;其次还受各中断源自己的中断允许控制位控制。

ES: 串行口中断允许位, ES=1, 允许串行口中断, ES=0, 禁止串行口中断。

IPH: 中断优先级控制寄存器高(不可位寻址)

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	B4	В3	B2	В1	В0
IPH	В7Н	name	-	PPCA_LVDH	PADC_SPIH	PSH	PT1H	PX1H	PT0H	PX0H

IP: 中断优先级控制寄存器低(可位寻址)

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	B4	В3	B2	B1	В0
IP	B8H	name	-	PPCA_LVD	PADC	PS	PT1	PX1	PT0	PX0

PSH, PS: 串行口中断优先级控制位。

当PSH=0且PS=0时,串行口中断为最低优先级中断(优先级0)

当PSH=0且PS=1时,串行口中断为较低优先级中断(优先级1)

当PSH=1目PS=0时,串行口中断为较高优先级中断(优先级2)

当PSH=1且PS=1时, 串行口中断为最高优先级中断(优先级3)

8.2 串行口工作模式

STC12C5410AD系列单片机的串行通信接口有4种工作模式,可通过软件编程对SCON中的SM0、SM1的设置进行选择。其中模式1、模式2和模式3为异步通信,每个发送和接收的字符都带有1个启动位和1个停止位。在模式0中,串行口被作为1个简单的移位寄存器使用。

8.2.1 串行口工作模式0: 同步移位寄存器

在模式0状态,串行通信接口工作在同步移位寄存器模式,当串行口模式0的通信速度设置位UART_M0x6/AUXR.5 = 0时,其波特率固定为SYSclk/12。当串行口模式0的通信速度设置位UART_M0x6/AUXR.5 = 1时,其波特率固定为SYSclk/2。串行口数据由RxD/P3.0端输入,同步移位脉冲(SHIFTCLOCK)由TxD/P3.1输出,发送、接收的是8位数据,低位在先。

模式0的发送过程: 当主机执行将数据写入发送缓冲器SBUF指令时启动发送,串行口即将8位数据以SYSclk/12或SYSclk/2(由UART_M0x6/AUXR.5确定是12分频还是2分频)的波特率从RxD管脚输出(从低位到高位),发送完中断标志TI置"1",TxD管脚输出同步移位脉冲(SHIFTCLOCK)。波形如图8-1中"发送"所示。

当写信号有效后,相隔一个时钟,发送控制端SEND有效(高电平),允许RxD发送数据,同时允许TxD输出同步移位脉冲。一帧(8位)数据发送完毕时,各控制端均恢复原状态,只有TI保持高电平,呈中断申请状态。在再次发送数据前,必须用软件将TI清0。

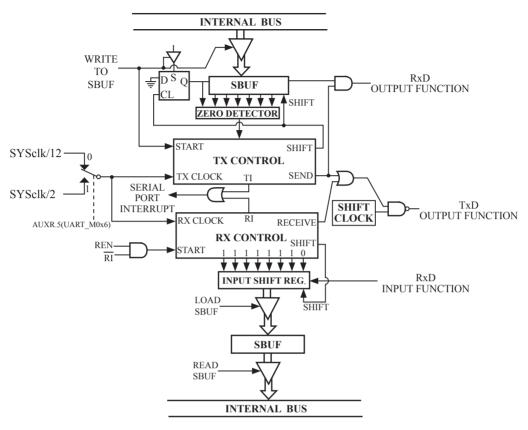
模式0接收过程:模式0接收时,复位接收中断请求标志RI,即RI=0,置位允许接收控制位REN=1时启动串行模式0接收过程。启动接收过程后,RxD为串行输入端,TxD为同步脉冲输出端。串行接收的波特率为SYSclk/12或SYSclk/2(由UART_M0x6/AUXR.5确定是12分频还是2分频)。其时序图如图8-1中"接收"所示。

当接收完成一帧数据(8位)后,控制信号复位,中断标志RI被置"1",呈中断申请状态。当 再次接收时,必须通过软件将RI清0

工作于模式0时,必须清0多机通信控制位SM2,使不影响TB8位和RB8位。由于波特率固定为SYSclk/12或SYSclk/2,无需定时器提供,直接由单片机的时钟作为同步移位脉冲。

串行口工作模式0的示意图如图8-1所示

由示意图中可见,由TX和RX控制单元分别产生中断请求信号并置位TI=1或RI =1,经"或门"送主机请求中断,所以主机响应中断后必须软件判别是TI还是RI请求中断,必须软件清0中断请求标志位TI或RI。



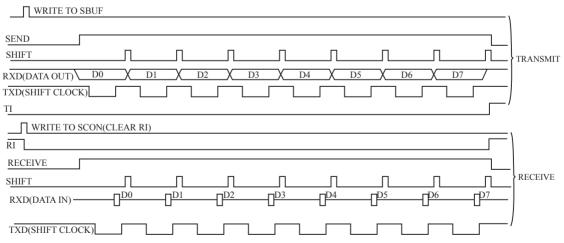


图8-1 串行口1模式0功能结构及时序示意图

8.2.2 串行口工作模式1:8位UART,波特率可变

当软件设置SCON的SM0、SM1为"01"时,串行口则以模式1工作。此模式为8位UART格式,一帧信息为10位:1位起始位,8位数据位(低位在先)和1位停止位。波特率可变,即可根据需要进行设置。TxD/P3.1为发送信息,RxD/P3.0为接收端接收信息,串行口为全双工接受/发送串行口。

图8-2为串行模式1的功能结构示意图及接收/发送时序图

模式1的发送过程: 串行通信模式发送时,数据由串行发送端TxD输出。当主机执行一条写"SBUF"的指令就启动串行通信的发送,写"SBUF"信号还把"1"装入发送移位寄存器的第9位,并通知TX控制单元开始发送。发送各位的定时是由16分频计数器同步。

移位寄存器将数据不断右移送TxD端口发送,在数据的左边不断移入"0"作补充。当数据的最高位移到移位寄存器的输出位置,紧跟其后的是第9位"1",在它的左边各位全为"0",这个状态条件,使TX控制单元作最后一次移位输出,然后使允许发送信号"SEND"失效,完成一帧信息的发送,并置位中断请求位TI,即TI=1,向主机请求中断处理。

模式1的接收过程: 当软件置位接收允许标志位REN,即REN=1时,接收器便以选定波特率的16分频的速率采样串行接收端口RxD,当检测到RxD端口从"1"→"0"的负跳变时就启动接收器准备接收数据,并立即复位16分频计数器,将1FFH植装入移位寄存器。复位16分频计数器是使它与输入位时间同步。

16分频计数器的16个状态是将1波特率(每位接收时间)均为16等份,在每位时间的7、8、9状态由检测器对RxD端口进行采样,所接收的值是这次采样直经"三中取二"的值,即3次采样至少2次相同的值,以此消除干扰影响,提高可靠性。在起始位,如果接收到的值不为"0"(低电平),则起始位无效,复位接收电路,并重新检测"1"→"0"的跳变。如果接收到的起始位有效,则将它输入移位寄存器,并接收本帧的其余信息。

接收的数据从接收移位寄存器的右边移入,已装入的1FFH向左边移出,当起始位"0"移到移位寄存器的最左边时,使RX控制器作最后一次移位,完成一帧的接收。若同时满足以下两个条件:

- RI=0:
- ·SM2=0或接收到的停止位为1。

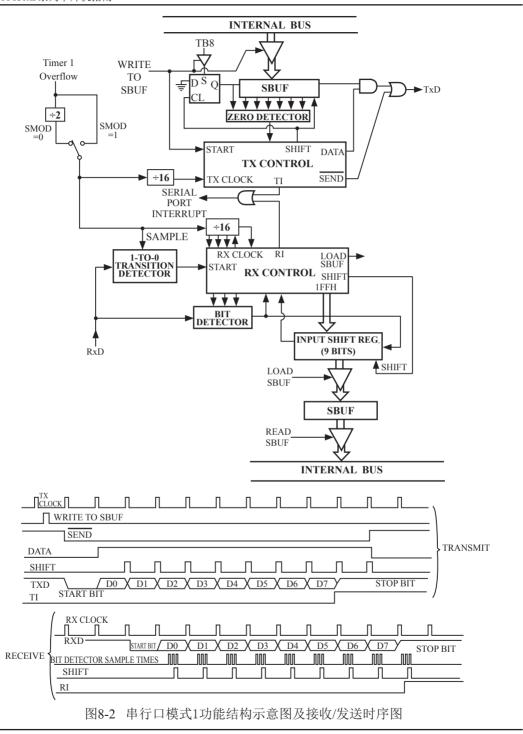
则接收到的数据有效,实现装载入SBUF,停止位进入RB8,置位RI,即RI=1,向主机请求中断,若上述两条件不能同时满足,则接收到的数据作废并丢失,无论条件满足与否,接收器重又检测RxD端口上的"1"→"0"的跳变,继续下一帧的接收。接收有效,在响应中断后,必须由软件清0,即RI=0。通常情况下,串行通信工作于模式1时,SM2设置为"0"。

串行通信模式1的波特率是可变的,可变的波特由定时器/计数器1产生。

串行通信模式1的波特率=2^{SMOD}/32×(定时器/计数器1溢出率)

当T1x12=0时,定时器1的溢出率=SYSclk/12/(256-TH1);

当T1x12 = 1时, 定时器1的溢出率 = SYSclk / (256 - TH1)



8.2.3 串行口工作模式2:9位UART.波特率固定

当SM0、SM1两位为10时,串行口工作在模式2。串行口工作模式2为9位数据异步通信UART模式,其一帧的信息由11位组成:1位起始位,8位数据位(低位在先),1位可编程位(第9位数据)和1位停止位。发送时可编程位(第9位数据)由SCON中的TB8提供,可软件设置为1或0,或者可将PSW中的奇/偶校验位P值装入TB8(TB8既可作为多机通信中的地址数据标志位,又可作为数据的奇偶校验位)。接收时第9位数据装入SCON的RB8。TxD/P3.1为发送端口,RxD/P3.0为接收端口,以全双工模式进行接收/发送。

模式2的波特率为:

串行通信模式2波特率=2^{SMOD}/64×(SYSclk系统工作时钟频率)

上述波特率可通过软件对PCON中的SMOD位进行设置,当SMOD=1时,选择1/32(SYSclk);当SMOD=0时,选择1/64(SYSclk),故而称SMOD为波特率加倍位。可见,模式2的波特率基本上是固定的。

图8-3为串行通信模式2的功能结构示意图及其接收/发送时序图。

由图8-3可知,模式2和模式1相比,除波特率发生源略有不同,发送时由TB8提供给移位寄存器第9数据位不同外,其余功能结构均基本相同,其接收/发送操作过程及时序也基本相同。

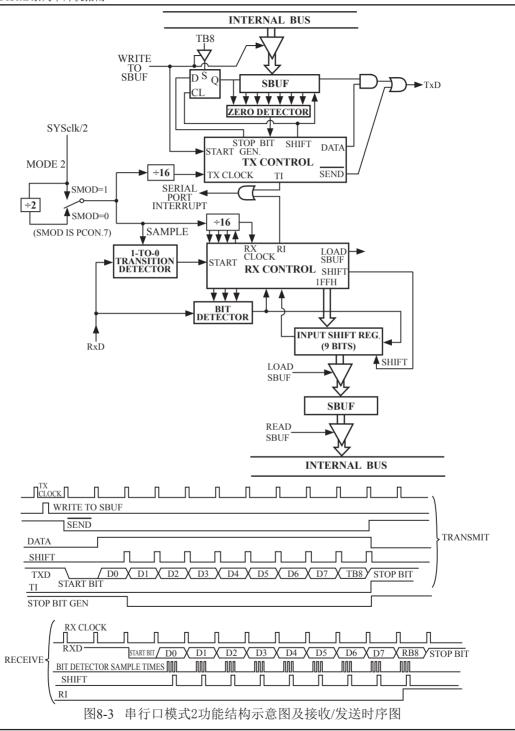
当接收器接收完一帧信息后必须同时满足下列条件:

- RI=0
- SM2=0或者SM2=1, 并且接收到的第9数据位RB8=1。

当上述两条件同时满足时,才将接收到的移位寄存器的数据装入SBUF和RB8中,并置位RI=1,向主机请求中断处理。如果上述条件有一个不满足,则刚接收到移位寄存器中的数据无效而丢失,也不置位RI。无论上述条件满足与否,接收器又重新开始检测RxD输入端口的跳变信息,接收下一帧的输入信息。

在模式2中,接收到的停止位与SBUF、RB8和RI无关。

通过软件对SCON中的SM2、TB8的设置以及通信协议的约定,为多机通信提供了方便。



8.2.4 串行口工作模式3:9位UART,波特率可变

当SM0、SM1两位为11时,串行口工作在模式3。串行通信模式3为9位数据异步通信UART模式,其一帧的信息由11位组成:1位起始位,8位数据位(低位在先),1位可编程位(第9位数据)和1位停止位。发送时可编程位(第9位数据)由SCON中的TB8提供,可软件设置为1或0,或者可将PSW中的奇/偶校验位P值装入TB8(TB8既可作为多机通信中的地址数据标志位,又可作为数据的奇偶校验位)。接收时第9位数据装入SCON的RB8。TxD/P3.1为发送端口,RxD/P3.0为接收端口,以全双工模式进行接收/发送。

模式3的波特率为:

串行通信模式3波特率=2^{SMOD}/32×(定时器/计数器1的溢出率)

当T1x12=0时,定时器1的溢出率=SYSclk/12/(256-TH1);

当T1x12 = 1时, 定时器1的溢出率 = SYSclk / (256 - TH1)

可见,模式3和模式1一样,其波特率可通过软件对定时器/计数器1或独立波特率发生器的设置进行波特率的选择,是可变的。

图8-4为串行口工作模式3的功能结构示意图及其接收/发送时序图。

由图8-4可知,模式3和模式1相比,除发送时由TB8提供给移位寄存器第9数据位不同外, 其余功能结构均基本相同,其接收**'发送操作过程及时序也基本相同**。

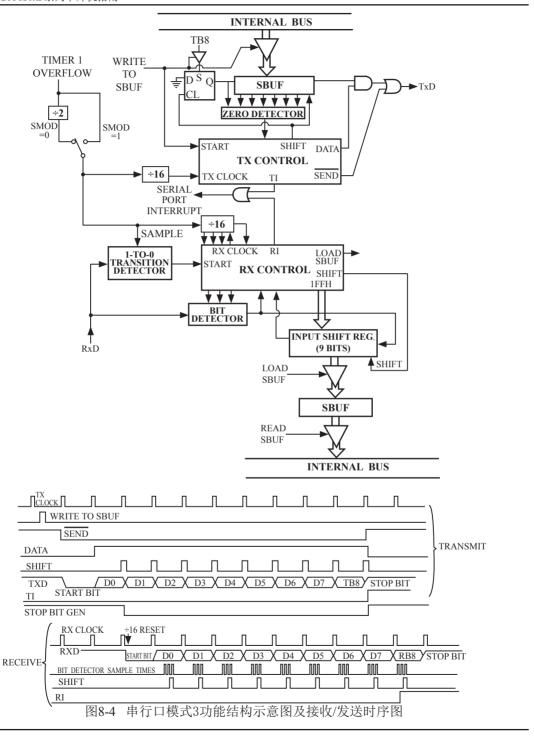
当接收器接收完一帧信息后必须同时满足下列条件:

- RI=0
- SM2=0或者SM2=1, 并且接收到的第9数据位RB8=1。

当上述两条件同时满足时,才将接收到的移位寄存器的数据装入SBUF和RB8中,并置位RI=1,向主机请求中断处理。如果上述条件有一个不满足,则刚接收到移位寄存器中的数据无效而丢失,也不置位RI。无论上述条件满足与否,接收器又重新开始检测RxD输入端口的跳变信息,接收下一帧的输入信息。

在模式3中,接收到的停止位与SBUF、RB8和RI无关。

通过软件对SCON中的SM2、TB8的设置以及通信协议的约定,为多机通信提供了方便。



8.3 串行通信中波特率的设置

STC12C5410AD系列单片机串行通信的波特率随所选工作模式的不同而异,对于工作模式 0和模式2, 其波特率与系统时钟频率SYSclk和PCON中的波特率选择位SMOD有关, 而模式1 和模式3的波特率除与SYSclk和PCON位有关外, 还与定时器/计数器1或BRT独立波特率发生器 设置有关。通过对定时器/计数器1或BRT独立波特率发生器的设置, 可选择不同的波特率, 所以这种波特率是可变的。

串行通信模式0,其波特率与系统时钟频率SYSclk有关。

当模式0的通信速度设置位UART M0x6/AUXR.5=0时, 其波特率=SYSclk/12。

当模式0的通信速度设置位UART M0x6/AUXR.5=1时, 其波特率=SYSclk/2。

一旦SYSclk选定且UART_M0x6/AUXR.5设置好,则串行通信工作模式0的波特率固定不变。

串行通信工作模式2,其波特率除与SYSclk有关外,还与SMOD位有关。

其基本表达式为: 串行通信模式2波特率=2^{SMOD}/64×(SYSclk系统工作时钟频率)

当SMOD=1时,波特率=2/64(SYSclk)=1/32(SYSclk);

当SMOD=0时,波特率=1/64(SYSclk)。

当SYSclk选定后,通过软件设置PCON中的SMOD位,可选择两种波特率。所以,这种模式的波特率基本固定。

串行通信模式1和3, 其波特率是可变的:

模式1、3波特率=2^{SMOD}/32×(定时器/计数器1的溢出率)

当T1x12 = 0时, 定时器1的溢出率 = SYSclk/12/(256-TH1);

当T1x12 = 1时, 定时器1的溢出率 = SYSclk / (256 - TH1)

通过对定时器/计数器1的设置,可灵活地选择不同的波特率。在实际应用中多半选用串行模式1或串行模式3。显然,为选择波特率,关键在于定时器/计数器1的溢出率的计算。SMOD的选择,只需根据需要执行下列指令就可实现SMOD=0或1:

MOV PCON, #00H ; 使SMOD=0 MOV PCON, #80H ; 使SMOD=1

SMOD只占用电源控制寄存器PCON的最高一位,其他各位的具体设置应根据实际情况而定。

为选择波特率,关键在于定时器/计数器1的溢出率。下面介绍如何计算定时器/计数器1的溢出率。

定时器/计数器1的溢出率定义为:单位时间(秒)内定时器/计数器1回0溢出的次数,即定时器/计数器1的溢出率=定时器/计数器1的溢出次数/秒。

STC12C5201AD系列单片机设有两个定时器/计数器,因定时器/计数器1具有4种工作方式,而常选用定时器/计数器1的工作方式2(8位自动重装)作为波特率的溢出率。

设置定时器/计数器1工作于定时模式的工作方式2(8位自动重装),TL1的计数输入来自于SYSclk经12分频或不分频(由T1x12/AUXR.6确定是12分频还是不分频)的脉冲。当T1x12/AUXR.6=0时,单片机工作在12T模式,TL1的计数输入来自于SYSclk经12分频的脉冲;当T1x12/AUXR.6=1时,单片机工作在1T模式,TL1的计数输入来自于SYSclk经12分频的脉冲。可见,定时器/计数器1的溢出率与SYSclk和自动重装值N有关,SYSclk越大,特别是N越大,溢出率也就越高。例如:当N=FFN,则每隔一个时钟即溢出一次(极限情况);若N=00H,则需每隔256个时钟才溢出一次;当SYSclk=6MHz且T1x12/AUXR.6=0时,一个时钟为2μs,当SYSclk=6MHz且T1x12/AUXR.6=1时,一个时钟为1μs,当SYSclk=6MHz且T1x12/AUXR.6=1时,一个时钟约为0.167μs(快12倍)。SYSclk=12MHz且T1x12/AUXR.6=0时,则一个时钟为1μs,当SYSclk=6MHz且T1x12/AUXR.6=1时,一个时钟约为0.083μs(快12倍)。对于一般情况下,

当T1x12/AUXR. 6=0时,定时器/计数器1溢出一次所需的时间为: $(2^8-N)\times 12$ 时钟= $(2^8-N)\times 12$ ×12时钟= $(2^8-N)\times 12$ ×12

当T1x12/AUXR. 6=1时,定时器/计数器1溢出一次所需的时间为: $(2^8-N)\times 1$ 时钟= $(2^8-N)\times \frac{1}{SYSclk}$

干是得定时器/计数器每秒溢出的次数,即

当T1x12/AUXR. 6=0时, 定时器/计数器1的溢出率=SYSclk/12×(28-N)(次/秒)

当T1x12/AUXR. 6=1时, 定时器/计数器1的溢出率=SYSclk×(28-N)(次/秒)

式中SYSclk为系统时钟频率,N为再装入时间常数。

下面现以定时器/计数器1工作于方式2为例,

- 设: T1x12/AUXR. 6=0, SYSclk=6MHz, N=FFH, 定时器/计数器1工作于方式2的溢出率为6×10 6 /{12×(256-255)} = 0.5×10 6 (次/秒);
- 设: T1x12/AUXR. 6=0, SYSclk=12MHz, N=FFH, 定时器/计数器1工作于方式2的溢出率 = 1×10⁶(次/秒);
- 设: T1x12/AUXR. 6=0, SYSclk=12MHz, N=00H, 定时器/计数器1工作于方式2的溢出率 = 12×10⁶/12×256≈3906(次/秒)
- 设: T1x12/AUXR. 6=1, SYSclk=6MHz, N=FFH, 定时器/计数器1工作于方式2的溢出率为6×10⁶/(256-255) = 6×10⁶(次/秒);
- 设: T1x12/AUXR. 6=1, SYSclk=12MHz, N=00H, 定时器/计数器1工作于方式2的溢出率 = 12×10⁶/256 = 46875(次/秒)

下表给出各种常用波特率与定时器/计数器1各参数之间的关系。

常用波特率与定时器/计数器1各参数关系(T1x12/AUXR.6=0)

常用波特率	系统时钟频率	SMOD		定时器1			
四/11/2/10 平	(MHz)	SWIOD	C/T	方式	重新装入值		
方式0 MAX: 1M	12	×	×	×	×		
方式2 MAX: 375	K 12	1	×	×	×		
方式1和3 62.5	5K 12	1	0	2	FFH		
19.2	2K 11.059	1	0	2	FDH		
9.6	K 11.059	0	0	2	FDH		
4.8	11.050	0	0	2	FAH		
2.4	1 11 059	0	0	2	F4H		
	1 11.059	0	0	2	F8H		
1.2	11.700	0	0	2	1DH		
137	7.5 6	0	0	2	72H		
11 11	1 12	0	0	1	FFFBH		

设置波特率的初始化程序段如下:

:

MOV TMOD, #20H ; 设置定时器/计数器1定时、工作方式2

MOV TH1, #××H ; 设置定时常数N

MOV TL1, $\#\times\times H$

SETB TR1 ; 启动定时器/计数器1

MOV PCON, #80H ; 设置SMOD=1

MOV SCON, #50H ; 设置串行通信方式1

:

执行上述程序段后,即可完成对定时器/计数器1的操作方式及串行通信的工作方式和波特率的设置。

由于用其他工作方式设置波特率计算方法较复杂,一般应用较少,故不一一论述。

8.4 串行口的测试程序

1. C程序:

```
/*_____*/
/* --- STC MCU Limited -----*/
/* --- 演示STC 1T 系列单片机串行口功能 (8-bit/9-bit) -----*/
/* 如果要在程序中使用或在文章中引用该程序, -----*/
/* 请在程序中或文章中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 -----*/
#include "reg51.h"
#include "intrins.h"
typedef unsigned char
                      BYTE;
typedef unsigned int
                      WORD;
#define FOSC
               18432000L
                                            //System frequency
#define BAUD 9600
                                            //UART baudrate
/*Define UART parity mode*/
#define NONE PARITY 0
                                            //None parity
#define ODD PARITY
                      1
                                            //Odd parity
#define EVEN PARITY
                                            //Even parity
#define MARK PARITY 3
                                            //Mark parity
#define SPACE PARITY
                                            //Space parity
#define PARITYBIT
                                            //Testing even parity
                      EVEN PARITY
shit
       bit9 = P2^2:
                                            //P2.2 show UART data bit9
hit
       busy;
void SendData(BYTE dat);
void SendString(char *s);
void main()
#if (PARITYBIT == NONE PARITY)
                                            //8-bit variable UART
       SCON = 0x50;
#elif (PARITYBIT == ODD PARITY) || (PARITYBIT == EVEN PARITY) || (PARITYBIT == MARK PARITY)
       SCON = 0xda;
                                            //9-bit variable UART, parity bit initial to 1
#elif (PARITYBIT == SPACE PARITY)
       SCON = 0xd2;
                                            //9-bit variable UART, parity bit initial to 0
#endif
```

```
//Set Timer1 as 8-bit auto reload mode
         TMOD = 0x20:
         TH1
                  = TL1 = -(FOSC/12/32/BAUD);
                                                       //Set auto-reload vaule
         TR1
                                                       //Timer1 start run
         ES
                                                       //Enable UART interrupt
                  = 1;
                                                       //Open master interrupt switch
         EΑ
                  = 1;
         SendString("STC12C5410AD\r\nUart Test !\r\n");
         while(1);
UART interrupt service routine
*/
void Uart Isr() interrupt 4 using 1
         if (RI)
                                                       //Clear receive interrupt flag
                  RI = 0;
                  P0 = SBUF;
                                                       //P0 show UART data
                  bit9 = RB8;
                                                       //P2.2 show parity bit
         if (TI)
                  TI = 0;
                                                       //Clear transmit interrupt flag
                  busy = 0;
                                                       //Clear transmit busy flag
Send a byte data to UART
Input: dat (data to be sent)
Output:None
*/
void SendData(BYTE dat)
         while (busy);
                                                       //Wait for the completion of the previous data is sent
         ACC = dat;
                                                       //Calculate the even parity bit P (PSW.0)
         if (P)
                                                       //Set the parity bit according to P
         #if (PARITYBIT == ODD PARITY)
                  TB8 = 0;
                                                       //Set parity bit to 0
         #elif (PARITYBIT == EVEN PARITY)
                  TB8 = 1;
                                                       //Set parity bit to 1
         #endif
```

```
else
         #if (PARITYBIT == ODD PARITY)
                                                              //Set parity bit to 1
                 TB8 = 1;
         #elif (PARITYBIT == EVEN PARITY)
                 TB8 = 0;
                                                              //Set parity bit to 0
         #endif
                 busy = 1;
                 SBUF = ACC;
                                                              //Send data to UART buffer
}
Send a string to UART
Input: s (address of string)
Output:None
*/
void SendString(char *s)
{
         while (*s)
                                                              //Check the end of the string
                 SendData(*s++);
                                                              //Send current char and increment string ptr
```

2. 汇编程序:

```
/*____*/
/* --- STC MCU Limited -----*/
/* --- 演示STC 1T 系列单片机串行口功能 (8-bit/9-bit) -----*/
/* 如果要在程序中使用或在文章中引用该程序, -----*/
/* 请在程序中或文章中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 -----*/
;/*Define UART parity mode*/
#define NONE PARITY 0
                                       //None parity
#define ODD PARITY
                                       //Odd parity
#define EVEN PARITY
                                       //Even parity
#define MARK PARITY 3
                                       //Mark parity
#define SPACE PARITY 4
                                       //Space parity
#define PARITYBIT
                EVEN PARITY
                                       //Testing even parity
BUSY BIT
             20H.0
                                       transmit busy flag
:-----
      ORG
             0000H
      LJMP
             MAIN
      ORG
             0023H
      LJMP
             UART ISR
·-----
      ORG
             0100H
MAIN:
      CLR
             BUSY
      CLR
             EA
      MOV
             SP.
                   #3FH
#if (PARITYBIT == NONE PARITY)
      MOV
             SCON, #50H
                                       :8-bit variable UART
#elif (PARITYBIT == ODD PARITY) || (PARITYBIT == EVEN PARITY) || (PARITYBIT == MARK PARITY)
             SCON, #0DAH
                                       ;9-bit variable UART, parity bit initial to 1
      MOV
#elif (PARITYBIT == SPACE PARITY)
             SCON. #0D2H
                                       ;9-bit variable UART, parity bit initial to 0
      MOV
#endif
```

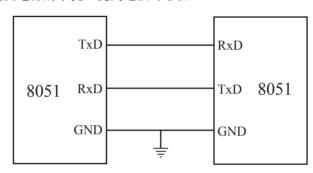
	MOV MOV	TMOD, A,	#20H #0FBH	;Set Timer1 as 8-bit auto reload mode ;256-18432000/12/32/9600
	MOV	TH1,	A A	;Set auto-reload vaule
	MOV SETB SETB SETB	TL1, TR1 ES EA	A	;Timer1 start run ;Enable UART interrupt ;Open master interrupt switch
ŕ	LCALL	DPTR, SENDS	#TESTSTR FRING	;Load string address to DPTR ;Send string
,	SJMP	\$		
*	R: DB		;Test string C5410AD Uart Test !",	0DH,0AH,0
;UART2	interrupt	service ro	utine	
; UART I	SR:	*/		
_	PUSH PUSH	ACC PSW		
	JNB CLR	RI, RI	CHECKTI	;Check RI bit ;Clear RI bit
	MOV MOV	P0, C,	SBUF RB8	;P0 show UART data
CHECK	MOV	P2.2,	C	;P2.2 show parity bit
CHECK	JNB CLR	TI, TI	ISR_EXIT	;Check S2TI bit ;Clear S2TI bit
ISR_EX	CLR IT:	BUSY		;Clear transmit busy flag
	POP POP RETI	PSW ACC		
;Send a t ;Input: A ;Output:	oyte data t CC (data None	o UART to be sent)	
SENDD.	ATA: JB MOV JNB	BUSY, ACC, P,	\$ A EVEN1INACC	;Wait for the completion of the previous data is sent ;Calculate the even parity bit P (PSW.0) ;Set the parity bit according to P

```
ODD1INACC:
#if (PARITYBIT == ODD PARITY)
                                                ;Set parity bit to 0
       CLR
               TB8
#elif (PARITYBIT == EVEN PARITY)
        SETB
               TB8
                                                ;Set parity bit to 1
#endif
        SJMP
               PARITYBITOK
EVEN1INACC:
#if (PARITYBIT == ODD PARITY)
        SETB
               TB8
                                                ;Set parity bit to 1
#elif (PARITYBIT == EVEN PARITY)
                                                ;Set parity bit to 0
       CLR
               TB8
#endif
PARITYBITOK:
                                                ;Parity bit set completed
        SETB
               BUSY
        MOV
               SBUF, A
                                                :Send data to UART buffer
        RET
·/*_____
;Send a string to UART
;Input: DPTR (address of string)
;Output:None
;----*/
SENDSTRING:
       CLR
               Α
        MOVC A,
                        @A+DPTR
                                                :Get current char
       JΖ
               STRINGEND
                                                ;Check the end of the string
       INC
               DPTR
                                                ;increment string ptr
       LCALL SENDDATA
                                                ;Send current char
       SJMP
               SENDSTRING
                                                ;Check next
STRINGEND:
       RET
       END
```

8.5 双机通信

STC12C5410AD系列单片机的串行通信根据其应用可分为双机通信和多机通信两种。下面 先介绍双机通信。

如果两个8051应用系统相距很近,可将它们的串行端口直接相连(TXD—RXD,RXD—TXD,GND—GND—地),即可实现双机通信。为了增加通信距离,减少通道及电源干扰,可采用RS—232C或RS—422、RS—485标准进行双机通信,两通信系统之间采用光—电隔离技术,以减少通道及电源的干扰,提高通信可靠性。



为确保通信成功,通信双方必须在软件上有系列的约定通常称为软件通信"协议"。现举例简介双机异步通信软件"协议"如下:

通信双方均选用2400波特的传输速率,设系统的主频SYSclk=6MHz,甲机发送数据,乙机接收数据。在双机开始通信时,先由甲机发送一个呼叫信号(例如"06H"),以询问乙机是否可以接收数据;乙机接收到呼叫信号后,若同意接收数据,则发回"00H"作为应答信号,否则发"05H"表示暂不能接收数据,;甲机只有在接收到乙机的应答信号"00H"后才可将存储在外部数据存储器中的内容逐一发送给乙机,否则继续向乙机发呼叫信号,直到乙机同意接收。其发送数据格式如下:

字节数n	数据1	数据2	数据3	•••	数据n	累加校验和

字节数n: 甲机向乙机发送的数据个数:

数据1~数据n: 甲机将向乙机发送的n帧数据:

累加校验和:为字节数n、数据1、…、数据n,这(n+1)个字节内容的算术累加和.

乙机根据接收到的"校验和"判断已接收到的n个数据是否正确。若接收正确,向甲机回发"0FH"信号,否则回发"F0H"信号。甲机只有在接收到乙机发回的"0FH"信号才算完成发送任务,返回被调用的程序,否则继续呼叫,重发数据。

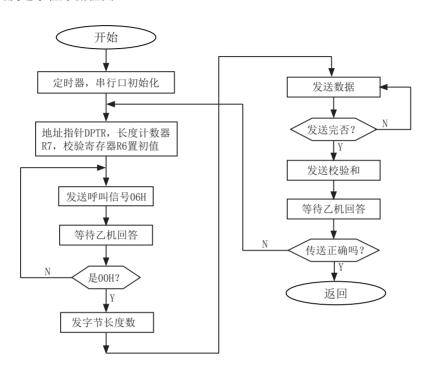
不同的通信要求,软件"协议"内容也不一样,有关需甲、乙双方共同遵守的约定应尽量 完善,以防止通信不能正确判别而失败。

STC12C5410AD系列单片机的串行通信,可直接采用查询法,也可采用自动中断法。

(1) 查询方式双机通信软件举例

①甲机发送子程序段

下图为甲机发送子程序流程图。



甲机发送程序设置:

- (a) 波特率设置:选用定时器/计数器1定时模式、工作方式2,计数常数F3H,SMOD=1。波特率为2400(位/秒):
- (b) 串行通信设置: 异步通信方式1, 允许接收;
- (c) 内部RAM和工作寄存器设置:31H和30H单元存放发送的数据块首地址;2FH单元存放 发送的数据块个数;R6为累加和寄存器。

甲机发送子程序清单:

```
START:
           TMOD, #20H
                             : 设置定时器/计数器1定时、工作方式2
     MOV
     MOV
                             : 设置定时计数常数
           TH1,
                 #0F3H
     MOV
           TL1.
                 #0F3H
                             : 串口初始化
     MOV
           SCON, #50H
           PCON, #80H
                             : 设置SMOD=1
     MOV
     SETB
           TR1
                             : 启动定时
ST-RAM:
     MOV
           DPH,
                 31H
                             ; 设置外部RAM数据指针
     MOV
           DPL,
                 30H
                             ; DPTR初值
     MOV
           R7,
                 2FH
                             : 发送数据块数送R7
     MOV
           R6,
                 #00H
                             : 累加和寄存器R6清0
TX-ACK:
     MOV
           A, #06H
                               广发送呼叫信号"06H"
     MOV
           SBUF, A
WAIT1:
                             : 等待发送完呼叫信号
     JBC
           T1.
                 RX - YES
     SJMP
           WAIT1
                             ; 未发送完转WATI1
RX-YES:
                            ; 判断乙机回答信号
     JBC
           RI,
                 NEXT1
                             : 未收到回答信号,则等待
           RX-YES
     SJMP
NEXT1:
     MOV
           Α,
                 SBUF
                            接收回答信号送A
     CJNE
           Α,
                 #00H,
                      TX-ACK; 判断是否"00H", 否则重发呼叫信号
TX-BYT:
     MOV
                 R7
           A,
                              」 发送数据块数n
     MOV
           SBUF
                 Α
     ADD
                 R6
           A,
     MOV
           R6.
                 Α
WAIT2:
     JBC
           TI.
                 TX-NES
     JMP
           WAIT2
                               等待发送完
TX-NES:
                             ; 从外部RAM取发送数据
     MOVX A,
                 @DPTR
                             ; 发送数据块
     MOV
           SBUF.
                 Α
           A,
     ADD
                 R6
     MOV
           R6,
                 Α
     INC
           DPTR
                             ; DPTR指针加1
```

```
WAIT3:
     JBC
          TI. NEXT2
                          : 判断一数据块发送完否
     SJMP
         WAIT3
                          : 等待发送完
NEXT2:
          R7, TX-NES
     DJNZ
                        ; 判断发送全部结束否
TX-SUM:
     MOV
          A, R6
                          ; 发送累加和给乙机
     MOV
          SBUF, A
WAIT4:
     JBC TI, RX-0FH
                            等待发送完
     SJMP WAIT4
RX-0FH:
     JBC
         RI, IF-0FH
     SJMP RX-0FH
                          ; 】等待接收乙机回答信号
IF-0FH:
          A, SBUF;
     MOV
         A, #0FH, ST-RAM; J 判断传输是否正确,否则重新发送
     CJNE
     RET
```

乙机接收子程序段

接收程序段的设置:

- (a) 波特率设置初始化: 同发送程序;
- (b) 串行通信初始化: 同发送程序;
- (c) 寄存器设置:

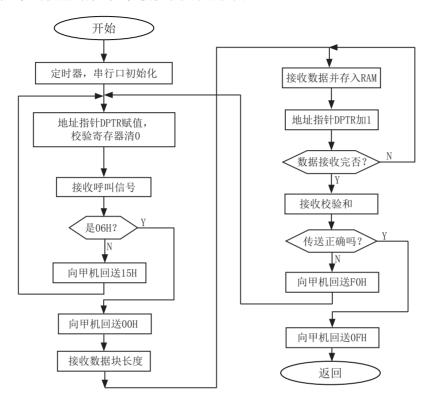
内部RAM 31H、30H单元存放接收数据缓冲区首地址。

R7——数据块个数寄存器。

R6——累加和寄存器。

(d) 向甲机回答信号: "0FH"为接收正确, "F0H"为传送出错, "00H"为同意接收数据, "05H"为暂不接收。

下图为双机通信查询方式乙机接收子程序流程图。



接收子程序清单:

TART:

```
MOV
           TMOD, #20H
     MOV
           TH1,
                 #0F3H
                                    ;
     MOV
           TL1,
                 #0F3H
                                    : 」定时器/计数器1设置
      SETB
           TR1
                                    ; 启动定时器/计数器1
     MOV
           SCON, #50H
                                     置串行通信方式1,允许接收
     MOV
           PCON, #80H
                                     SMOD置位
ST-RAM:
     MOV
           DPH,
                 31H
                                     设置DPTR首地址
      MOV
           DPL,
                  30H
     MOV
           R6,
                 #00H
                                    ;校验和寄存器清0
```

```
RX-ACK:
    JBC RI, IF-06H ; 判断接收呼叫信号
    SJMP RX-ACK
                     : 等待接收呼叫信号
IF-06H.
                    ;呼叫信号送A
    MOV A, SBUF
    CJNEA #06H, TX-05H
                      : 判断呼叫信号正确否?
TX-00H:
    MOV A, #00H
                        ►

向甲机发送"00H", 同意接收
    MOV SBUF, A
WAIT1:
    JBC TI, RX-BYS : 等待应答信号发送完
    SJMP WAIT1
TX-05H:
    MOV A, #05H : 向甲机发送 "05H" 呼叫
        SBUF, A
    MOV
                     : 不正确信号
WAIT2:
        TI, HAVE1 : 等待发送完
    JBC
    SJMP WAIT2
HAVE1:
                     : 因呼叫错, 返回重新接收呼叫
    LJMP RX-ACK
RX-BYS:
    JBC
        RI, HAVE2
                      ; 等待接收数据块个数
    SJMP RX-BYS
HAVE2:
    MOV A, SBUF
        R7, A
    MOV
                      : 数据块个数帧送R7.R6
    MOV R6, A
RX-NES:
    JBC RI, HAVE3
    SJMP RX-NES
HAVE3:
    MOV A, SBUF
    MOVX @DPTR, A
                      ;接收到的数据存入外部RAM
    INC
        DPTR
    ADD A, R6
    MOV R6, A
                       形成累加和
    DJNZ R7, RX-NES
                      ; 判断数据是否接收完
```

RX-SUM: IBC RI, HAVE4 RX-SUM 等待接收校验和 SJMP HAVE4: MOV Α, SBUF 判断传输是否正确 CINE Α. R6. TX-FRR TX-RIT: MOV Α, #0FH MOV SBUF, A 向甲机发送接收正确信息 WAIT3: JBC TI. GOOD 等待发送结束 WAIT3 SJMP TX-ERR: MOV Α, #0F0H ; 向甲机发送传输有误信号 MOV SBUF, A WAIT4: JBC : 等待发送完 TI, **AGAIN** SJMP WAIT4 AGAIN: LJMP ST-RAM : 返回重新开始接收 GOOD: RET : 传输下确返回

(2) 中断方式双机通信软件举例

在很多应用场合,双机通信的双方或一方采用中断方式以提高通信效率。由于STC-12C5410AD系列单片机的串行通信是双工的,且中断系统只提供一个中断矢量入口地址,所以实际上是中断和查询必须相结合,即接收/发送均可各自请求中断,响应中断时主机并不知道是谁请求中断,统一转入同一个中断矢量入口,必须由中断服务程序查询确定并转入对应的服务程序进行处理。

这里,任以上述协议为例,甲方(发送方)任以查询方式通信(从略),乙方(接收方)则改用中断一**查询方式进行通信。**

在中断接收服务程序中,需设置三个标志位来判断所接收的信息是呼叫信号还是数据块个数,是数据还是校验和。增设寄存器:内部RAM32H单元为数据块个数寄存器,33H单元为校验和寄存器,位地址7FH、7EH、7DH为标志位。

乙机接收中断服务程序清单

0000H

ORG

MOV

MOV

SETB

SETB

30H, #00H

33H, #00H

EΑ

ES

采用中断方式时,应在主程序中安排定时器/计数器、串行通信等初始化程序。通信接收的数据存放在外 部RAM的首地址也需在主程序中确定。

主程序:

```
: 转至主程序起始处
     AJMP
           START
     ORG
           0023H
     LIMP
           SERVE
                            ; 转中断服务程序处
START:
                            ; 定义定时器/计数器1定时、工作方式2
     MOV
           TMOD, #20H
     MOV
           TH1, #0F3H
                            : 【设置波特率为2400位/秒
     MOV
           TL1, #0F3H
     MOV
           SCON, #50H
                            ;设置串行通信方式1,允许接收
     MOV
           PCON, #80H
                            : 设置SMOD=1
     SETB
           TR1
                            ; 启动定时器
     SETB
           7FH
     SETB
           7EH
                            ;设置标志位为1
     SETB
           7DH
     MOV
           31H, #10H
                             规定接收的数据存储于外部RAM的
```

起始地址1000H

: 累加和单元清0

开中断

```
中断服务程序:
SERVE:
    CLR
                        : 关中断
         EA
    CLR
                        ;清除接收中断请求标志
         RI
    PUSH
         DPH
    PUSH
         DPL
                        ; 现场保护
    PUSH
         Α
                       : 判断是否是呼叫信号
    IB
         7FH, RXACK
    JB
         7EH, RXBYS
                       ; 判断是否是数据块数据
         7DH, RXDATA
    JB
                       : 判断是否是接收数据帧
RXSUM:
     MOV A, SBUF
                      :接收到的校验和
    CJNE
         A, 33H, TXERR
                       : 判断传输是否正确
TXRI:
    MOV A, #0FH
    MOV
         SBUF, A
WAIT1:
    JNB
                        ; 等待发送完毕
         TI, WAITI
    CLR
         ΤI
                        :清除发送中断请求标志位
         AGAIN
                        : 转结束处理
     SJMP
TXERR:
    MOV
         A, #0F0H
                          √ 向甲机发送接收出错信号 "F0H"
    MOV
         SBUF, A
WAIT2:
    JNB
                      : 等待发送完毕
         TI, WAIT2
    CLR
                        ;清除发送中断请求标志
         ΤI
     SJMP
         AGAIN
                        ; 转结束处理
RXACK:
    MOV A, SBUF
                      : 判断是否是呼叫信号"06H"
    XRL
                       ; 异或逻辑处理
         Α,
             #06H
```

; 是呼叫,则转TXREE

; "05H",要求重发呼叫

;接收到的不是呼叫信号,则向甲机发送

JZ

TXNACK:

TXREE

MOV A, #05H

MOV SBUF, A

```
WAIT3:
     JNB
                             : 等待发送结束
           TI.
                 WAIT3
     CLR
           ΤI
                             ; 转恢复现场处理
     SJMP
           RETURN
TXREE:
     MOV
           Α,
                 #00H
                             ;接收到的是呼叫信号,发送"00H"
                             :接收到的是呼叫信号,发送"00H"
     MOV
           SBUF,
WAIT4:
     JNB
                             : 等待发送完毕
           TI,
                 WAIT4
     CLR
           ΤI
                             ; 清除TI标志
     CLR
           7FH
                             : 清除呼叫标志
     SJMP
                             ; 转恢复现场处理
           RETURN
RXBYS:
     MOV
           Α,
                 SBUF
                             ;接收到数据块数
     MOV
                             ; 存入32H单元
           32H,
                 Α
     ADD
           Α,
                 33H
     MOV
                             ; 「形成累加和
           33H,
                 Α
     CLR
           7EH
                             ;清除数据块数标志
     SJMP
           RETURN
                             ; 转恢复现场处理
RXDATA:
     MOV
           DPH,
                 31H
                               设置存储数据地址指针
     MOV
           DPL,
                 30H
     MOV
           Α.
                 SBUF
                             : 读取数据帧
     MOVX @DPTR, A
                             ; 将数据存外部RAM
     INC
           DPTR
                             ; 地址指针加1
     MOV
           31H,
                 DPH
     MOV
           30H,
                 DPL
                                保存地址指针值
     ADD
           Α,
                 33H
     MOV
                              形成累加和
           33H,
                 Α
                             ; 判断数据接收完否
     DJNZ
           32H,
                 RETURN
     CLR
           7DH
                             ;清数据接收完标志
     SJMP
           RETURN
                             : 转恢复现场处理
```

AGAIN:

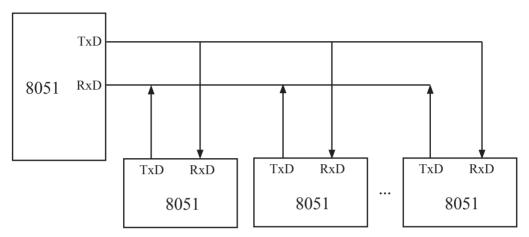
```
SETB
            7FH
      SETB
            7EH
                              ;恢复标志位
      SETB
            7DH
      MOV
                              ; 累加和单元清0
            33H,
                  #00H
      MOV
            31H,
                  #10H
                              ; 「恢复接收数据缓冲区首地址
      MOV
            30H.
                  #00H
RETURN:
      POP
            Α
      POP
           DPL
                              ; 恢复现场
      POP
           DPH
      SETB
           EA
                              ; 开中断
                              ; 返回
      RET1
```

上述程序清单中,ORG为程序段说明伪指令,在程序汇编时,它向汇编程序说明该程序段的起始地址。

在实际应用中情况多种多样,而且是两台独立的计算机之间进行信息传输。因此,应周密考虑通信协议,以保证通信的正确性和成功率

8.6 多机通信

在很多实际应用系统中,需要多台微计算机协调工作。STC12C5410AD系列单片机的串行通信方式2和方式3具有多机通信功能,可构成各种分布式通信系统。下图为全双工主从式 多机通信系统的连接框图。



上图为一台主机和几台从机组成的全双工多机通信系统。主机可与任一台从机通信,而从机之间的通信必须通过知己转发。

(1) 多机通信的基本原理

在多机通信系统中,为保证主机(发送)与多台从机(接收)之间能可靠通信,串行通信必须具备识别能力。MCS-51系列单片机的串行通信控制寄存器SCON中设有多机通信选择位SM2。当程序设置SM2=1,串行通信工作于方式2或方式8,发送端通过对TB8的设置以区别于发送的是地址帧(TB8=1)还是数据帧(TB8=0),接收端通过对接收到RB8进行识别:当SM2=1,若接收到RB8=1,则被确认为呼叫地址帧,将该帧内容装入SBUF中,并置位RI=1,向CPU请求中断,进行地址呼叫处理;若RB8=0为数据帧,将不予理睬,接收的信息被丢弃。若SM2=0,则无论是地址帧还是数据帧均接收,并置位RI=1,向CPU请求中断,将该帧内容装入SBUF。据此原理,可实现多机通信。

对于上图的从机式多机通信系统,从机的地址为0,1,2,…,n。实现多机通信的过程如下:

- ① 置全部从机的SM2=1,处于只接收地址帧状态。
- ② 主机首先发送呼叫地址帧信息,将TB8设置为1,以表示发送的是 呼叫地址帧。
- ③ 所有从机接收到呼叫地址帧后,各自将接收到的主机呼叫的地址与本机的地址相比较:若比较结果相等,则为被寻址从机,清除SM2=0,准备接收从主机发送的数据帧,直至全部数据传输完;若比较不相等,则为非寻址从机,任维持SM2=1不变,对其后发来的数据帧不予理睬,即接收到的数据帧内容不装入SBUF,不置位,RI=0,不会产生中断请求,直至被寻址为止。

- ④ 主机在发送完呼叫地址帧后,接着发送一连串的数据帧,其中的 TB8=0,以表示为数据帧。
- ⑤ 当主机改变从机通信时间则再发呼叫地址帧,寻呼其他从机,原先

被寻址的从机经分析得知主机在寻呼其他从机时,恢复其SM2=1,**对其后主机发送的数据** 帧不予理睬。

上述过程均在软件控制下实现。

(2) 多机通信协议简述

由于串行通信是在二台或多台各自完全独立的系统之间进行信息传

输这就需要根据时间通信要求制定某些约定,作为通信规范遵照执行,协议要求严格、完善,不同的通信要求,协议的内容也不相同。在多机通信系统中要考虑的问题较多,协议内容比较复杂。这里仅例举几条作一说明。

上图的主从式多机通信系统,允许配置255台从机,各从机的地址分别为00H~FEH。

- ① 约定地址FFH为全部从机的控制命令,命令各从机恢复SM2=1状态,准备接收主机的地址呼叫。
- ② 主机和从机的联络过程约定:主机首先发送地址呼叫帧,被寻址的从机回送本机地址给主机,经验证地址相符后主机再向被寻址的从机发送命令字,被寻址的从机根据命令字要求回送本机的状态,若主机判断状态正常,主机即开始发送或接收数据帧,发送或接收的第一帧为传输数据块长度。
- ③ 约定主机发送的命令字为:

00H: 要求从机接收数据块;

01H: 要求从机发送数据块:

•

其他: 非法命令。

④ 从机的状态字格式约定为:

В7	В6	В5	B4	В3	B2	B1	В0
ERR	0	0	0	0	0	TRDY	RRDY

定义: 若ERR=1,从机接收到非法命令; 若TRDY=1,从机发送准备就绪; 若RRDY=1,从机接收准备就绪;

⑤ 其他: 如传输出错措施等。

(3) 程序举例

在实际应用中如传输波特率不太高,系统实时性有一定要求以及希望提高通信效率,则 多半采用中断控制方式,但程序调试较困难,这就要求提高程序编制的正确性。采用查询方 式,则程序调试较方便。这里仅以中断控制方式为例简单介绍主—从机之间一对一通信软件。

① 主机发送程序

该主机要发送的数据存放在内部RAM中,数据块的首地址为51H,数据块长度存放做50H单元中,有关发送前的初始化、参数设置等采用子程序格式,所有信息发送均由中断服务程序完成。当主机需要发送时,在完成发送子程序的调用之后,随即返回主程序继续执行。以后只需查询PSW•5的F0标志位的状态即可知道数据是否发送完毕。

要求主机向#5从机发送数据,中断服务程序选用工作寄存存器区1的R0~R7。

主机发送程序清单:

	ORG	0000H			
	AJMP	MAIN		;	转主程序
	ORG	0023H		;	发送中断服务程序入口
	LJMP	SERVE		;	转中断服务程序
	•				
MAIN:				;	主程序
	:				
	•				
	ORG	1000H		;	发送子程序入口
TXCAL	L:				
	MOV	TMOD,	#20H	;	设置定时器/计数器1定时、方式2
	MOV	TH1,	#0F3H	;	设置波特率为2400位/秒
	MOV	TL1,	#0F3H	;	置位SMOD
	MOV	PCON,	#80H	;	
	SETB	TR1		;	启动定时器/计数器1
	MOV	SCON,	#0D8H	;	串行方式8, 允许接收, TB8=1
	SETB	EA		;	开中断总控制位
	CLR	ES		;	禁止串行通信中断
TXADD	R:				
	MOV	SBUF,	#05H	;	发送呼叫从机地址
WAIT1:					
	JNB	TI,	WAIT1	;	等待发送完毕
	CLR	TI		;	复位发送中断请求标志

RXADDR: JNB : 等待从机回答本机地址 RI, RXADDR ; 复位接收中断请求标志 CLR ΤI MOV Α, **SBUF** ; 读取从机回答的本机地址 : 判断呼叫地址符否, 否则重发 CJNE Α. #05H, TXADDR CLR TB8 ; 地址相符, 复位TB8=0, 准备发数据 CLR PSW. 5 : 复位F0=0标志位 MOV 08H, #50H : 发送数据地址指针送R0 MOV : 数据块长度送R4 0CH, 50H INC 0CH ;数据块长度加1 **SETB** ES : 允许串行通信中断 RET : 返回主程序 SERVE: CLR ΤI : 中断服务程序段, 清中断请求标志TI PUSH **PSW** PUSH Α CLR RS1 RS0 选择工作寄存器区1 SETB TXDATA: SBUF, @R0 : 发送数据块长度及数据 MOV WAIT2. ; 等待发送完毕 JNB TI, WAIT2 : 复位TI=0 CLR ΤI INC R0; 地址指针加1 DJNZ R4, **RETURN** ;数据块未发送完,转返回 **SETB** PSW. 5 : 已发送完毕置位F0=1 CLR ES ; 关闭串行中断 RETURN: POP Α POP **PSW** 恢复现场 **RETI**

②从机接收程序

主机发送的地址呼叫帧,所有的从机均接收,若不是呼叫本机地址即从中断返回;若是本机地址,则回送本机地址给主机作为应答,并开始接收主机发送来的数据块长度帧,并存放于内部RAM的60H单元中,紧接着接收的数据帧存放于61H为首地址的内部RAM单元中,程序中还选用20·0H、20·1H位作标志位,用来判断接收的是地址、数据块长度还是数据,选用了2FH、2EH两个字节单元用于存放数据字节数和存储数据指针。#5从机的接收程序如下,供参考。

```
#5从机接收程序清单:
     ORG
           0000H
     AJMP
           START
                             : 转主程序段
     ORG
           0023H
     LJMP
           SERVE
                             ; 从中断入口转中断服务程序
     ORG
           0100H
START:
     MOV
                             ; 主程序段: 初始化程序, 设置定时
           TMOD, #20H
     MOV
           TH1.
                             ;器/计数器1定时、工作方式2,设
                 #0F3H
     MOV
           TL1.
                             : 置波特率为2400位/秒的有关初值
                 #0F3H
                             : 置位SMOD
     MOV
           PCON, #80H
     MOV
           SCON, #0F0H
                             ;设置串行方式3,允许接收,SM2=1
     SETB
           TR1
                             : 启动定时器/计数器1
     SETB
           20 • 0
     SETB
           20 • 1
                                 置标志位为1
     SETB
           EA
                                 开中断
     SETB
           ES
      ORG
           1000H
SERVE:
                             ;清接收请求中断标志RI=0
     CLR
           RΙ
     PUSH
     PUSH
                                现场保护
           PSW
     CLR
           RS1
     SETB
           RS0
                               选择工作寄存器区1
     JΒ
           20 • 0H,
                   ISADDR
                             ; 判断是否是地址帧
                   ISBYTE
                             : 判断是否是数据块长度帧
     JΒ
           20 • 1H,
```

ISDATA: MOV R0, 2EH : 数据指针送R0 MOV Α, **SBUF** : 接收数据 MOV @R0. INC 2EH : 数据指针加1 DJNZ 2FH, : 判断数据接收完否? RETURN SETB 20 • 0H 20 · 1H :恢复标志位 SETB SETB SM2 SJMP RETURN : 转入恢复现场, 返回 ISADDR: MOV ; 是地址呼叫, 判断与本机地址 Α, **SBUF CJNE** Α, RETURN 相符否,不符则转返回 #05H, SBUF, #01H MOV :相符,发回答信号"01H" WAIT: JNB : 等待发送结束 TI, WAIT CLR : 清0TI, 20 · 0, SM2 ΤI CLR 20 • 0H : 清0TI, 20 · 0, SM2 CLR SM2 : 清0TI, 20 · 0, SM2 SJMP RETURN ; 转返回 ISBYTES: ; 接收数据块长度帧 MOV Α, **SBUF** MOV R0, #60H MOV @R0, Α ; 将数据块长度存入内部RAM MOV 2FH, : 60H单元及2FH单元 MOV 2EH. #61H ; 置首地址61H于2EH单元 : 清20·1H标志,表示以后接收的为数据 CLR 20 · 1H RETURN: POP PSW 恢复现场 POP Α

多机通信方式可多种多样,上例仅以最简单的住一从式作了简单介绍,仅供参考。

对于串行通信工作方式0的同步方式,常用于通过移位寄存器进行扩展并行I/O口,或配置某些串行通信接口的外部设备。例如,串行打印机、显示器等。这里就不一一举例了。

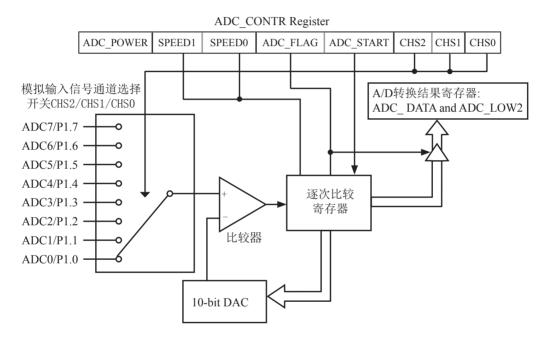
RETI

第9章 STC12C5410AD系列单片机的A/D转换器

9.1 A/D转换器的结构

STC12C5410AD系列带A/D转换的单片机的A/D转换口在P1口(P1.7-P1.0),有8**路10位高速** A/D转换器,速度可达到100KHz(10万次/秒)。8路电压输入型A/D,可做温度检测、电池电压检测、按键扫描、频谱检测等。上电复位后P1口为弱上拉型I/O口,用户可以通过软件设置将8 路中的任何一路设置为A/D转换,不需作为A/D使用的口可继续作为I/O口使用。

STC12C5410AD系列单片机ADC(A/D转换器)的结构如下图所示。



A/D转换结果寄存器格式如下:

						4	ADC_D	ATA[7:0]]			
ADC_B9	ADC_B	88 AI	DC_B7	ADC_B6	ADC_B5	ADC_B4	ADC_B3	ADC_B2				
			-	-	-	-	-	-	ADC_B1	ADC_B0	ADC 1	LOW2[1:0]

STC12C5410AD系列单片机ADC由多路选择开关、比较器、逐次比较寄存器、10位DAC、转换结果寄存器(ADC DATA和ADC LOW2)以及ADC CONTR构成。

STC12C5410AD系列单片机的ADC是逐次比较型ADC。逐次比较型ADC由一个比较器和D/A转换器构成,通过逐次比较逻辑,从最高位(MSB)开始,顺序地对每一输入电压与内置D/A转换器输出进行比较,经过多次比较,使转换所得的数字量逐次逼近输入模拟量对应值。逐次比较型A/D转换器具有速度高,功耗低等优点。

从上图可以看出,通过模拟多路开关,将通过ADC0~7的模拟量输入送给比较器。用数/模转换器(DAC)转换的模拟量与本次输入的模拟量通过比较器进行比较,将比较结果保存到逐次比较器,并通过逐次比较寄存器输出转换结果。A/D转换结束后,最终的转换结果保存到ADC转换结果寄存器ADC_DATA和ADC_LOW2,同时,置位ADC控制寄存器ADC_CONTR中的A/D转换结束标志位ADC_FLAG,以供程序查询或发出中断申请。模拟通道的选择控制由ADC控制寄存器ADC_CONTR中的CHS2~CHSO确定。ADC的转换速度由ADC控制寄存器中的SPEED1和SPEEDO确定。在使用ADC之前,应先给ADC上电,也就是置位ADC控制寄存器中的ADC_POWER位。

如果用户取完整的10位结果,则按下面公式计算:

10-bit A/D Conversion Result:(ADC_DATA[7:0], ADC_LOW2[1:0]) = 1024 x
$$\frac{\text{Vin}}{\text{Vcc}}$$

如果舍弃ADC LOW2的低2位,只用ADC DATA寄存器的8位结果,按下面公式计算:

8-bit A/D Conversion Result:(ADC_DATA[7:0]) = 256 x
$$\frac{\text{Vin}}{\text{Vcc}}$$

式中, Vin为模拟输入通道输入电压, Vcc为单片机实际工作电压, 用单片机工作电压作为模拟参考电压。

9.2 与A/D转换相关的寄存器

与STC12C5410AD系列单片机A/D转换相关的寄存器列于下表所示。

符号	描述	地址	位地址及其符号 MSB LSB	复位值
P1M0	P1口模式配置寄存器0	91H		0000 0000B
P1M1	P1口模式配置寄存器1	92H		0000 0000B
ADC_CONTR	ADC Control Register	С5Н	ADC_POWER SPEED1 SPEED0 ADC_FLAG ADC_START CHS2 CHS1 CHS0	0000 0000B
ADC_DATA	A/D转换结果寄存器, 高8位	С6Н		0000 0000B
ADC_LOW2	A/D转换结果寄存器, 低2位	ВЕН		0000 0000B
AUXR	Auxiliary register	A2H	T0x12 T1x12 UART_M0x12 EADCI ESPI ELVDI - -	0000 00xxB
IE	Interrupt Enable	A8H	EA EPCA_LVD EADC_SPI ES ET1 EX1 ET0 EX0	0000 0000B
IP	Interrupt Priority Low	В8Н	- PPCA_LVD PADC_SPI PS PT1 PX1 PT0 PX0	x000 0000B
IPH	Interrupt Priority High	В7Н	- PPCA_LVDH PADC_SPIH PSH PT1H PX1H PT0H PX0H	x000 0000B

1. P1口模拟配置寄存器P1M0和P1M1

需作为A/D使用的P1口需先将其设置为开漏模式或高阻输入,在P1M0(地址91H)、P1M1(地址92H)寄存器中对相应的位进行设置。

P1口设定〈P1.7, P1.6, P1.5, P1.4, P1.3, P1.2, P1.1, P1.0口〉(P1口地址: 90H)

P1M0 [7:0]	P1M1 [7:0]	I/O 口模式(P1.x 如做A/D使用,需先将其设置成开漏或高阻输入)
0	0	准双向口(传统8051 I/O 口模式) 灌电流可达20mA, 拉电流为230μA,
0	1	推挽输出(强上拉输出,可达20mA,要加限流电阻,尽量少用)
1	0	仅为输入(高阻),如果该I/O口需作为A/D使用,可选此模式
1	1	开漏(Open Drain),如果该I/O口需作为A/D使用,可选此模式

2. ADC控制寄存器ADC CONTR

ADC CONTR寄存器的格式如下:

ADC CONTR: ADC控制寄存器

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	B4	В3	B2	B1	В0
ADC_CONTR	С5Н	name	ADC_POWER	SPEED1	SPEED0	ADC_FLAG	ADC_START	CHS2	CHS1	CHS0

对ADC CONTR寄存器进行操作,建议直接用MOV赋值语句,不要用'与'和'或'语句。

ADC POWER: ADC电源控制位。

- 0: 关闭A/D转换器电源:
- 1: 打开A/D转换器电源.

建议进入空闲模式前,将ADC电源关闭,即ADC_POWER =0。启动A/D转换前一定要确认A/D电源已打开,A/D转换结束后关闭A/D电源可降低功耗,也可不关闭。初次打开内部A/D转换模拟电源,需适当延时,等内部模拟电源稳定后,再启动A/D转换。

建议启动A/D转换后,在A/D转换结束之前,不改变任何I/O口的状态,有利于高精度A/D转换,若能将定时器/串行口/中断系统关闭更好。

SPEED1, SPEED0: 模数转换器转换速度控制位

SPEED1	SPEED0	A/D转换所需时间
1	1	270个时钟周期转换一次,CPU工作频率27MHz时,A/D转换速度约100KHz
1	0	540个时钟周期转换一次
0	1	810个时钟周期转换一次
0	0	1080个时钟周期转换一次

ADC_FLAG: 模数转换器转换结束标志位,**当**A/D**转换完成后,ADC_FLAG=1,要由软件清0**。 不管是A/D转换完成后由该位申请产生中断,还是由软件查询该标志位A/D转换 是否结束**,当**A/D**转换完成后,ADC_FLAG=1,一定要软件清0**。

ADC START:模数转换器(ADC)转换启动控制位,设置为"1"时,开始转换,转换结束后为0

CHS2/CHS1/CHS0:	模拟输入	\通道选择,	CHS2/CHS1/CHS0
-----------------	------	--------	----------------

CHS2	CHS1	CHS0	Analog Channel Select (模拟输入通道选择)
0	0	0	选择 P1.0 作为A/D输入来用
0	0	1	选择 P1.1 作为A/D输入来用
0	1	0	选择 P1.2 作为A/D输入来用
0	1	1	选择 P1.3 作为A/D输入来用
1	0	0	选择 P1.4 作为A/D输入来用
1	0	1	选择 P1.5 作为A/D输入来用
1	1	0	选择 P1.6 作为A/D输入来用
1	1	1	选择 P1.7 作为A/D输入来用

程序中需要注意的事项:

由于是2套时钟, 所以, 设置ADC_CONTR控制寄存器后, 要加4个空操作延时才可以正确读到ADC_CONTR寄存器的值, 原因是设置ADC_CONTR控制寄存器的语句执行后, 要经过4个CPU时钟的延时, 其值才能够保证被设置进ADC_CONTR控制寄存器.

MOV ADC CONTR, #DATA

NOP

NOP

NOP

NOP

MOV A, ADC CONTR

;经过4个时钟延时后,才能够正确读到ADC CONTR控制寄存器的值

3. A/D转换结果寄存器ADC DATA、ADC LOW2

特殊功能寄存器ADC DATA和ADC LOW2寄存器用于保存A/D转换结果, 其格式如下:

Mnemonic	Add	Name	В7	В6	В5	В4	В3	В2	B1	В0
ADC_DATA	C6h	A/D转换结果寄存器,全部8位有效,为10位A/D转换结果的高8位	-	-	1	-	-	-	-	-
ADC_LOW2	BEh	A/D转换结果寄存器,只有低2位有 效,为10位A/D转换结果的低2位	Х	х	х	х	х	х	-	-

此时,如果用户需取完整10位结果,按下面公式计算:

10-bit A/D Conversion Result:(ADC_DATA[7:0], ADC_LOW2[1:0]) =
$$1024 \text{ x} \frac{\text{Vin}}{\text{Vcc}}$$

如果用户只需取8位结果,按下面公式计算:

式中, Vin为模拟输入通道输入电压, Vcc为单片机实际工作电压, 用单片机工作电压作为模拟参考电压。

4. 与A/D中断有关的寄存器

IE: 中断允许寄存器(可位寻址)

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	B4	В3	В2	B1	В0
IE	A8H	name	EA	EPCA_LVD	EADC_SPI	ES	ET1	EX1	ET0	EX0

EA: CPU的中断开放标志,EA=1,CPU开放中断,EA=0,CPU屏蔽所有的中断申请。 EA的作用是使中断允许形成多级控制。即各中断源首先受EA控制;其次还受各中断源自己的中断允许控制位控制。

EADC SPI: A/D转换中断和SPI中断允许位。

EADC_SPI=1,允许A/D转换中断和SPI中断;

EADC SPI=0,禁止A/D转换中断和SPI中断。

AUXR:辅助寄存器(不可位寻址)

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	B4	В3	B2	B1	В0
AUXR	8EH	name	T0x12	T1x12	UART_M0x12	EADCI	ESPI	ELVDI	-	-

EADCI: A/D转换中断单独允许位。

EADCI=1,允许A/D转换中断;

EADCI =0,禁止A/D转换中断。

如果要允许A/D转换中断则需要将几个相应的控制位置1:

- 1、将EADCI置1,允许ADC中断,这是ADC中断的单独控制位。
- 2、将EADCI_SPI置1,允许ADC中断及SPI中断,这是ADC中断及SPI中断的总中断控制位,此位不打开,也是无法产生ADC中断的。
- 3、将EA置1,打开单片机总中断控制位,此位不打开,也是无法产生ADC中断的A/D中断服务程序中要用软件清A/D中断请求标志位ADC FLAG。

IPH: 中断优先级控制寄存器高(不可位寻址)

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	В4	В3	В2	В1	В0
IPH	В7Н	name	-	PPCA_LVDH	PADC_SPIH	PSH	PT1H	PX1H	PT0H	PX0H

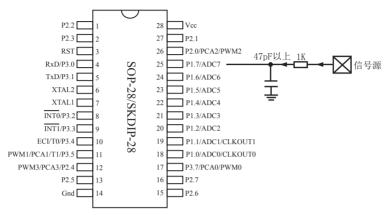
IP: 中断优先级控制寄存器低(可位寻址)

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	B4	В3	B2	B1	В0
IP	B8H	name	-	PPCA_LVD	PADC_SPI	PS	PT1	PX1	PT0	PX0

PADC SPIH, PADC SPI: A/D转换中断优先级控制位。

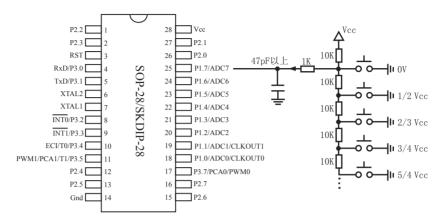
当PADC_SPIH=0且PADC_SPI=0时,A/D转换中断和SPI中断为最低优先级中断(优先级0) 当PADC_SPIH=0且PADC_SPI=1时,A/D转换中断和SPI中断为较低优先级中断(优先级1) 当PADC_SPIH=1且PADC_SPI=0时,A/D转换中断和SPI中断为较高优先级中断(优先级2) 当PADC_SPIH=1且PADC_SPI=1时,A/D转换中断和SPI中断为最高优先级中断(优先级3)

9.3 A/D转换典型应用线路

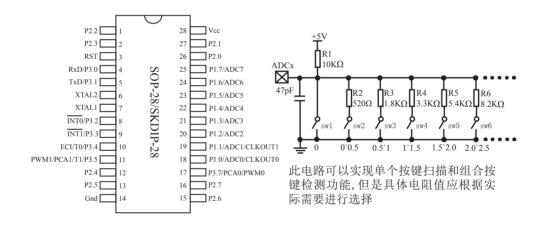


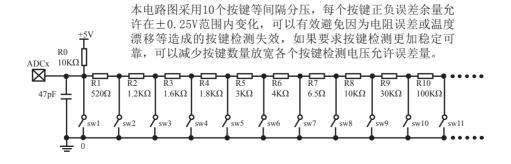
A/D转换在P1口, P1.0 - P1.7共8路

9.4 A/D做按键扫描应用线路图



A/D转换在P1口, P1.0 - P1.7共8路





9.5 A/D转换模块的参考电压源

STC12C5410AD系列单片机的参考电压源是输入工作电压Vcc,所以一般不用外接参考电压源。如7805的输出电压是5V,但实际电压可能是4.88V 到4.96V,用户需要精度比较高的话,可在出厂时将实际测出的工作电压值记录在单片机内部的EEPROM里面,以供计算。

如果有些用户的Vcc不固定,如电池供电,电池电压在5.3V-4.2V之间漂移,则Vcc不固定,就需要在8路A/D转换的一个通道外接一个稳定的参考电压源,来计算出此时的工作电压Vcc,再计算出其他几路A/D转换通道的电压。如可在ADC转换通道的第七通道外接一个1.25V(或1V,或...)的基准参考电压源,由此求出此时的工作电压Vcc,再计算出其它几路A/D转换通道的电压(理论依据是短时间之内,Vcc不变)。

9.6 A/D转换测试程序(C程序和汇编程序)

9.6.1 A/D转换测试程序(ADC中断方式)

1. C程序:

```
/*_____*/
/* --- STC MCU Limited -----*/
/* --- 演示STC 1T 系列单片机 A/D转换功能-----*/
/* 如果要在程序中使用或在文章中引用该程序, -----*/
/* 请在程序中或文章中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 -----*/
#include "reg51.h"
#include "intrins.h"
#define FOSC
             18432000L
#define
      BAUD 9600
typedef unsigned char
                      BYTE;
typedef unsigned int
                      WORD;
/*Declare SFR associated with the ADC */
sfr
       AUXR
                      = 0x8e;
       ADC CONTR
sfr
                      = 0xC5;
                                            //ADC control register
sfr
       ADC DATA
                      = 0xC6;
                                            //ADC high 8-bit result register
       ADC LOW2
                                            //ADC low 2-bit result register
sfr
                      = 0xBE;
sfr
       P1M0
                      = 0x91:
                                            //P1 mode control register0
       P1M1
                      = 0x92;
                                            //P1 mode control register1
sfr
/*Define ADC operation const for ADC_CONTR*/
#define ADC POWER
                      0x80
                                                    //ADC power control bit
#define ADC FLAG
                      0x10
                                                    //ADC complete flag
#define ADC START
                      0x08
                                                    //ADC start control bit
#define ADC SPEEDLL
                      0x00
                                                    //1080 clocks
#define ADC SPEEDL
                      0x20
                                                    //810 clocks
#define
       ADC SPEEDH
                      0x40
                                                    //540 clocks
#define
      ADC SPEEDHH 0x60
                                                    //270 clocks
void InitUart();
void SendData(BYTE dat);
void Delay(WORD n);
void InitADC();
```

```
//ADC channel NO.
BYTE
        ch = 0:
void main()
                                          //Init UART, use to show ADC result
        InitUart();
        InitADC();
                                          //Init ADC sfr
        AUXR = 0x10;
                                          //set EADCI
        IE = 0xa0:
                                          //Enable ADC interrupt and Open master interrupt switch
                                          //Start A/D conversion
        while (1);
ADC interrupt service routine
*/
void adc isr() interrupt 5 using 1
                                          //Clear ADC interrupt flag
        ADC CONTR &=!ADC FLAG;
        SendData(ch);
                                          //Show Channel NO.
        SendData(ADC DATA);
                                          //Get ADC high 8-bit result and Send to UART
        //if you want show 10-bit result, uncomment next line
        // SendData(ADC LOW2);
                                          //Show ADC low 2-bit result
        if (++ch > 7) ch = 0;
                                          //switch to next channel
        ADC CONTR = ADC POWER | ADC_SPEEDLL | ADC_START | ch;
Initial ADC sfr
*/
void InitADC( )
        P1 = P1M0 = P1M1 = 0xff;
                                                   //Set all P1 as Open-Drain mode
        ADC DATA = 0;
                                                   //Clear previous result
        ADC CONTR = ADC POWER | ADC SPEEDLL | ADC START | ch;
        Delay(2);
                                                   //ADC power-on delay and Start A/D conversion
Initial UART
*/
void InitUart()
        SCON = 0x5a;
                                                   //8 bit data ,no parity bit
                                                   //T1 as 8-bit auto reload
        TMOD = 0x20;
        TH1 = TL1 = -(FOSC/12/32/BAUD);
                                                   //Set Uart baudrate
        TR1 = 1;
                                                   //T1 start running
```

```
Send one byte data to PC
Input: dat (UART data)
Output:-
*/
void SendData(BYTE dat)
                                        //Wait for the previous data is sent
        while (!TI);
        TI = 0;
                                        //Clear TI flag
        SBUF = dat;
                                        //Send current data
Software delay function
*/
void Delay(WORD n)
{
        WORD x;
        while (n--)
                x = 5000;
                while (x--);
```

2. 汇编程序:

```
/*______*/
/* --- STC MCU Limited -----*/
/* --- 演示STC 1T 系列单片机 A/D转换功能-----*/
/* 如果要在程序中使用或在文章中引用该程序, -----*/
/* 请在程序中或文章中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 -----*/
:/*Declare SFR associated with the ADC */
AUXR
              EQU
                     8EH
              EQU
ADC CONTR
                     0C5H
                                          ;ADC control register
ADC DATA
              EQU
                                          ;ADC high 8-bit result register
                     0C6H
ADC LOW2
              EQU
                     0BEH
                                          ;ADC low 2-bit result register
P1M0
              EQU
                                          ;P1 mode control register0
                     091H
P1M1
              EQU
                     092H
                                          ;P1 mode control register1
;/*Define ADC operation const for ADC CONTR*/
ADC POWER
              EOU
                     80H
                                          ;ADC power control bit
ADC FLAG
              EOU
                     10H
                                          ;ADC complete flag
ADC START
              EQU
                     08H
                                          :ADC start control bit
ADC SPEEDLL EQU
                     00H
                                          :1080 clocks
ADC SPEEDL
              EOU
                     20H
                                          :810 clocks
ADC SPEEDH
              EQU
                     40H
                                          ;540 clocks
ADC SPEEDHH EQU
                     60H
                                          :270 clocks
ADCCH
              DATA
                     20H
                                          ;ADC channel NO.
       ORG
              0000H
       LJMP
              MAIN
       ORG
              002BH
       LJMP
              ADC_ISR
       ORG
              0100H
MAIN:
       MOV
              SP,
                     #3FH
       MOV
              ADCCH, #0
       LCALL INIT UART
                                          ;Init UART, use to show ADC result
       LCALL INIT ADC
                                          ;Init ADC sfr
              AUXR, #10H
       ORL
                                          ;set EADCI
       MOV
              IE,
                     #0A0H
                                   ;Enable ADC interrupt and Open master interrupt switch
       SJMP
              $
```

```
·/*____
;ADC interrupt service routine
:----*/
ADC ISR:
       PUSH
              ACC
       PUSH
              PSW
       ANL
              ADC CONTR,
                             #NOT ADC FLAG
                                                   ;Clear ADC interrupt flag
       MOV
                      ADCCH
       LCALL SEND DATA
                                                   ;Send channel NO.
       MOV
                                                   ;Get ADC high 8-bit result
              A.
                      ADC RES
       LCALL SEND DATA
                                                   ;Send to UART
;//if you want show 10-bit result, uncomment next 2 lines
       MOV
              A,
                     ADC LOW2
                                                   ;Get ADC low 2-bit result
       LCALL SEND DATA
                                                   ;Send to UART
       INC
              ADCCH
       MOV
              A.
                      ADCCH
       ANL
                      #07H
              A.
       MOV
              ADCCH, A
       ORL
                      #ADC POWER | ADC SPEEDLL | ADC START
                                            ;ADC power-on delay and re-start A/D conversion
       MOV
              ADC CONTR,
       POP
              PSW
       POP
              ACC
       RETI
·/*_____
;Initial ADC sfr
:----*/
INIT ADC:
                      #0FFH
       MOV
              A,
       MOV
              P1,
                      Α
       MOV
              P1M0.
                      Α
       MOV
              P1M1, A
                                            ;Set all P1 as Open-Drain mode
       MOV
              ADC DATA, #0
                                            ;Clear previous result
       MOV
              A,
                      ADCCH
       ORL
                      #ADC POWER | ADC SPEEDLL | ADC START
       MOV
              ADC CONTR, A
                                            ;ADC power-on delay and Start A/D conversion
       MOV
              A,
                      #2
       LCALL DELAY
       RET
```

```
:/*-----
;Initial UART
:----*/
INIT UART:
                                            ;8 bit data ,no parity bit
       MOV
              SCON, #5AH
       MOV
              TMOD, #20H
                                            ;T1 as 8-bit auto reload
       MOV
              A,
                      #-5
                                            ;Set Uart baudrate -(18432000/12/32/9600)
       MOV
              TH1,
                                            ;Set T1 reload value
                      Α
       MOV
              TL1,
              TR1
                                            ;T1 start running
       SETB
       RET
·/*_____
;Send one byte data to PC
;Input: ACC (UART data)
;Output:-
;----*/
SEND DATA:
                                            ;Wait for the previous data is sent
       JNB
              TI,
                      $
       CLR
              ΤI
                                            ;Clear TI flag
       MOV
              SBUF,
                                            ;Send current data
                      Α
       RET
·/*_____
;Software delay function
:----*/
DELAY:
       MOV
              R2,
                      Α
       CLR
              Α
       MOV
              R0.
                      Α
       MOV
              R1,
                      Α
DELAY1:
       DJNZ
              R0,
                      DELAY1
       DJNZ
                      DELAY1
              R1,
       DJNZ
              R2,
                      DELAY1
       RET
       END
```

9.6.2 A/D转换测试程序(ADC查询方式)

1. C程序:

```
/*______*/
/* --- STC MCU Limited -----*/
/* --- 演示STC 1T 系列单片机 A/D转换功能-----*/
/* 如果要在程序中使用或在文章中引用该程序, -----*/
/* 请在程序中或文章中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 -----*/
#include "reg51.h"
#include "intrins.h"
#define FOSC
              18432000L
#define BAUD
              9600
typedef unsigned char
                      BYTE;
typedef unsigned int
                      WORD;
/*Declare SFR associated with the ADC */
sfr
       ADC CONTR
                     = 0xC5;
                                            //ADC control register
sfr
       ADC DATA
                      = 0xC6:
                                            //ADC high 8-bit result register
sfr
       ADC LOW2
                      = 0xBE:
                                            //ADC low 2-bit result register
sfr
       P1M0
                      = 0x91:
                                            //P1 mode control register0
sfr
       P1M1
                      = 0x92:
                                            //P1 mode control register1
/*Define ADC operation const for ADC CONTR*/
#define ADC POWER
                                            //ADC power control bit
                      0x80
#define ADC FLAG
                      0x10
                                            //ADC complete flag
#define ADC START
                                            //ADC start control bit
                      0x08
#define ADC SPEEDLL
                                            //1080 clocks
                     0x00
#define ADC SPEEDL
                      0x20
                                            //810 clocks
#define ADC SPEEDH
                                            //540 clocks
                      0x40
#define ADC SPEEDHH 0x60
                                            //270 clocks
void InitUart();
void InitADC();
void SendData(BYTE dat);
BYTE GetADCResult(BYTE ch);
void Delay(WORD n);
void ShowResult(BYTE ch);
```

```
void main()
        InitUart();
                                                  //Init UART, use to show ADC result
        InitADC();
                                                  //Init ADC sfr
        while (1)
                                                   //Show Channel0
                 ShowResult(0):
                                                   //Show Channel1
                ShowResult(1);
                ShowResult(2):
                                                  //Show Channel2
                                                   //Show Channel3
                ShowResult(3);
                ShowResult(4);
                                                   //Show Channel4
                                                   //Show Channel5
                ShowResult(5);
                ShowResult(6);
                                                  //Show Channel6
                ShowResult(7);
                                                  //Show Channel7
Send ADC result to UART
*/
void ShowResult(BYTE ch)
                                                   //Show Channel NO.
        SendData(ch);
        SendData(GetADCResult(ch));
                                                  //Show ADC high 8-bit result
//if you want show 10-bit result, uncomment next line
        SendData(ADC LOW2);
                                                  //Show ADC low 2-bit result
}
Get ADC result
*/
BYTE GetADCResult(BYTE ch)
{
        ADC_CONTR = ADC_POWER | ADC_SPEEDLL | ch | ADC_START;
                                                  //Must wait before inquiry
        _nop_();
        _nop_();
        _nop_();
        _nop_();
        while (!(ADC CONTR & ADC FLAG));
                                                  //Wait complete flag
        ADC CONTR &= ~ADC FLAG;
                                                  //Close ADC
        return ADC_DATA;
                                                  //Return ADC result
```

```
Initial UART
*/
void InitUart()
       SCON = 0x5a;
                                                //8 bit data ,no parity bit
                                                //T1 as 8-bit auto reload
       TMOD = 0x20;
       TH1 = TL1 = -(FOSC/12/32/BAUD);
                                                //Set Uart baudrate
                                                //T1 start running
       TR1 = 1;
Initial ADC sfr
*/
void InitADC()
        P1 = P1M0 = P1M1 = 0xff;
                                                //Set all P1 as Open-Drain mode
        ADC DATA = 0;
                                                //Clear previous result
        ADC CONTR = ADC POWER | ADC SPEEDLL;
        Delay(2);
                                                //ADC power-on and delay
/*_____
Send one byte data to PC
Input: dat (UART data)
Output:-
*/
void SendData(BYTE dat)
        while (!TI);
                                                //Wait for the previous data is sent
       TI = 0;
                                                //Clear TI flag
                                                //Send current data
       SBUF = dat;
Software delay function
*/
void Delay(WORD n)
        WORD x;
        while (n--)
               x = 5000;
               while (x--);
```

2. 汇编程序:

```
/*_____*/
/* --- STC MCU Limited -----*/
/* --- 演示STC 1T 系列单片机 A/D转换功能-----*/
/* 如果要在程序中使用或在文章中引用该程序, -----*/
/* 请在程序中或文章中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 -----*/
;/*Declare SFR associated with the ADC */
ADC CONTR
              EQU
                     0C5H
                                         ;ADC control register
ADC DATA
                                         ;ADC high 8-bit result register
              EQU
                     0C6H
ADC LOW2
              EQU
                     0BEH
                                         ;ADC low 2-bit result register
                                         ;P1 mode control register0
P1M0
              EQU
                     091H
P1M1
              EQU
                     092H
                                         ;P1 mode control register1
;/*Define ADC operation const for ADC CONTR*/
ADC POWER
              EOU
                                          ;ADC power control bit
                     80H
ADC FLAG
              EQU
                     10H
                                         ;ADC complete flag
ADC START
              EQU
                     08H
                                         :ADC start control bit
ADC SPEEDLL EQU
                     00H
                                         :1080 clocks
ADC SPEEDL
              EQU
                     20H
                                         ;810 clocks
ADC SPEEDH
              EQU
                     40H
                                         ;540 clocks
ADC SPEEDHH EQU
                     60H
                                         ;270 clocks
       ORG
              0000H
       LJMP
              MAIN
       ORG
              0100H
MAIN:
       LCALL INIT UART
                                         ;Init UART, use to show ADC result
      LCALL INIT ADC
                                         :Init ADC sfr
NEXT:
       MOV
              A,
                     #0
       LCALL SHOW RESULT
                                         ;Show channel0 result
       MOV
              A,#1
       LCALL SHOW RESULT
                                         ;Show channel1 result
       MOV
              A,#2
       LCALL SHOW RESULT
                                         ;Show channel2 result
```

```
MOV
                      #3
               A.
       LCALL SHOW RESULT
                                             ;Show channel3 result
       MOV
              A.
                      #4
       LCALL SHOW RESULT
                                             :Show channel4 result
       MOV
               A.
                      #5
                                             :Show channel5 result
       LCALL SHOW RESULT
       MOV
              A.
                      #6
       LCALL SHOW RESULT
                                             ;Show channel6 result
       MOV
              A.
                      #7
                                             ;Show channel7 result
       LCALL SHOW RESULT
       SJMP
              NEXT
·/*____
;Send ADC result to UART
;Input: ACC (ADC channel NO.)
;Output:-
:----*/
SHOW RESULT:
       LCALL SEND DATA
                                             ;Show Channel NO.
       LCALL GET ADC RESULT
                                             Get high 8-bit ADC result
       LCALL SEND DATA
                                             :Show result
;//if you want show 10-bit result, uncomment next 2 lines
                      ADC LOW2
                                             :Get low 2-bit ADC result
       MOV
               A,
       LCALL SEND DATA
                                             ;Show result
       RET
·/*____
;Read ADC conversion result
;Input: ACC (ADC channel NO.)
;Output:ACC (ADC result)
:----*/
GET ADC RESULT:
                      #ADC POWER | ADC SPEEDLL | ADC START
       ORL
                                             ;Start A/D conversion
       MOV
              ADC CONTR,
       NOP
                                             ;Must wait before inquiry
       NOP
       NOP
       NOP
WAIT:
       MOV
                      ADC CONTR
                                                            ;Wait complete flag
              A,
       JNB
               ACC.4, WAIT
                                 ;ADC FLAG(ADC CONTR.4)
               ADC CONTR
                              ,#NOT ADC FLAG
                                                            ;Clear ADC FLAG
       ANL
                      ADC DATA
                                                            ;Return ADC result
       MOV
               A,
       RET
```

```
;Initial ADC sfr
INIT ADC:
        MOV
               A,
                        #0FFH
        MOV
               P1,
                        Α
        MOV
               P1M0,
                        Α
        MOV
               P1M1,
                       Α
                                                        ;Set all P1 as Open-Drain mode
               ADC DATA,
                                                        ;Clear previous result
        MOV
                                #0
                                #ADC_POWER | ADC_SPEEDLL
        MOV
                ADC CONTR,
        MOV
                        #2
                                                        ;ADC power-on and delay
                A.
       LCALL DELAY
       RET
;Initial UART
;----*/
INIT UART:
        MOV
               SCON,
                       #5AH
                                                        ;8 bit data ,no parity bit
        MOV
               TMOD, #20H
                                                        ;T1 as 8-bit auto reload
        MOV
                        #-5
                                                        ;Set Uart baudrate -(18432000/12/32/9600)
               A,
        MOV
               TH1,
                        Α
                                                        :Set T1 reload value
        MOV
               TL1,
                        Α
        SETB
               TR1
                                                        ;T1 start running
       RET
·/*_____
;Send one byte data to PC
;Input: ACC (UART data)
;Output:-
;----*/
SEND_DATA:
       JNB
               TI,$
                                                        ;Wait for the previous data is sent
        CLR
                ΤI
                                                        ;Clear TI flag
        MOV
               SBUF,
                                                        :Send current data
        RET
;Software delay function
DELAY:
        MOV
               R2,
                        Α
        CLR
                Α
        MOV
               R0,
                        Α
        MOV
               R1,
                        Α
DELAY1:
        DJNZ
               R0.
                        DELAY1
        DJNZ
               R1,
                        DELAY1
        DJNZ
               R2,
                        DELAY1
        RET
        END
```

第10章 STC12C5410AD系列单片机PCA/PWM应用

STC12C5410AD系列单片机集成了4路可编程计数器阵列(PCA)模块,可用于软件定时器、外部脉冲的捕捉、高速输出以及脉宽调制(PWM)输出。

10.1 与PCA/PWM应用有关的特殊功能寄存器

STC12C5410AD系列 1T 8051单片机 PCA/PWM特殊功能寄存器表 PCA/PWM SFRs

符号	描述	地址			ſ	立地址及	其符号	ı J			复位值
何与	抽 处	쁘쁘	В7	В6	В5	В4	В3	В2	B1	В0	友型狙
CCON	PCA Control Register	D8H	CF	CR	-	-	CCF3	CCF2	CCF1	CCF0	00xx,xx00
CMOD	PCA Mode Register	D9H	CIDL	-	-	-	-	CPS1	CPS0	ECF	0xxx,x000
CCAPM0	PCA Module 0 Mode Register	DAH	-	ECOM0	CAPP0	CAPN0	MAT0	TOG0	PWM0	ECCF0	x000,0000
CCAPM1	PCA Module 1 Mode Register	DBH	-	ECOM1	CAPP1	CAPN1	MAT1	TOG1	PWM1	ECCF1	x000,0000
CCAPM2	PCA Module 2 Mode Register	DCH	-	ECOM2	CAPP2	CAPN2	MAT2	TOG2	PWM2	ECCF2	x000,0000
CCAPM3	PCA Module 3 Mode Register	DDH	-	ECOM3	CAPP3	CAPN3	MAT3	TOG3	PWM3	ECCF3	x000,0000
CL	PCA Base Timer Low	Е9Н									0000,0000
СН	PCA Base Timer High	F9H									0000,0000
CCAP0L	PCA Module-0 Capture Register Low	ЕАН									0000,0000
ССАР0Н	PCA Module-0 Capture Register High	FAH									0000,0000
CCAP1L	PCA Module-1 Capture Register Low	EBH									0000,0000
ССАР1Н	PCA Module-1 Capture Register High	FBH									0000,0000
CCAP2L	PCA Module-2 Capture Register Low	ЕСН									0000,0000
ССАР2Н	PCA Module-2 Capture Register High	FCH									0000,0000
CCAP3L	PCA Module-3 Capture Register Low	EDH									0000,0000
ССАР3Н	PCA Module-3 Capture Register High	FDH									0000,0000
PCA_PWM0	PCA PWM Mode Auxiliary Register 0	F2H	-	-	-	-	-	-	ЕРС0Н	EPC0L	xxxx,xx00
PCA_PWM1	PCA PWM Mode Auxiliary Register 1	F3H	-	-	-	-	-	-	EPC1H	EPC1L	xxxx,xx00
PCA_PWM2	PCA PWM Mode Auxiliary Register 2	F4H	-	-	-	-	-	-	ЕРС2Н	EPC2L	xxxx,xx00
PCA_PWM3	PCA PWM Mode Auxiliary Register 3	F5H	-	-	-	-	-	-	ЕРС3Н	EPC3L	xxxx,xx00

1. PCA工作模式寄存器CMOD

PCA工作模式寄存器的格式如下:

CMOD: PCA工作模式寄存器

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	В4	В3	B2	B1	В0
CMOD	D9H	name	CIDL	-	-	-	-	CPS1	CPS0	ECF

CIDL: 空闲模式下是否停止PCA计数的控制位。

当CIDL=0时,空闲模式下PCA计数器继续工作; 当CIDL=1时,空闲模式下PCA计数器停止工作。

CPS1、CPS0: PCA计数脉冲源选择控制位。PCA计数脉冲选择如下表所示。

CPS1	CPS0	选择PCA/PWM时钟源输入
0	0	0,系统时钟,SYSclk/12
0	1	1,系统时钟,SYSclk/2
1	0	2,定时器0的溢出脉冲。由于定时器0可以工作在1T模式,所以可以达到计一个时钟就溢出,从而达到最高频率CPU工作时钟SYSclk。通过改变定时器0的溢出率,可以实现可调频率的PWM输出
1	1	3, ECI/P3.4脚输入的外部时钟(最大速率=SYSclk/2)

ECF: PCA计数溢出中断使能位。

当ECF = 0时,禁止寄存器CCON中CF位的中断:

当ECF = 1时,允许寄存器CCON中CF位的中断。

2. PCA控制寄存器CCON

PCA控制寄存器的格式如下:

CCON: PCA控制控制寄存器

ſ	SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	В4	В3	В2	B1	В0
	CCON	D8H	name	CF	CR	-	-	CCF3	CCF2	CCF1	CCF0

- CF: PCA计数器阵列溢出标志位。当PCA计数器溢出时,CF由硬件置位。如果CMOD寄存器的ECF位置位,则CF标志可用来产生中断。CF位可通过硬件或软件置位,但只可通过软件清零。
- CR: PCA计数器阵列运行控制位。该位通过软件置位, 用来起动PCA计数器阵列计数。该位通过软件清零, 用来关闭PCA计数器。
- CCF3: PCA模块3中断标志。当出现匹配或捕获时该位由硬件置位。该位必须通过软件清零。
- CCF2: PCA模块2中断标志。当出现匹配或捕获时该位由硬件置位。该位必须通过软件清零。
- CCF1: PCA模块1中断标志。当出现匹配或捕获时该位由硬件置位。该位必须通过软件清零。
- CCF0: PCA模块0中断标志。当出现匹配或捕获时该位由硬件置位。该位必须通过软件清零。

3. PCA比较/捕获寄存器CCAPMn (n=0,1,2,3)

PCA模块的比较/捕获寄存器的格式如下:

CCAPMn: PCA模块n(n=0, 1, 2, 3)的比较/捕获寄存器

SFR name	bit	В7	В6	В5	В4	В3	B2	B1	В0
CCAPMn	name	-	ECOMn	CAPPn	CAPNn	MATn	TOGn	PWMn	ECCFn

B7: 保留为将来之用。

ECOMn: 允许比较器功能控制位。

当ECOMn=1时,允许比较器功能。

CAPPn: 正捕获控制位。

当CAPPn=1时,允许上升沿捕获。

CAPNn: 负捕获控制位。

当CAPNn=1时,允许下降沿捕获。

MATn: 匹配控制位。

当MATn=1时,PCA计数值与模块的比较/捕获寄存器的值的匹配将置位CCON寄存

器的中断标志位CCFn。

TOGn: 翻转控制位。

当TOGn=1时,工作在PCA高速输出模式,PCA计数器的值与模块的比较/捕获寄存

器的值的匹配将使CCPn脚翻转。

(CCP0/P3.7, CCP1/P3.5, CCP2/P2.0, CCP3/P2.4)

PWMn: 脉宽调节模式。

当PWMn=1时,允许CCPn脚用作脉宽调节输出。

(CCP0/P3.7, CCP1/P3.5, CCP2/P2.0, CCP3/P2.4)

ECCFn: 使能CCFn中断。使能寄存器CCON的比较/捕获标志CCFn, 用来产生中断。

PCA模块的工作模式设定表如下表所列:

PCA模块工作模式设定 (CCAPMn寄存器, n = 0.1.2.3)

-	ECOMn	CAPPn	CAPNn	MATn	TOGn	PWMn	ECCFn	模块功能
	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	无此操作
	X	1	0	0	0	0	X	16位捕获模式,由CCPn的上升沿触发
	X	0	1	0	0	0	X	16位捕获模式,由CCPn的下降沿触发
	X	1	1	0	0	0	X	16位捕获模式,由CCPn的跳变触发
	1	0	0	1	0	0	X	16位软件定时器
	1	0	0	1	1	0	X	16位高速输出
	1	0	0	0	0	1	0	8位PWM

4. PCA的16位计数器 一 低8位CL和高8位CH

CL和CH地址分别为E9H和F9H,复位值均为00H,用于保存PCA的装载值。

5. PCA捕捉/比较寄存器 — CCAPnL(低位字节)和CCAPnH(高位字节)

当PCA模块用于捕获或比较时,它们用于保存各个模块的16位捕捉计数值;当PCA模块用于PWM模式时,它们用来控制输出的占空比。其中,n=0、1、2、3,分别对应模块0、模块1、模块2和模块3。复位值均为00H。它们对应的地址分别为:

CCAPOL — EAH、CCAPOH — FAH:模块0的捕捉/比较寄存器。

CCAPIL — EBH、CCAPIH — FBH:模块1的捕捉/比较寄存器。

CCAP2L - ECH、CCAP2H - FCH:模块2的捕捉/比较寄存器。

CCAP3L — EDH、CCAP3H — FDH:模块3的捕捉/比较寄存器。

6. PCA模块PWM寄存器PCA PWM0, PCA PWM1, PCA PWM2和PCA PWM3

PCA模块0的PWM寄存器的格式如下:

PCA PWM0: PCA模块0的PWM寄存器

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	B4	В3	B2	B1	В0
PCA_PWM0	F2H	name	-	-	-	-	-	-	EPC0H	EPC0L

EPC0H: 在PWM模式下,与CCAP0H组成9位数。

EPC0L: 在PWM模式下,与CCAP0L组成9位数。

PCA模块1的PWM寄存器的格式如下:

PCA PWM1: PCA模块1的PWM寄存器

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	В4	В3	B2	B1	В0
PCA_PWM1	F3H	name	-	-	-	-	-	-	EPC1H	EPC1L

EPC1H: 在PWM模式下,与CCAP1H组成9位数。

EPC1L: 在PWM模式下,与CCAP1L组成9位数。

PCA模块2的PWM寄存器的格式如下:

PCA PWM2: PCA模块2的PWM寄存器

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	В4	В3	B2	B1	В0
PCA_PWM2	F4H	name	-	-	-	-	-	-	EPC2H	EPC2L

EPC2H: 在PWM模式下,与CCAP2H组成9位数。

EPC2L: 在PWM模式下,与CCAP2L组成9位数。

PCA模块3的PWM寄存器的格式如下:

PCA PWM3: PCA模块3的PWM寄存器

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	В4	В3	B2	B1	В0
PCA_PWM3	F5H	name	-	-	-	-	-	-	ЕРС3Н	EPC3L

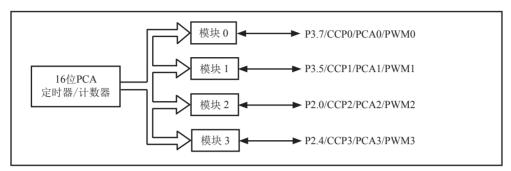
EPC3H: 在PWM模式下,与CCAP3H组成9位数。

EPC3L: 在PWM模式下,与CCAP3L组成9位数。

10.2 PCA/PWM模块的结构

STC12C5410AD系列单片机有4路可编程计数器阵列PCA/PWM

PCA含有一个特殊的16位定时器,有4个16位的捕获/比较模块与之相连,如下图所示。



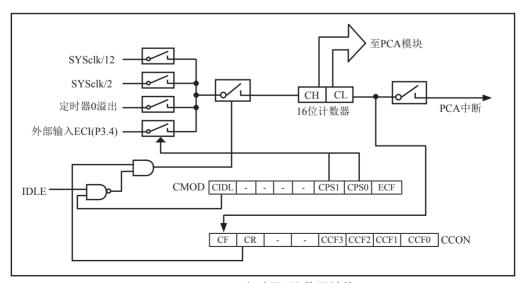
PCA模块结构

每个模块可编程工作在4种模式下:上升/下降沿捕获、软件定时器、高速输出或可调制脉冲输出。

STC12C5410AD系列: 模块0连接到P3.7/CCP0/PCA0/PWM0

模块1连接到P3. 5/CCP1/PCA1/PWM1 模块2连接到P2. 0/CCP2/PCA2/PWM2 模块3连接到P2. 4/CCP3/PCA3/PWM3

16位PCA定时器/计数器是2个模块的公共时间基准, 其结构如下图所示。



PCA 定时器/计数器结构

寄存器CH和CL的内容是正在自由递增计数的16位PCA定时器的值。PCA定时器是4个模块的公共时间基准,可通过编程工作在: 1/12系统时钟、1/2系统时钟、定时器0溢出或ECI脚的输入(P3.4)。定时器的计数源由CMOD特殊功能寄存器中的CPS1和CPS0位来确定(见CMOD特殊功能寄存器说明)。

CMOD特殊功能寄存器还有2个位与PCA相关。它们分别是: CIDL, 空闲模式下允许停止 PCA: ECF, 置位时, 使能PCA中断, 当PCA定时器溢出将PCA计数溢出标志CF (CCON, 7)置位。

CCON特殊功能寄存器包含PCA的运行控制位(CR)和PCA定时器标志(CF)以及各个模块的标志(CCF3/CCF2/CCF1/CCF0)。通过软件置位CR位(CCON. 6)来运行PCA。CR位被清零时PCA关闭。当PCA计数器溢出时,CF位(CCON. 7)置位,如果CMOD寄存器的ECF位置位,就产生中断。CF位只可通过软件清除。CCON寄存器的位0~3是PCA各个模块的标志(位0对应模块0,位1对应模块1,位2对应模块2,位3对应模块3),当发生匹配或比较时由硬件置位。这些标志也只能通过软件清除。所有模块共用一个中断向量。

PCA的每个模块都对应一个特殊功能寄存器。它们分别是:模块0对应CCAPMO,模块1对应CCAPM1,模块2对应CCAPM2,模块3对应CCAPM3。特殊功能寄存器包含了相应模块的工作模式控制位。

当模块发生匹配或比较时,ECCFn位(CCAPMn. 0, n=0, 1, 2, 3由工作的模块决定)使能CCON特殊功能寄存器的CCFn标志来产生中断。

PWM (CCAPMn.1) 用来使能脉宽调制模式。

当PCA计数值与模块的捕获/比较寄存器的值相匹配时,如果TOG位(CCAPMn. 2)置位,模块的CEXn输出将发生翻转。

当PCA计数值与模块的捕获/比较寄存器的值相匹配时,如果匹配位MATn(CCAPMn.3)置位,CCON寄存器的CCFn位将被置位。

CAPNn(CCAPMn. 4)和CAPPn(CCAPMn. 5)用来设置捕获输入的有效沿。CAPNn位使能下降沿有效,CAPPn位使能上升沿有效。如果两位都置位,则两种跳变沿都被使能,捕获可在两种跳变沿产生。

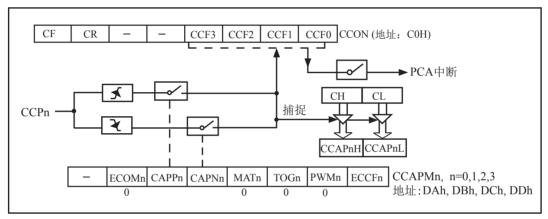
通过置位CCAPMn寄存器的ECOMn位(CCAPMn.6)来使能比较器功能。

每个PCA模块还对应另外两个寄存器,CCAPnH和CCAPnL。当出现捕获或比较时,它们用来保存16位的计数值。当PCA模块用在PWM模式中时,它们用来控制输出的占空比。

10.3 PCA模块的工作模式

10.3.1 捕获模式

PCA模块工作于捕获模式的结构图如下图所示。要使一个PCA模块工作在捕获模式,寄存器CCAPMn的两位(CAPNn和CAPPn)或其中任何一位必须置1。PCA模块工作于捕获模式时,对模块的外部CCPn输入(CCP0/P3.7,CCP1/P3.5,CCP2/P2.0,CCP3/P2.4)的跳变进行采样。当采样到有效跳变时,PCA硬件就将PCA计数器阵列寄存器(CH和CL)的值装载到模块的捕获寄存器中(CCAPnL和CCAPnH)。

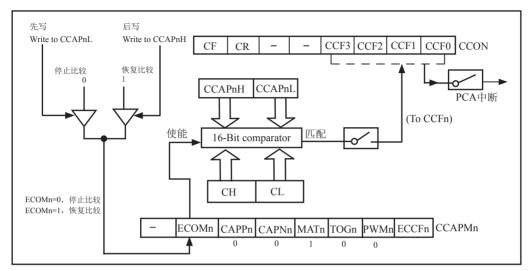


PCA Capture Mode (PCA捕获模式图)

如果CCON特殊功能寄存器中的位CCFn和CCAPMn特殊功能寄存器中的位ECCFn位被置位,将产生中断。可在中断服务程序中判断哪一个模块产生了中断,并注意中断标志位的软件清零问题。

10.3.2 16位软件定时器模式

16位软件定时器模式结构图如下图所示。



PCA Software Timer Mode/PCA模块的16位软件定时器模式/PCA比较模式

通过置位CCAPMn寄存器的ECOMn和MATn位,可使PCA模块用作软件定时器(上图)。PCA定时器的值与模块捕获寄存器的值相比较,当两者相等时,如果位CCFn(在CCON特殊功能寄存器中)和位ECCFn(在CCAPMn特殊功能寄存器中)都置位,将产生中断。

[CH,CL]每隔一定的时间自动加1,时间间隔取决于选择的时钟源。例如,当选择的时钟源为SYSclk/12,每12个时钟周期[CH,CL]加1。当[CH,CL]增加到等于[CCAPnH, CCAPnL]时,CCFn=1,产生中断请求。如果每次PCA模块中断后,在中断服务程序中断给[CCAPnH, CCAPnL]增加一个相同的数值,那么下次中断来临的间隔时间T也是相同的,从而实现了定时功能。定时时间的长短取决于时钟源的选择以及PCA计数器计数值的设置。下面举例说明PCA计数器计数值的计算方法。

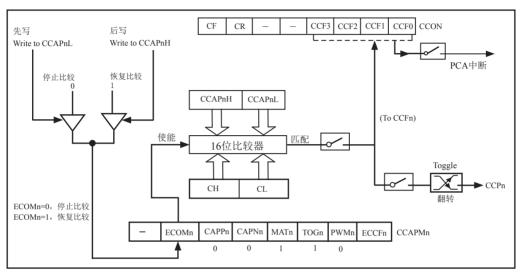
假设,系统时钟频率SYSclk = 18.432MHz,选择的时钟源为SYSclk/12,定时时间T为5ms,则PCA计数器计数值为:

PCA计数器的计数值 = $T/((1/SYSclk) \times 12) = 0.005/((1/18432000) \times 12) = 7680(10进制数)$ = 1E00H(16进制数)

也就是说,PCA计时器计数1E00H次,定时时间才是5ms,这也就是每次给[CCAPnH,CCAPnL]增加的数值(步长)。

10.3.3 高速输出模式

该模式中(下图),当PCA计数器的计数值与模块捕获寄存器的值相匹配时,PCA模块的CEXn输出将发生翻转。要激活高速输出模式,CCAPMn寄存器的TOGn,MATn和ECOMn位必须都置位。



PCA High-Speed Output Mode / PCA 高速输出模式

CCAPnL的值决定了PCA模块n的输出脉冲频率。当PCA时钟源是SYSclk/2时,输出脉冲的频率F为:

$$f = SYSclk / (4 \times CCAPnL)$$

其中, SYSclk为系统时钟频率。由此,可以得到CCAPnL的值CCAPnL = SYSclk / (4×f). 如果计算出的结果不是整数,则进行四舍五入取整,即

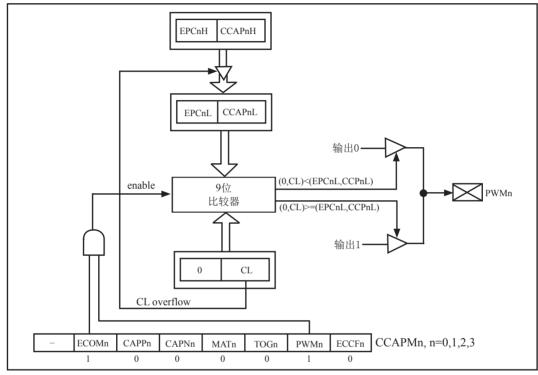
$$CCAPnL = INT (SYSclk / (4 \times f) + 0.5)$$

其中, INT()为取整运算,直接去掉小数。例如,假设SYSclk = 20MHz,要求PCA高速脉冲输出125kHz的方波,则CCAPnL中的值应为:

$$CCAPnL = INT (20000000 / (4 \times 125000) + 0.5) = INT (40 + 0.5) = 40 = 28H$$

10.3.4 脉宽调节模式(PWM)

脉宽调制(PWM, Pulse Width Modulation)是一种使用程序来控制波形占空比、周期、相位波形的技术,在三相电机驱动、D/A转换等场合有广泛的应用。STC12C5410AD系列单片机的PCA模块可以通过程序设定,使其工作于8位PWM模式。PWM模式的结构如下图所示。



PCA PWM mode / 可调制脉冲宽度输出模式

所有PCA模块都可用作PWM输出(上图)。输出频率取决于PCA定时器的时钟源。

由于所有模块共用仅有的PCA定时器,所有它们的输出频率相同。各个模块的输出占空比是独立变化的,与使用的捕获寄存器[EPCnL, CCAPnL]有关。当寄存器CL的值小于[EPCnL, CCAPnL]时,输出为低;当寄存器CL的值等于或大于[EPCnL, CCAPnL]时,输出为高。当CL的值由FF变为00溢出时,[EPCnH, CCAPnH]的内容装载到[EPCnL, CCAPnL]中。这样就可实现无干扰地更新PWM。要使能PWM模式,模块CCAPMn寄存器的PWMn和ECOMn位必须置位。

PCA时钟输入源可以从以下4种中选择一种: SYSclk/12, SYSclk/2, 定时器0的溢出, ECI/P3.4输入。

举例:要求PWM输出频率为38KHz,选SYSclk/2为PCA/PWM时钟输入源,求出SYSclk的值由计算公式38000=SYSclk/2/256,得到外部时钟频率SYSclk=38000 x 256 x 2=19,456,000

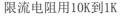
如果要实现可调频率的PWM输出,可选择定时器0的溢出率或者ECI脚的输入作为PCA/PWM的时钟输入源

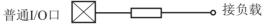
当EPCnL=0及ECCAPnL=00H时,PWM固定输出高

当EPCnL=1及CCAPnL=0FFH时,PWM固定输出低

当某个I/O口作为PWM使用时,该口的状态:

PWM之前口的状态	PWM输出时口的状态
弱上拉/准双向	强推挽输出/强上拉输出,要加输出限流电阻1K-10K
强推挽输出/强上拉输出	强推挽输出/强上拉输出,要加输出限流电阻1K-10K
仅为输入/高阻	PWM无效
开漏	开漏





10.4 用PCA功能扩展外部中断的示例程序(C程序和汇编程序)

```
1. C程序:
/*____*/
/* --- STC MCU Limited -----*/
/* --- 演示 STC 1T 系列单片机 用PCA功能扩展外部中断 -----*/
/* 如果要在程序中使用或在文章中引用该程序, -----*/
/* 请在程序中或文章中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 -----*/
#include "reg51.h"
#include "intrins.h"
typedef unsigned char BYTE;
typedef unsigned int WORD;
/*Declare SFR associated with the PCA */
        EPCAI
sbit
                       = IE^6:
sfr
        CCON
                       = 0xD8;
                                                      //PCA control register
sbit
        CCF0
                       = CCON^0;
                                                      //PCA module-0 interrupt flag
sbit
        CCF1
                       = CCON^1;
                                                      //PCA module-1 interrupt flag
sbit
        CR
                       = CCON^6;
                                                      //PCA timer run control bit
sbit
        CF
                       = CCON^7;
                                                      //PCA timer overflow flag
sfr
        CMOD
                       = 0xD9;
                                                      //PCA mode register
sfr
        CL
                       = 0xE9;
                                                      //PCA base timer LOW
        CH
                       = 0xF9;
                                                      //PCA base timer HIGH
sfr
sfr
        CCAPM0
                       = 0xDA;
                                                      //PCA module-0 mode register
        CCAP0L
                       = 0xEA;
                                                      //PCA module-0 capture register LOW
sfr
sfr
        CCAP0H
                       = 0xFA;
                                                      //PCA module-0 capture register HIGH
                       = 0xDB;
                                                      //PCA module-1 mode register
sfr
        CCAPM1
                       = 0xEB;
                                                      //PCA module-1 capture register LOW
sfr
        CCAP1L
                                                      //PCA module-1 capture register HIGH
sfr
        CCAP1H
                       = 0xFB;
        CCAPM2
                       = 0xDC;
                                                      //PCA module-2 mode register
sfr
sfr
        CCAP2L
                       = 0xEC;
                                                      //PCA module-2 capture register LOW
sfr
        CCAP2H
                       = 0xFC;
                                                      //PCA module-2 capture register HIGH
sfr
        CCAPM3
                       = 0xDD;
                                                      //PCA module-3 mode register
        CCAP3L
                       = 0xED;
                                                      //PCA module-3 capture register LOW
sfr
sfr
        CCAP3H
                       = 0xFD;
                                                      //PCA module-3 capture register HIGH
sfr
        PCAPWM0
                       = 0xF2;
        PCAPWM1
                       = 0xF3;
sfr
sfr
        PCAPWM2
                       = 0xF4;
        PCAPWM3
                       = 0xF5;
sfr
```

```
= P1^0;
sbit
         PCA LED
                                                                  //PCA test LED
void PCA isr() interrupt 7 using 1
         CCF0 = 0;
                                               //Clear interrupt flag
         PCA LED = !PCA LED;
                                               //toggle the test pin while CEX0(P1.3) have a falling edge
void main()
         CCON = 0;
                                     //Initial PCA control register
                                     //PCA timer stop running
                                     //Clear CF flag
                                     //Clear all module interrupt flag
                                     //Reset PCA base timer
         CL = 0;
         CH = 0;
         CMOD = 0x00;
                                     //Set PCA timer clock source as Fosc/12
                                     //Disable PCA timer overflow interrupt
                                     //PCA module-0 capture by a negative tigger on CEX0(P1.3)
         CCAPM0 = 0x11;
                                     //and enable PCA interrupt
//
         CCAPM0 = 0x21;
                                     //PCA module-0 capture by a rising edge on CEX0(P1.3)
                                     //and enable PCA interrupt
//
         CCAPM0 = 0x31;
                                     //PCA module-0 capture by a transition (falling/rising edge)
                                     //on CEX0(P1.3) and enable PCA interrupt
         CR = 1;
                                     //PCA timer start run
         EPCAI = 1;
         EA = 1;
         while (1);
```

2. 汇编程序:

/*			*/
/* STC MCU	J Limited		*/
/* 演示 STC	TT 系列单	片机 用PCA功能	能扩展外部中断*/
/* 如果要在程/	字中使用或	在文章中引用该	程序,*/
/* 请在程序中	或文章中注	明使用了STC的的	资料及程序* /
/*			*/
;/*Declare SFR	associated v	vith the PCA */	
EPCAI	BIT	IE.6	
CCON	EQU	0D8H	;PCA control register
CCF0	BIT	CCON.0	;PCA module-0 interrupt flag
CCF0 CCF1	BIT	CCON.0 CCON.1	;PCA module-1 interrupt flag
CR	BIT	CCON.1	;PCA timer run control bit
CF	BIT	CCON.7	
CMOD	EQU	OD9H	;PCA timer overflow flag ;PCA mode register
CMOD	EQU	0E9H	;PCA mode register
CH	EQU	0F9H	;PCA base timer HIGH
CCAPM0	-	0Г9П 0DAH	
CCAPMO CCAPOL	EQU EQU	0EAH	;PCA module-0 mode register
CCAP0L CCAP0H	EQU EQU	0FAH	;PCA module-0 capture register LOW
	-		;PCA module-0 capture register HIGH
CCAPM1 CCAP1L	EQU	0DBH	;PCA module-1 mode register
	EQU	0EBH	;PCA module-1 capture register LOW
CCAP1H	EQU	0FBH	;PCA module-1 capture register HIGH
CCAPM2	EQU	0DCH	;PCA module-2 mode register
CCAP2L	EQU	0ECH	;PCA module-2 capture register LOW
CCAP2H	EQU	0FCH	;PCA module-2 capture register HIGH
CCAPM3	EQU	0DDH	;PCA module-3 mode register
CCAP3L	EQU	0EDH	;PCA module-3 capture register LOW
ССАР3Н	EQU	0FDH	;PCA module-3 capture register HIGH
PCA_LED	BIT	P1.0	;PCA test LED
;ORG LJMF	0000H MAIN		

PCA IS	ORG	0033Н	
TCA_IS	CLR CPL RETI	CCF0 PCA_LED	;Clear interrupt flag ;toggle the test pin while CEX0(P1.3) have a falling edge
;	ORG	0100H	
MAIN:	MOV	CCON, #0	;Initial PCA control register ;PCA timer stop running ;Clear CF flag ;Clear all module interrupt flag
	CLR	A	;
	MOV	CL, A	;Reset PCA base timer
	MOV	CH, A	;
	MOV	CMOD, #00H	;Set PCA timer clock source as Fosc/12 ;Disable PCA timer overflow interrupt
	MOV	CCAPM0,#11H	;PCA module-0 capture by a falling edge on CEX0(P1.3) ;and enable PCA interrupt
;	MOV	CCAPM0,#21H	;PCA module-0 capture by a rising edge on CEX0(P1.3) ;and enable PCA interrupt
•	MOV	CCAPM0,#31H	;PCA module-0 capture by a transition (falling/rising edge) ;on CEX0(P1.3) and enable PCA interrupt
,	SETB	CR	;PCA timer start run
	SETB	EPCAI	
	SETB	EA	
	SJMP	\$	
,	END		

10.5 用PCA功能实现定时器的示例程序(C程序和汇编程序)

1. C程序:

```
/*_____*/
/* --- STC MCU Limited -----*/
/* --- 演示 STC 1T 系列单片机 用PCA功能实现16位定时器 -----*/
/* 如果要在程序中使用或在文章中引用该程序, -----*/
/* 请在程序中或文章中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 -----*/
#include "reg51.h"
#include "intrins.h"
#define FOSC
               18432000L
#define T100Hz (FOSC / 12 / 100)
typedef unsigned char
                       BYTE:
typedef unsigned int
                       WORD:
/*Declare SFR associated with the PCA */
sbit
        EPCAI
                       = IE^6:
sfr
        CCON
                       = 0xD8;
                                                      //PCA control register
shit
        CCF0
                       = CCON^0:
                                                      //PCA module-0 interrupt flag
        CCF1
                       = CCON^1:
                                                      //PCA module-1 interrupt flag
shit
                       = CCON^6;
shit
                                                      //PCA timer run control bit
        CR
                       = CCON^7;
                                                      //PCA timer overflow flag
shit
        CF
                       = 0xD9:
sfr
        CMOD
                                                      //PCA mode register
sfr
        CL
                       = 0xE9;
                                                      //PCA base timer LOW
sfr
        СН
                       = 0xF9:
                                                      //PCA base timer HIGH
sfr
        CCAPM0
                       = 0xDA;
                                                      //PCA module-0 mode register
sfr
        CCAP0L
                       = 0xEA:
                                                      //PCA module-0 capture register LOW
sfr
        CCAP0H
                       = 0xFA:
                                                      //PCA module-0 capture register HIGH
sfr
        CCAPM1
                       = 0xDB:
                                                      //PCA module-1 mode register
sfr
        CCAP1L
                       = 0xEB:
                                                      //PCA module-1 capture register LOW
                                                      //PCA module-1 capture register HIGH
sfr
                       = 0xFB:
        CCAP1H
sfr
        CCAPM2
                       = 0xDC:
                                                      //PCA module-2 mode register
                       = 0xEC:
                                                      //PCA module-2 capture register LOW
sfr
        CCAP2L
sfr
        CCAP2H
                       = 0xFC;
                                                      //PCA module-2 capture register HIGH
                                                      //PCA module-3 mode register
sfr
        CCAPM3
                       = 0xDD;
                                                      //PCA module-3 capture register LOW
sfr
        CCAP3L
                       = 0xED;
                                                      //PCA module-3 capture register HIGH
sfr
        CCAP3H
                       = 0xFD;
```

```
= P1^0;
                                                                //PCA test LED
sbit
         PCA LED
BYTE
         cnt:
WORD value;
void PCA isr() interrupt 7 using 1
         CCF0 = 0;
                                                       //Clear interrupt flag
         CCAPOL = value;
         CCAP0H = value >> 8;
                                                       //Update compare value
         value += T100Hz;
         if (cnt--=0)
                  cnt = 100;
                                                       //Count 100 times
                  PCA LED = !PCA LED;
                                                       //Flash once per second
void main()
         CCON = 0;
                                                       //Initial PCA control register
                                                       //PCA timer stop running
                                                       //Clear CF flag
                                                       //Clear all module interrupt flag
                                                       //Reset PCA base timer
         CL = 0;
         CH = 0;
         CMOD = 0x00;
                                                       //Set PCA timer clock source as Fosc/12
                                                       //Disable PCA timer overflow interrupt
         value = T100Hz;
         CCAP0L = value;
         CCAP0H = value >> 8;
                                                       //Initial PCA module-0
         value += T100Hz;
         CCAPM0 = 0x49;
                                                       //PCA module-0 work in 16-bit timer mode
                                                       //and enable PCA interrupt
         CR = 1;
                                                       //PCA timer start run
         EPCAI = 1;
         EA = 1;
         cnt = 0;
         while (1);
```

2. 汇编程序:

			片机 用PCA功能实现16位员	
			在文章中引用该程序,	
			明使用了STC的资料及程序 -	
			·	
T100Hz		EQU	3C00H	;(18432000 / 12 / 100)
;/*Decla	re SFR as	sociated w	vith the PCA */	
EPCAI		BIT	IE.6	
CCON		EQU	0D8H	;PCA control register
CCF0		BIT	CCON.0	;PCA module-0 interrupt flag
CCF1		BIT	CCON.1	;PCA module-1 interrupt flag
CR		BIT	CCON.6	;PCA timer run control bit
CF		BIT	CCON.7	;PCA timer overflow flag
CMOD		EQU	0D9H	;PCA mode register
CL		EQU	0E9H	;PCA base timer LOW
СН		EQU	0F9H	;PCA base timer HIGH
CCAPM	0	EQU	0DAH	;PCA module-0 mode register
CCAP0I		EQU	0EAH	;PCA module-0 capture register LOW
CCAP0I	I	EQU	0FAH	;PCA module-0 capture register HIGH
CCAPM		EQU	0DBH	;PCA module-1 mode register
CCAP1I		EQU	0EBH	;PCA module-1 capture register LOW
CCAP1I		EQU	0FBH	;PCA module-1 capture register HIGH
CCAPM		EQU	0DCH	;PCA module-2 mode register
CCAP2I		EQU	0ECH	;PCA module-2 capture register LOW
CCAP2I		EQU	0FCH	;PCA module-2 capture register HIGH
CCAPM		EQU	0DDH	;PCA module-3 mode register
CCAP3I		EQU	0EDH	;PCA module-3 capture register LOW
CCAP3I	H	EQU	0FDH	;PCA module-3 capture register HIGH
PCA_LE	ED	BIT	P1.0	;PCA test LED
CNT		EQU	20H	
, 	ORG LJMP	0000H MAIN		

```
ORG
                0033H
        LJMP
                PCA_ISR
        ORG
                0100H
MAIN:
        MOV
                SP,
                        #3FH
                                                 :Initial stack point
        MOV
                                                 ;Initial PCA control register
                CCON, #0
                                                 ;PCA timer stop running
                                                 ;Clear CF flag
                                                 ;Clear all module interrupt flag
        CLR
                Α
        MOV
                CL,
                        Α
                                                 :Reset PCA base timer
        MOV
                CH,
                        Α
        MOV
                CMOD, #00H
                                                 ;Set PCA timer clock source as Fosc/12
                                                 ;Disable PCA timer overflow interrupt
        MOV
                CCAP0L,#LOW T100Hz
        MOV
                CCAP0H,#HIGH T100Hz
                                                 :Initial PCA module-0
        MOV
                CCAPM0,#49H
                                   ;PCA module-0 work in 16-bit timer mode and enable PCA interrupt
        SETB
                CR
                                                 :PCA timer start run
        SETB
                EPCAI
        SETB
                EA
        MOV
                CNT,
                        #100
        SJMP
                $
PCA ISR:
        PUSH
                PSW
        PUSH
                ACC
        CLR
                CCF0
                                                 ;Clear interrupt flag
        MOV
                A,
                        CCAP0L
                                                 ;Update compare value
        ADD
                        #LOW T100Hz
                A,
        MOV
                CCAP0L,A
        MOV
                        CCAP0H
                A,
        ADDC
                A,
                        #HIGH T100Hz
        MOV
                CCAP0H,A
        DJNZ
                CNT.
                                                 ;count 100 times
                        PCA_ISR_EXIT
        MOV
                CNT,
                        #100
        CPL
                PCA LED
                                                 ;Flash once per second
PCA ISR EXIT:
        POP
                ACC
        POP
                PSW
        RETI
        END
```

10.6 PCA输出高速脉冲的示例程序(C程序和汇编程序)

```
1. C程序:
              */
/* --- STC MCU Limited -----*/
/* --- 演示 STC 1T 系列单片机 PCA输出高速脉冲 -----*/
/* 如果要在程序中使用或在文章中引用该程序, -----*/
/* 请在程序中或文章中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 -----*/
#include "reg51.h"
#include "intrins.h"
      FOSC
#define
               18432000L
#define
       T100KHz (FOSC / 4 / 100000)
typedef unsigned char
                       BYTE;
typedef unsigned int
                       WORD;
/*Declare SFR associated with the PCA */
sbit
       EPCAI
                       = IE^6;
sfr
       CCON
                       = 0xD8:
                                                       //PCA control register
       CCF0
                       = CCON^0;
sbit
                                                       //PCA module-0 interrupt flag
       CCF1
                         CCON^1;
                                                       //PCA module-1 interrupt flag
sbit
sbit
       CR
                         CCON^6;
                                                       //PCA timer run control bit
       CF
                         CCON^7;
sbit
                                                       //PCA timer overflow flag
       CMOD
                         0xD9;
                                                       //PCA mode register
sfr
sfr
       CL
                         0xE9;
                                                       //PCA base timer LOW
sfr
       CH
                         0xF9;
                                                       //PCA base timer HIGH
sfr
        CCAPM0
                         0xDA;
                                                       //PCA module-0 mode register
sfr
       CCAP0L
                       = 0xEA;
                                                       //PCA module-0 capture register LOW
sfr
       CCAP0H
                       = 0xFA;
                                                       //PCA module-0 capture register HIGH
       CCAPM1
                       = 0xDB;
                                                       //PCA module-1 mode register
sfr
sfr
       CCAP1L
                       = 0xEB;
                                                       //PCA module-1 capture register LOW
sfr
       CCAP1H
                       = 0xFB;
                                                       //PCA module-1 capture register HIGH
       CCAPM2
                       = 0xDC;
                                                       //PCA module-2 mode register
sfr
       CCAP2L
                       = 0xEC;
                                                       //PCA module-2 capture register LOW
sfr
       CCAP2H
                       = 0xFC;
                                                       //PCA module-2 capture register HIGH
sfr
       CCAPM3
                       = 0xDD;
                                                       //PCA module-3 mode register
sfr
sfr
       CCAP3L
                       = 0xED;
                                                       //PCA module-3 capture register LOW
                                                       //PCA module-3 capture register HIGH
sfr
       CCAP3H
                       = 0xFD;
```

```
PCA_LED
sbit
                           = P1^0;
                                                                //PCA test LED
BYTE
         cnt;
WORD value;
void PCA isr() interrupt 7 using 1
         CCF0 = 0;
                                              //Clear interrupt flag
         CCAP0L = value;
         CCAPOH = value >> 8;
                                              //Update compare value
         value += T100KHz;
void main()
         CCON = 0;
                                              //Initial PCA control register
                                              //PCA timer stop running
                                              //Clear CF flag
                                              //Clear all module interrupt flag
         CL = 0;
                                              //Reset PCA base timer
         CH = 0;
         CMOD = 0x02;
                                              //Set PCA timer clock source as Fosc/2
                                              //Disable PCA timer overflow interrupt
         value = T100KHz;
                                              //P1.3 output 100KHz square wave
         CCAPOL = value;
         CCAP0H = value >> 8;
                                              //Initial PCA module-0
         value += T100KHz;
                                              //PCA module-0 work in 16-bit timer mode
         CCAPM0 = 0x4d;
                                              //and enable PCA interrupt, toggle the output pin CEX0(P1.3)
         CR = 1;
                                              //PCA timer start run
         EPCAI = 1;
         EA = 1;
         cnt = 0;
         while (1);
```

2. 汇编程序:

/*			*/
/* STC MCU I	Limited		*/
/* 演示 STC	IT 系列单	片机 PCA输出高速脉冲	*/
/* 如果要在程序	中使用或	在文章中引用该程序,	*/
/* 请在程序中或	文章中注	明使用了STC的资料及程序 -	*/
/*			*/
T100KHz	EQU	2EH	;(18432000 / 4 / 100000)
;/*Declare SFR as	ssociated v	vith the PCA */	
CCON	EQU	0D8H	;PCA control register
CCF0	BIT	CCON.0	;PCA module-0 interrupt flag
CCF1	BIT	CCON.1	;PCA module-1 interrupt flag
CR	BIT	CCON.6	;PCA timer run control bit
CF	BIT	CCON.7	;PCA timer overflow flag
CMOD	EQU	0D9H	;PCA mode register
CL	EQU	0E9H	;PCA base timer LOW
СН	EQU	0F9H	;PCA base timer HIGH
CCAPM0	EQU	0DAH	;PCA module-0 mode register
CCAP0L	EQU	0EAH	;PCA module-0 capture register LOW
CCAP0H	EQU	0FAH	;PCA module-0 capture register HIGH
CCAPM1	EQU	0DBH	;PCA module-1 mode register
CCAP1L	EQU	0EBH	;PCA module-1 capture register LOW
CCAP1H	EQU	0FBH	;PCA module-1 capture register HIGH
CCAPM2	EQU	0DCH	;PCA module-2 mode register
CCAP2L	EQU	0ECH	;PCA module-2 capture register LOW
CCAP2H	EQU	0FCH	;PCA module-2 capture register HIGH
CCAPM3	EQU	0DDH	;PCA module-3 mode register
CCAP3L	EQU	0EDH	;PCA module-3 capture register LOW
CCAP3H	EQU	0FDH	;PCA module-3 capture register HIGH
;			
ORG	H0000		
LJMP	MAIN		
ORG	0033H		
PCA ISR:			
PUSH	PSW		
PUSH	ACC		
CLR	CCF0		;Clear interrupt flag

	MOV ADD MOV CLR ADDC MOV	A A, CCAP0H	;Update compare value
	R_EXIT: POP POP RETI	ACC PSW	
MAIN:	ORG	0100H	
MAIN.	MOV	CCON, #0	;Initial PCA control register ;PCA timer stop running ;Clear CF flag ;Clear all module interrupt flag
	CLR	A	;
	MOV	CL, A	;Reset PCA base timer
	MOV	,	;
		CMOD, #02H	;Set PCA timer clock source as Fosc/2 ;Disable PCA timer overflow interrupt
,	MOV	 CCAP0L,#T100KHz	;P1.3 output 100KHz square wave
		CCAP0H,#0	;Initial PCA module-0
		CCAPM0,#4dH	;PCA module-0 work in 16-bit timer mode ;and enable PCA interrupt, toggle the output pin CEX0(P1.3)
,	SETB		;PCA timer start run
	SETB	EA	,
	SJMP	\$	
,	END		

10.7 PCA输出PWM的示例程序(C程序和汇编程序)

1. C程序:

```
/*_____*/
/* --- STC MCU Limited -----*/
/* --- 演示 STC 1T 系列单片机 PCA输出PWM -----*/
/* 如果要在程序中使用或在文章中引用该程序, -----*/
/* 请在程序中或文章中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 -----*/
/*_____*/
#include "reg51.h"
#include "intrins.h"
#define FOSC
               18432000L
typedef unsigned char
                      BYTE:
typedef unsigned int
                      WORD:
/*Declare SFR associated with the PCA */
sfr
       CCON
                      = 0xD8;
                                                    //PCA control register
sbit
       CCF0
                      = CCON^0:
                                                    //PCA module-0 interrupt flag
sbit
       CCF1
                      = CCON^1:
                                                    //PCA module-1 interrupt flag
                                                    //PCA timer run control bit
sbit
       CR
                      = CCON^6;
       CF
                        CCON^7;
                                                    //PCA timer overflow flag
sbit
                                                    //PCA mode register
sfr
       CMOD
                      = 0xD9:
                                                    //PCA base timer LOW
sfr
                        0xE9;
       CL
sfr
       CH
                      = 0xF9;
                                                    //PCA base timer HIGH
                      = 0xDA:
                                                    //PCA module-0 mode register
sfr
       CCAPM0
sfr
       CCAP0L
                      = 0xEA;
                                                    //PCA module-0 capture register LOW
                                                    //PCA module-0 capture register HIGH
       CCAP0H
                      = 0xFA;
sfr
sfr
       CCAPM1
                      = 0xDB;
                                                    //PCA module-1 mode register
       CCAP1L
                                                    //PCA module-1 capture register LOW
sfr
                      = 0xEB;
                                                    //PCA module-1 capture register HIGH
sfr
       CCAP1H
                      = 0xFB;
                                                    //PCA module-2 mode register
sfr
       CCAPM2
                      = 0xDC;
sfr
       CCAP2L
                      = 0xEC;
                                                    //PCA module-2 capture register LOW
sfr
       CCAP2H
                      = 0xFC;
                                                    //PCA module-2 capture register HIGH
sfr
       CCAPM3
                      = 0xDD:
                                                    //PCA module-3 mode register
sfr
       CCAP3L
                      = 0xED;
                                                    //PCA module-3 capture register LOW
sfr
       CCAP3H
                      = 0xFD;
                                                    //PCA module-3 capture register HIGH
sfr
       PCAPWM0
                      = 0xF2:
sfr
       PCAPWM1
                      = 0xF3:
sfr
       PCAPWM2
                      = 0xF4;
sfr
       PCAPWM3
                      = 0xF5;
```

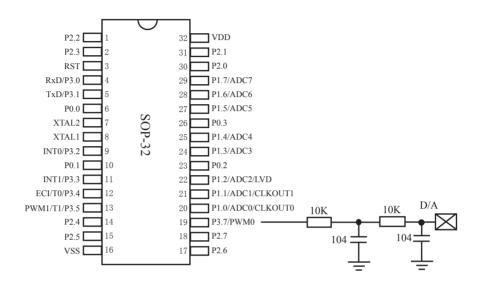
```
void main()
         CCON = 0;
                                             //Initial PCA control register
                                             //PCA timer stop running
                                             //Clear CF flag
                                             //Clear all module interrupt flag
                                             //Reset PCA base timer
         CL = 0;
         CH = 0;
         CMOD = 0x02;
                                             //Set PCA timer clock source as Fosc/2
                                             //Disable PCA timer overflow interrupt
         CCAP0H = CCAP0L = 0x80;
                                             //PWM0 port output 50% duty cycle square wave
                                             //PCA module-0 work in 8-bit PWM mode
         CCAPM0 = 0x42;
                                             //and no PCA interrupt
         CCAP1H = CCAP1L = 0xff;
                                             //PWM1 port output 0% duty cycle square wave
         PCAPWM1 = 0x03;
         CCAPM1 = 0x42;
                                             //PCA module-1 work in 8-bit PWM mode
                                             //and no PCA interrupt
         CR = 1;
                                             //PCA timer start run
         while (1);
```

2. 汇编程序:

/*				*/
/* ST	C MCU I	Limited		*/
/* 演	示 STC 1	T 系列单	片机 PCA输出PWM	*/
/* 如果	要在程序	中使用或	在文章中引用该程序,	*/
/* 请在#	程序中或	文章中注	明使用了STC的资料及程序 -	*/
/*				*/
;/*Decla	re SFR as	sociated w	vith the PCA */	
CCON		EQU	0D8H	;PCA control register
CCF0		BIT	CCON.0	;PCA module-0 interrupt flag
CCF1		BIT	CCON.1	;PCA module-1 interrupt flag
CR		BIT	CCON.6	;PCA timer run control bit
CF		BIT	CCON.7	;PCA timer overflow flag
CMOD		EQU	0D9H	;PCA mode register
CL		EQU	0E9H	;PCA base timer LOW
CH		EQU	0F9H	;PCA base timer HIGH
CCAPM	01	EQU	0DAH	;PCA module-0 mode register
CCAP01	L	EQU	0EAH	;PCA module-0 capture register LOW
CCAP01	Н	EQU	0FAH	;PCA module-0 capture register HIGH
CCAPM	[1	EQU	0DBH	;PCA module-1 mode register
CCAP11	L	EQU	0EBH	;PCA module-1 capture register LOW
CCAP11	Н	EQU	0FBH	;PCA module-1 capture register HIGH
CCAPM	12	EQU	0DCH	;PCA module-2 mode register
CCAP21	L	EQU	0ECH	;PCA module-2 capture register LOW
CCAP21	Н	EQU	0FCH	;PCA module-2 capture register HIGH
CCAPM	13	EQU	0DDH	;PCA module-3 mode register
CCAP31	L	EQU	0EDH	;PCA module-3 capture register LOW
CCAP31	Н	EQU	0FDH	;PCA module-3 capture register HIGH
;	ORG	0000Н		
	201111	1111111		
,	ORG	0100H		
MAIN:	UNU	010011		
WIATIN.	MOV	CCON,	#0	;Initial PCA control register
	IVIO V	CCON,	πυ	;PCA timer stop running
				;Clear CF flag
				;Clear all module interrupt flag
				Crear an module interrupt mag

CLR Α MOV CL, A :Reset PCA base timer MOV CH, Α MOV CMOD, #02H ;Set PCA timer clock source as Fosc/2 ;Disable PCA timer overflow interrupt MOV A, #080H ;PWM0 port output 50% duty cycle square wave MOV CCAP0H,A MOV CCAP0L,A MOV CCAPM0,#42H ;PCA module-0 work in 8-bit PWM mode and no PCA interrupt MOV A, #0C0H ;PWM1 port output 25% duty cycle square wave MOV CCAP1H,A MOV CCAP1L,A MOV CCAPM1,#42H ;PCA module-1 work in 8-bit PWM mode and no PCA interrupt ;PCA timer start run **SETB** CR SJMP \$ **END**

10.8 利用PWM实现D/A功能的典型应用线路图



第11章 同步串行外围接口(SPI接口)

STC12C5410AD系列单片机还提供另一种高速串行通信接口 —— SPI接口。SPI是一种全双工、高速、同步的通信总线,有两种操作模式:主模式和从模式。在主模式中支持高达3 Mbps的速率(工作频率为12MHz时,如果CPU主频采用20MHz到36MHz,则可更高,从模式时速度无法太快,SYSclk/8以内较好),还具有传输完成标志和写冲突标志保护。

11.1 与SPI功能模块相关的特殊功能寄存器

STC12C5410AD系列 1T 8051单片机SPI功能模块特殊功能寄存器 SPI Management SFRs

符号	描述	地址		位地址及其符号							
何与	油 型		В7	В6	В5	В4	В3	В2	В1	В0	┩ 复位值
SPCTL	SPI Control Register	85H	SSIG	SPEN	DORD	MSTR	CPOL	CPHA	SPR1	SPR0	0000,0100
SPSTAT	SPI Status Register	84H	SPIF	WCOL	-	-	-	-	-	-	00xx,xxxx
SPDAT	SPI Data Register	86H									0000,0000

1. SPI控制寄存器SPCTL

SPI控制寄存器的格式如下:

SPCTL: SPI控制寄存器

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	В4	В3	B2	B1	В0
SPCTL	85H	name	SSIG	SPEN	DORD	MSTR	CPOL	СРНА	SPR1	SPR0

SSIG: SS引脚忽略控制位。

SSIG=1, MSTR(位4)确定器件为主机还是从机:

SSIG=0, SS脚用于确定器件为主机还是从机、SS脚可作为I/O口使用(见SPI主从选择表)

SPEN: SPI使能位。

SPEN=1, SPI使能:

SPEN=0, SPI被禁止, 所有SPI引脚都作为I/O口使用。

DORD: 设定SPI数据发送和接收的位顺序。

DORD=1,数据字的LSB(最低位)最先发送; DORD=0,数据字的MSB(最高位)最先发送。

MSTR: 主/从模式选择位(见SPI主从选择表)。

CPOL: SPI时钟极性。

CPOL=1, SPICLK空闲时为高电平。SPICLK的前时钟沿为下降沿而后沿为上升沿。CPOL=0, SPICLK空闲时为低电平。SPICLK的前时钟沿为上升沿而后沿为下降沿。

CPHA: SPI时钟相位选择。

CPHA=1,数据在SPICLK的前时钟沿驱动,并在后时钟沿采样。

CPHA=0,数据在SS为低(SSIG=00)时被驱动,在SPICLK的后时钟沿被改变,并在前时钟沿被采样。(注:SSIG=1时的操作未定义)

SPR1、SPR0: SPI时钟速率选择控制位。SPI时钟选择如下表所列。

SPI时钟频率的选择

SPR1	SPR0	时钟(SCLK)
0	0	CPU_CLK/4
0	1	CPU_CLK/16
1	0	CPU_CLK/64
1	1	CPU_CLK/128

其中, CPU CLK是CPU时钟。

2. SPI状态寄存器SPSTAT

SPI状态寄存器的格式如下:

SPSTAT: SPI状态寄存器

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	В4	В3	В2	B1	В0
SPCTL	CDH	name	SPIF	WCOL	-	-	-	-	-	-

SPIF: SPI传输完成标志。

当一次串行传输完成时,SPIF置位。此时,如果SPI中断被打开(即ESPI (IE2.1)和 EA(IE.7)都置位),则产生中断。当SPI处于主模式且SSIG=0时,如果SS为输入并被驱动为低电平,SPIF也将置位,表示"模式改变"。SPIF标志通过软件向其写入"1"清零。

WCOL: SPI写冲突标志。

在数据传输的过程中如果对SPI 数据寄存器SPDAT执行写操作,WCOL将置位。WCOL标志通过软件向其写入 $^{\prime\prime}1^{\prime\prime}$ 清零。

3. SPI数据寄存器SPDAT

SPI数据寄存器的格式如下:

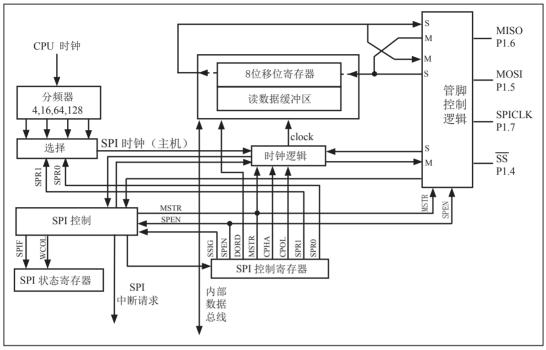
SPDAT: SPI数据寄存器

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	В4	В3	B2	B1	В0
SPDAT	CFH	name								

SPDAT.7 - SPDAT.0: 传输的数据位Bit7~Bit0

11.2 SPI接口的结构

STC12C5410AD系列单片机的SPI功能方框图如下图所示。



SPI 功能方框图

SPI的核心是一个8位移位寄存器和数据缓冲器,数据可以同时发送和接收。在SPI数据的传输过程中,发送和接收的数据都存储在数据缓冲器中。

对于主模式,若要发送一字节数据,只需将这个数据写到SPDAT寄存器中。主模式下 \overline{SS} 信号不是必需的;但是在从模式下,必须在 \overline{SS} 信号变为有效并接收到合适的时钟信号后,方可进行数据传输。在从模式下,如果一个字节传输完成后, \overline{SS} 信号变为高电平,这个字节立即被硬件逻辑标志为接收完成,SPI接口准备接收下一个数据。

11.3 SPI接口的数据通信

SPI接口有4个管脚: SCLK/P1.7, MOSI/P1.5, MISO/P1.6和SS/P1.4。

MOSI (Master Out Slave In,主出从入): 主器件的输出和从器件的输入,用于主器件到从器件的串行数据传输。根据SPI规范,多个从机共享一根MOSI信号线。在时钟边界的前半周期,主机将数据放在MOSI信号线上,从机在该边界处获取该数据。

MISO (Master In Slave Out, 主入从出): 从器件的输出和主器件的输入,用于实现从器件到主器件的数据传输。SPI规范中,一个主机可连接多个从机,因此,主机的MISO信号线会连接到多个从机上,或者说,多个从机共享一根MISO信号线。当主机与一个从机通信时,其他从机应将其MISO引脚驱动置为高阻状态。

SCLK (SPI Clock, 串行时钟信号): 串行时钟信号是主器件的输出和从器件的输入,用于同步主器件和从器件之间在MOSI和MISO线上的串行数据传输。当主器件启动一次数据传输时,自动产生8个SCLK时钟周期信号给从机。在SCLK的每个跳变处(上升沿或下降沿)移出一位数据。所以,一次数据传输可以传输一个字节的数据。

SCLK、MOSI和MISO通常和两个或更多SPI器件连接在一起。数据通过MOSI由主机传送到从机,通过MISO由从机传送到主机。SCLK信号在主模式时为输出,在从模式时为输入。如果SPI系统被禁止,即SPEN(SPCTL.6)=0(复位值),这些管脚都可作为I/O口使用。

SS(Slave Select,从机选择信号): 这是一个输入信号,主器件用它来选择处于从模式的 SPI模块。主模式和从模式下,SS的使用方法不同。在主模式下,SPI接口只能有一个主机,不存在主机选择问题。该模式下SS不是必需的。主模式下通常将主机的SS管脚通过10KΩ的电阻上拉高电平。每一个从机的SS接主机的I/0口,由主机控制电平高低,以便主机选择从机。在从模式下,不了发送还是接收,SS信号必须有效。因此在一次数据传输开始之前必须将SS为低电平。SPI主机可以使用I/0口选择一个SPI器件作为当前的从机。在典型的配置中,SPI主机使用I/O口选择一个SPI器件作为当前的从机。

SPI从器件通过其SS脚确定是否被选择。如果满足下面的条件之一,SS就被忽略:

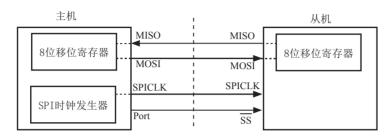
- 如果SPI系统被禁止,即SPEN(SPCTL.6)=0(复位值)
- 如果SPI配置为主机,即MSTR(SPCTL.4)=1,并且P1.4配置为输出(通过P1M0.4和P1M1.4)
- 如果SS脚被忽略,即SSIG(SPCTL.7)=1,该脚配置用于I/O口功能。

注:即使SPI被配置为主机(MSTR = 1),它仍然可以通过拉低 \overline{SS} 脚配置为从机(如果P1.4配置为输入且SSIG=0)。要使能该特性,应当置位SPIF(SPSTAT.7)。

11.3.1 SPI接口的数据通信方式

STC12C5410AD系列单片机的SPI接口的数据通信方式有3种:单主机—从机方式、双器件方式(器件可互为主机和从机)和单主机—多从机方式。

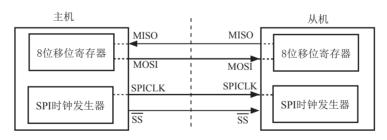
单主机一单从机方式的连接图如下SPI图1所示。



SPI图1 SPI单主机一单从机 配置

在上图SPI图1中,从机的SSIG(SPCTL.7)为0,SS用于选择从机。SPI主机可使用任何端口(包括P1.4/SS)来驱动SS脚。主机SPI与从机SPI的8位移位寄存器连接成一个循环的16位移位寄存器。当主机程序向SPDAT寄存器写入一个字节时,立即启动一个连续的8位移位通信过程:主机的SCLK引脚向从机的SCLK引脚发出一串脉冲,在这串脉冲的驱动下,主机SPI的8位移位寄存器中的数据移动到了从机SPI的8移位寄存器中。与此同时,从机SPI的8位移位寄存器中的数据移动到了主机SPI的8位移位寄存器中。由此,主机既可向从机发送数据,又可读从机中的数据。

双器件方式(器件可互为主机和从机)的连接图如下SPI图2所示。



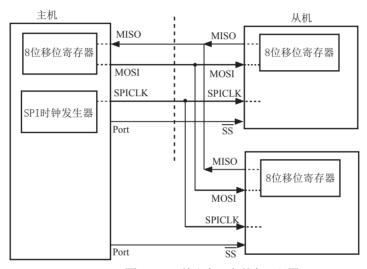
SPI图2 SPI双器件配置(器件可互为主从)

上图SPI图2所示为两个器件互为主从的情况。当没有发生SPI操作时,两个器件都可配置为主机(MSTR=1),将SSIG清零并将P1.4(SS)配置为准双向模式。当其中一个器件启动传输时,它可将P1.4配置为输出并驱动为低电平,这样就强制另一个器件变为从机。

双方初始化时将自己设置成忽略 SS 脚的SPI从模式。当一方要主动发送数据时,先检测 SS 脚的电平,如果 SS 脚是高电平,就将自己设置成忽略 SS 脚的主模式。通信双方平时将SPI设置成没有被选中的从模式。在该模式下,MISO、MOSI、SCLK均为输入,当多个MCU的SPI接口以此模式并联时不会发生总线冲突。这种特性在互为主/从、一主多从等应用中很有用。

注意: 互为主/从模式时,双方的SPI速率必须相同。如果使用外部晶体振荡器,双方的晶体频率也要相同。

双器件方式(器件可互为主机和从机)的连接图如下SPI图3所示。



SPI图3 SPI单主机-多从机 配置

在上图SPI图3 中,从机的SSIG($\underline{SPCTL.7}$)为0,从机通过对应的 \overline{SS} 信号被选中。SPI主机可使用任何端口(包括P1.4/ \overline{SS})来驱动 \overline{SS} 脚。

11.3.2 对SPI进行配置

STC12C5410AD系列单片机进行SPI通信时,主机和从机的选择由SPEN、SSIG、SS引脚(P1.4)和MSTR联合控制。下表所示为主/从模式的配置以及模式的使用和传输方向。

SPI 主从模式选择

SPEN	SSIG	SS脚 P1.4	MSTR	主或从 模式	MISO P1.6	MOSI P1.5	SPICLK P1.7	备注
0	X	P1. 4	X	SPI功能禁止	P1.6	P1.5	P1.7	SPI禁止。P1.4/P1.5/P1.6/P1.7作为普通I/O口使用
1	0	0	0	从机模式	输出	输入	输入	选择作为从机
1	0	1	0	从机模式 未被选中	高阻	输入	输入	未被选中。MISO为高阻状态,以避 免总线冲突
1	0	0	1>0	从机模式	输出	输入	输入	P1.4/SS配置为输入或准双向口。 SSIG为0。如果择SS被驱动为低电 平,则被选择作为从机。当SS变为 低电平时,MSTR将清零。 注:当SS处于输入模式时,如被驱 动为低电平且SSIG=0时,MSTR位 自动清零。
1	0	1	1	主(空闲)	输入	高阻	高阻	当主机空闲时MOSI和SCLK为高 阻态以避免总线冲突。用户必须 将SCLK上拉或下拉(根据CPOL/ SPCTL.3 的取值)以避免SCLK出现 悬浮状态。
				主(激活)		输出	输出	作为主机激活时,MOSI和SCLK为 推挽输出
1	1	P1.4	0	从	输出	输入	输入	
1	1	P1.4	1	主	输入	输出	输出	

11.3.3 作为主机/从机时的额外注意事项

作为从机时的额外注意事项

当CPHA=0时,SSIG必须为0, SS脚必须取反并且在每个连续的串行字节之间重新设置为高电平。如果SPDAT寄存器在SS有效(低电平)时执行写操作,那么将导致一个写冲突错误。CPHA=0目SSIG=0时的操作未定义。

当CPHA=1时,SSIG可以置位。如果SSIG=0,SS脚可在连续传输之间保持低有效(即一直固定为低电平)。这种方式有时适用于具有单固定主机和单从机驱动MISO数据线的系统。

作为主机时的额外注意事项

在SPI中,传输总是由主机启动的。如果SPI使能(SPEN=1)并选择作为主机,主机对SPI数据寄存器的写操作将启动SPI时钟发生器和数据的传输。在数据写入SPDAT之后的半个到一个SPI位时间后,数据将出现在MOSI脚。

需要注意的是,主机可以通过将对应器件的SS脚驱动为低电平实现与之通信。写入主机SPDAT寄存器的数据从MOSI脚移出发送到从机的MOSI脚。同时从机SPDAT寄存器的数据从MISO脚移出发送到主机的MISO脚。

传输完一个字节后,SPI时钟发生器停止,传输完成标志(SPIF)置位并产生一个中断(如果SPI中断使能)。主机和从机CPU的两个移位寄存器可以看作是一个16 循环移位寄存器。当数据从主机移位传送到从机的同时,数据也以相反的方向移入。这意味着在一个移位周期中,主机和从机的数据相互交换。

11.3.4 通过SS改变模式

如果SPEN=1,SSIG=0且MSTR=1,SPI使能为主机模式。 \overline{SS} 脚可配置为输入或准双向模式。这种情况下,另外一个主机可将该脚驱动为低电平,从而将该器件选择为SPI从机并向其发送数据。

为了避免争夺总线, SPI系统执行以下动作:

- 1) MSTR清零并且CPU变成从机。这样SPI就变成从机。MOSI和SCLK强制变为输入模式,而MISO则变为输出模式。
- 2) SPSTAT的SPIF标志位置位。如果SPI中断已被使能,则产生SPI中断。

用户软件必须一直对MSTR位进行检测,如果该位被一个从机选择所清零而用户想继续将 SPI作为主机,这时就必须重新置位MSTR,否则就进入从机模式。

11.3.5 写冲突

SPI在发送时为单缓冲,在接收时为双缓冲。这样在前一次发送尚未完成之前,不能将新的数据写入移位寄存器。当发送过程中对数据寄存器进行写操作时,WCOL位(SPSTAT.6)将置位以指示数据冲突。在这种情况下,当前发送的数据继续发送,而新写入的数据将丢失。

当对主机或从机进行写冲突检测时,主机发生写冲突的情况是很罕见的,因为主机拥有数据传输的完全控制权。但从机有可能发生写冲突,因为当主机启动传输时,从机无法进行控制。

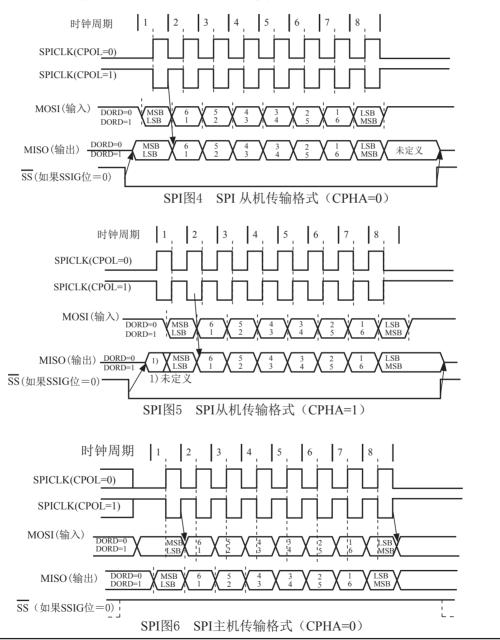
接收数据时,接收到的数据传送到一个并行读数据缓冲区,这样将释放移位寄存器以进行下一个数据的接收。但必须在下个字符完全移入之前从数据寄存器中读出接收到的数据,否则,前一个接收数据将丢失。

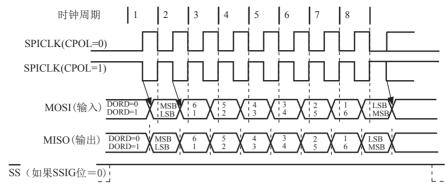
WCOL可通过软件向其写入"1"清零。

11.3.6 数据模式

时钟相位位(CPHA)允许用户设置采样和改变数据的时钟边沿。时钟极性位CPOL允许用户设置时钟极性。

SPI图4~图7 所示为时钟相位位CPHA的不同设定。





SPI图7 SPI主机传输格式(CPHA=1)

SPI接口的时钟信号线SCLK有Idle和Active两种状态: Idle状态时指在不进行数据传输的时候(或数据传输完成后)SCLK所处的状态: Active是与Idle相对的一种状态。

时钟相位位(CPHA)允许用户设置采样和改变数据的时钟边沿。时钟极性CPOL允许用户设置时钟极性。

如果CPOL=0, Idle状态=低电平, Active状态=高电平:

如果CPOL=1, Idle状态=高电平, Active状态=低电平。

主机总是在SCLK=Idle状态时,将下一位要发送的数据置于数据线MOSI上。

从Idle状态到Active状态的转变,称为SCLK前沿;从Active状态到Idle状态的转变,称为SCLK后沿。一个SCLK前沿和后沿构成一个SCLK时钟周期,一个SCLK时钟周期传输一位数据。

SPI时钟预分频器选择

SPI时钟预分频器选择是通过SPCTL寄存器中的SPR1-SPR0位实现的

SPI时钟频率的选择

SPR1	SPR0	时钟(SCLK)
0	0	CPU_CLK/4
0	1	CPU_CLK/16
1	0	CPU_CLK/64
1	1	CPU_CLK/128

其中, CPU CLK是CPU时钟。

11.4 适用单主单从系统的SPI功能测试程序

11.4.1 中断方式

1. C程序

```
/* --- STC MCU Limited -----*/
/* --- 演示STC 1T 系列单片机 SPI功能(适用单主单从,中断方式)----*/
/* 如果要在程序中使用或在文章中引用该程序, -----*/
/* 请在程序中或文章中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 -----*/
#include "reg51.h"
#define MASTER
                                             //define:master undefine:slave
#define FOSC
               18432000L
#define BAUD (256 - FOSC / 32 / 115200)
typedef unsigned char
                      BYTE;
typedef unsigned int
                      WORD;
typedef unsigned long
                      DWORD;
sfr
       AUXR = 0x8e;
                                             //Auxiliary register
       SPSTAT = 0x84;
sfr
                                             //SPI status register
#define SPIF
                                             //SPSTAT.7
               0x80
#define
      WCOL
              0x40
                                             //SPSTAT.6
       SPCTL = 0x85;
sfr
                                             //SPI control register
#define SSIG
               0x80
                                             //SPCTL.7
#define SPEN
                                             //SPCTL.6
               0x40
#define DORD
               0x20
                                             //SPCTL.5
#define MSTR
               0x10
                                             //SPCTL.4
#define CPOL
               0x08
                                             //SPCTL.3
#define CPHA
                                             //SPCTL.2
               0x04
#define SPDHH 0x00
                                             //CPU CLK/4
#define SPDH
               0x01
                                             //CPU CLK/16
#define SPDL
               0x02
                                             //CPU CLK/64
#define SPDLL 0x03
                                             //CPU CLK/128
sfr
       SPDAT = 0x86;
                                             //SPI data register
sbit
       SPISS
               = P1^3:
                                             //SPI slave select, connect to slave' SS(P1.4) pin
       EADC\_SPI = IE^5;
sbit
#define ESPI
               0x08;
                                             //AUXR.3
```

```
void InitUart();
void InitSPI();
void SendUart(BYTE dat);
                                         //send data to PC
BYTE RecvUart();
                                         //receive data from PC
void main()
        InitUart();
                                         //initial UART
        InitSPI();
                                         //initial SPI
        AUXR = ESPI;
        EADC SPI = 1;
        EA = 1;
        while (1)
        #ifdef
                MASTER
                                         //for master (receive UART data from PC and send it to slave,
                                         //in the meantime receive SPI data from slave and send it to PC)
                ACC = RecvUart();
                SPISS = 0;
                                         //pull low slave SS
                                         //trigger SPI send
                SPDAT = ACC;
        #endif
//SPI interrupt routine 5 (002BH)
void spi isr()
                interrupt 5 using 1
{
        SPSTAT = SPIF \mid WCOL;
                                         //clear SPI status
#ifdef MASTER
        SPISS = 1:
                                         //push high slave SS
        SendUart(SPDAT);
                                         //return received SPI data
#else
                                         //for salve (receive SPI data from master and
        SPDAT = SPDAT;
                                                  send previous SPI data to master)
#endif
```

```
void InitUart()
       SCON = 0x5a;
                                       //set UART mode as 8-bit variable baudrate
       TMOD = 0x20;
                                       //timer1 as 8-bit auto reload mode
                                       //timer1 work at 1T mode
       AUXR = 0x40;
       TH1 = TL1 = BAUD;
                                       //115200 bps
       TR1 = 1;
}
void InitSPI()
{
       SPDAT = 0;
                                       //initial SPI data
       SPSTAT = SPIF | WCOL;
                                       //clear SPI status
#ifdef MASTER
       SPCTL = SPEN | MSTR;
                                       //master mode
#else
       SPCTL = SPEN;
                                       //slave mode
#endif
}
void SendUart(BYTE dat)
       while (!TI);
                                       //wait pre-data sent
                                       //clear TI flag
       TI = 0;
       SBUF = dat;
                                       //send current data
}
BYTE RecvUart()
       while (!RI);
                                       //wait receive complete
       RI = 0;
                                       //clear RI flag
       return SBUF;
                                       //return receive data
```

2. 汇编程序

```
/*_____*/
/* --- STC MCU Limited -----*/
/* --- 演示STC 1T 系列单片机 SPI功能(适用单主单从,中断方式)----*/
/* 如果要在程序中使用或在文章中引用该程序, -----*/
/* 请在程序中或文章中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 -----*/
//#define MASTER
                                 //define:master undefine:slave
AUXR DATA
             08EH
                                 ;Auxiliary register
SPSTAT DATA
             084H
                                 ;SPI status register
SPIF
      EQU
                                 ;SPSTAT.7
             080H
WCOL EQU
             040H
                                 ;SPSTAT.6
SPCTL DATA
             085H
                                 ;SPI control register
SSIG
      EQU
             080H
                                 ;SPCTL.7
SPEN
      EOU
             040H
                                 ;SPCTL.6
DORD EQU
             020H
                                 ;SPCTL.5
MSTR
     EOU
             010H
                                 ;SPCTL.4
CPOL
      EQU
             008H
                                 ;SPCTL.3
CPHA
      EQU
             004H
                                 ;SPCTL.2
SPDHH EQU
             000H
                                 ;CPU CLK/4
SPDH
      EQU
             001H
                                 ;CPU CLK/16
SPDL
      EQU
             002H
                                 ;CPU CLK/64
SPDLL EQU
             003H
                                 ;CPU CLK/128
SPDAT DATA
             086H
                                 ;SPI data register
SPISS
      BIT
             P1.3
                                 ;SPI slave select, connect to slave' SS(P1.4) pin
EADC_SPI
             BIT
                   IE.5
ESPI
             EQU
                   08H
                                ;AUXR.3
ORG
             0000H
      LJMP
             RESET
      ORG
             002BH
                                 ;SPI interrupt routine 5(2BH)
SPI ISR:
      PUSH
             ACC
      PUSH
             PSW
             SPSTAT, #SPIF | WCOL
                                ;clear SPI status
      MOV
```

```
#ifdef
       MASTER
       SETB
               SPISS
                                             ;push high slave SS
       MOV
                                             return received SPI data
               Α.
                      SPDAT
       LCALL SEND UART
#else
                                             //for salve (receive SPI data from master and
       MOV
              SPDAT, SPDAT
                                                  send previous SPI data to master)
#endif
       POP
              PSW
       POP
              ACC
       RETI
ORG
              0100H
RESET:
       LCALL INIT UART
                                             :initial UART
       LCALL INIT SPI
                                             :initial SPI
       ORL
              AUXR, #ESPI
                                             ;enable SPI interrupt
       SETB
              EADC SPI
       SETB
              EA
MAIN:
#ifdef MASTER
                                     //for master (receive UART data from PC and send it to slave,
       LCALL RECV_UART
                                     ; in the meantimereceive SPI data from slave and send it to PC)
       CLR
              SPISS
                                     ;pull low slave SS
       MOV
                                     ;trigger SPI send
              SPDAT. A
#endif
       SJMP
              MAIN
INIT UART:
              SCON, #5AH
                                     ;set UART mode as 8-bit variable baudrate
       MOV
       MOV
              TMOD, #20H
                                     :timer1 as 8-bit auto reload mode
       MOV
              AUXR, #40H
                                     ;timer1 work at 1T mode
       MOV
              TL1.
                      #0FBH
                                     ;115200 bps(256 - 18432000 / 32 / 115200)
       MOV
              TH1,
                      #0FBH
       SETB
              TR1
       RET
```

INIT_SPI: MOV SPDAT, #0 ;initial SPI data MOV SPSTAT, #SPIF | WCOL ;clear SPI status #ifdef MASTER MOV SPCTL, #SPEN | MSTR ;master mode #else ;slave mode MOV SPCTL, #SPEN #endif RET SEND_UART: JNB TI, \$;wait pre-data sent ΤI CLR ;clear TI flag MOV SBUF, ;send current data Α RET RECV_UART: JNB RI,\$;wait receive complete CLR RI ;clear RI flag MOV **SBUF** ;return receive data A, RET RET **END**

11.4.2 查询方式

1. C程序

```
/*_____*/
/* --- STC MCU Limited -----*/
/* --- 演示STC 1T 系列单片机 SPI功能(适用单主单从, 查询方式)---*/
/* 如果要在程序中使用或在文章中引用该程序, -----*/
/* 请在程序中或文章中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 -----*/
#include "reg51.h"
//#define MASTER
                                            //define:master undefine:slave
#define FOSC
                      18432000L
#define BAUD
                      (256 - FOSC / 32 / 115200)
typedef unsigned char
                      BYTE;
typedef unsigned int
                      WORD;
typedef unsigned long
                      DWORD;
sfr
       AUXR = 0x8e;
                                             //Auxiliary register
sfr
       SPSTAT = 0x84;
                                             //SPI status register
#define SPIF
               0x80
                                             //SPSTAT.7
#define WCOL
              0x40
                                             //SPSTAT.6
sfr
       SPCTL = 0x85;
                                             //SPI control register
#define SSIG
               0x80
                                            //SPCTL.7
#define SPEN
              0x40
                                            //SPCTL.6
#define DORD
              0x20
                                             //SPCTL.5
#define MSTR
              0x10
                                             //SPCTL.4
#define CPOL
              0x08
                                            //SPCTL.3
#define CPHA
              0x04
                                             //SPCTL.2
#define SPDHH 0x00
                                            //CPU CLK/4
#define SPDH
                                            //CPU CLK/16
              0x01
#define SPDL
                                            //CPU CLK/64
              0x02
#define SPDLL 0x03
                                             //CPU CLK/128
sfr
       SPDAT = 0x86;
                                             //SPI data register
sbit
       SPISS
              = P1^3;
                                             //SPI slave select, connect to slave' SS(P1.4) pin
void
       InitUart();
void
       InitSPI();
void
       SendUart(BYTE dat);
                                             //send data to PC
BYTE
                                             //receive data from PC
       RecvUart();
BYTE
       SPISwap(BYTE dat);
                                             //swap SPI data between master and slave
```

```
void main()
                                              //initial UART
         InitUart();
         InitSPI();
                                              //initial SPI
         while (1)
         #ifdef MASTER
                                    //for master (receive UART data from PC and send it to slave,
                                    // in the meantime receive SPI data from slave and send it to PC)
                  SendUart(SPISwap(RecvUart()));
         #else
                                              //for salve (receive SPI data from master and
                  ACC = SPISwap(ACC);
                                              //
                                                      send previous SPI data to master)
         #endif
void InitUart()
         SCON = 0x5a;
                                                       //set UART mode as 8-bit variable baudrate
         TMOD = 0x20;
                                                       //timer1 as 8-bit auto reload mode
         AUXR = 0x40;
                                                       //timer1 work at 1T mode
                                                       //115200 bps
         TH1 = TL1 = BAUD;
         TR1 = 1;
}
void InitSPI()
{
         SPDAT = 0;
                                                       //initial SPI data
                                                       //clear SPI status
         SPSTAT = SPIF | WCOL;
#ifdef MASTER
         SPCTL = SPEN \mid MSTR;
                                                       //master mode
#else
         SPCTL = SPEN;
                                                       //slave mode
#endif
```

```
void SendUart(BYTE dat)
                                         //wait pre-data sent
        while (!TI);
                                         //clear TI flag
        TI = 0;
                                         //send current data
        SBUF = dat;
BYTE RecvUart()
        while (!RI);
                                         //wait receive complete
        RI = 0;
                                         //clear RI flag
                                         //return receive data
        return SBUF;
BYTE SPISwap(BYTE dat)
#ifdef MASTER
        SPISS = 0;
                                         //pull low slave SS
#endif
                                         //trigger SPI send
        SPDAT = dat;
        while (!(SPSTAT & SPIF));
                                         //wait send complete
        SPSTAT = SPIF \mid WCOL;
                                         //clear SPI status
#ifdef MASTER
        SPISS = 1;
                                         //push high slave SS
#endif
                                         //return received SPI data
        return SPDAT;
```

2. 汇编程序

```
/*_____*/
/* --- STC MCU Limited -----*/
/* --- 演示STC 1T 系列单片机 SPI功能(适用单主单从, 查询方式)---*/
/* 如果要在程序中使用或在文章中引用该程序, -----*/
/* 请在程序中或文章中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 -----*/
                                //define:master undefine:slave
//#define MASTER
AUXR DATA
             08EH
                                :Auxiliary register
SPSTAT DATA
             084H
                                :SPI status register
                                ;SPSTAT.7
SPIF
      EOU
             080H
WCOL EQU
             040H
                                ;SPSTAT.6
SPCTL DATA
             085H
                                ;SPI control register
SSIG
      EOU
             080H
                                ;SPCTL.7
SPEN
      EOU
             040H
                                :SPCTL.6
DORD EQU
             020H
                                ;SPCTL.5
MSTR
     EOU
             010H
                                ;SPCTL.4
CPOL
      EOU
             008H
                                ;SPCTL.3
CPHA
      EOU
             004H
                                ;SPCTL.2
SPDHH EQU
             000H
                                ;CPU CLK/4
                                ;CPU CLK/16
SPDH
      EOU
             001H
SPDL
      EQU
             002H
                                ;CPU CLK/64
SPDLL EQU
             003H
                                ;CPU CLK/128
SPDAT DATA
                                ;SPI data register
             086H
SPISS
      BIT
             P1.3
                                ;SPI slave select, connect to slave' SS(P1.4) pin
:///////
      ORG
             0000H
      LJMP
             RESET
      ORG
             0100H
RESET:
      LCALL INIT UART
                                ;initial UART
      LCALL INIT SPI
                                ;initial SPI
```

```
MAIN:
#ifdef
       MASTE
                         //for master (receive UART data from PC and send it to slave, in the meantime
                                                 receive SPI data from slave and send it to PC)
       LCALL RECV UART
       LCALL SPI SWAP
       LCALL SEND UART
                                           //for salve (receive SPI data from master and
#else
       LCALL SPI SWAP
                                                 send previous SPI data to master)
#endif
       SJMP
              MAIN
INIT UART:
                                           :set UART mode as 8-bit variable baudrate
       MOV
              SCON. #5AH
       MOV
              TMOD, #20H
                                           :timer1 as 8-bit auto reload mode
       MOV
              AUXR, #40H
                                           ;timer1 work at 1T mode
       MOV
              TL1.
                     #0FBH
                                           ;115200 bps(256 - 18432000 / 32 / 115200)
       MOV
              TH1.
                     #0FBH
       SETB
              TR1
       RET
INIT SPI:
       MOV
              SPDAT, #0
                                           ;initial SPI data
       MOV
              SPSTAT, #SPIF | WCOL
                                           ;clear SPI status
#ifdef
       MASTER
       MOV
              SPCTL, #SPEN | MSTR
                                           ;master mode
#else
              SPCTL, #SPEN
       MOV
                                           ;slave mode
#endif
       RET
SEND UART:
       JNB
              TI,
                                           ;wait pre-data sent
                     $
       CLR
                                           ;clear TI flag
              ΤI
              SBUF,
                                           send current data
       MOV
       RET
```

RECV UART:

JNB RI, \$;wait receive complete

CLR RI ;clear RI flag

MOV A, SBUF :return receive data

RET

RET

SPI SWAP:

#ifdef MASTER

CLR SPISS ;pull low slave SS

#endif

MOV SPDAT, A ;trigger SPI send

WAIT:

MOV A, SPSTAT

JNB ACC.7, WAIT ;wait send complete MOV SPSTAT, #SPIF | WCOL ;clear SPI status

#ifdef MASTER

SETB SPISS ;push high slave SS

#endif

MOV A, SPDAT ;return received SPI data

RET

END

11.5 适用互为主从系统的SPI功能测试程序

11.5.1 中断方式

1. C程序

```
/*_____*/
/* --- STC MCU Limited -----*/
/* --- 演示STC 1T 系列单片机 SPI功能(适用互为主从系统,中断方式)---*/
/* 如果要在程序中使用或在文章中引用该程序, -----*/
/* 请在程序中或文章中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 -----*/
#include "reg51.h"
#define FOSC
             18432000L
#define BAUD
              (256 - FOSC / 32 / 115200)
typedef unsigned char
                     BYTE;
typedef unsigned int
                     WORD;
typedef unsigned long
                     DWORD;
sfr
       AUXR = 0x8e;
                                          //Auxiliary register
sfr
       SPSTAT = 0x84;
                                          //SPI status register
#define
      SPIF
               0x80
                                          //SPSTAT.7
#define
      WCOL
               0x40
                                          //SPSTAT.6
       SPCTL = 0x85;
sfr
                                          //SPI control register
#define SSIG
              0x80
                                          //SPCTL.7
#define SPEN
                                          //SPCTL.6
              0x40
#define DORD
              0x20
                                          //SPCTL.5
#define MSTR
              0x10
                                          //SPCTL.4
#define CPOL
              0x08
                                          //SPCTL.3
#define CPHA
              0x04
                                          //SPCTL.2
#define SPDHH 0x00
                                          //CPU CLK/4
#define SPDH
              0x01
                                          //CPU CLK/16
#define SPDL
                                          //CPU CLK/64
              0x02
#define SPDLL 0x03
                                          //CPU CLK/128
sfr
      SPDAT =
                     0x86;
                                                 //SPI data register
sbit
       SPISS
                     P1^3;
                                   //SPI slave select, connect to other MCU's SS(P1.4) pin
              =
sbit
      EADC SPI = IE^5;
#define ESPI
              0x08;
                                   //AUXR.3
```

```
void InitUart();
void InitSPI();
void SendUart(BYTE dat);
                                                   //send data to PC
BYTE RecvUart();
                                                   //receive data from PC
bit MSSEL;
                                                   //1: master 0:slave
void main()
                          //initial UART
        InitUart();
        InitSPI():
                          //initial SPI
        AUXR = ESPI;
        EADC SPI = 1;
        EA = 1;
        while (1)
                 if (RI)
                         SPCTL = SPEN | MSTR;
                                                           //set as master
                         MSSEL = 1;
                         ACC = RecvUart();
                         SPISS = 0;
                                                            //pull low slave SS
                         SPDAT = ACC;
                                                            //trigger SPI send
void spi isr() interrupt 5 using 1
                                                            //SPI interrupt routine 5 (002BH)
                                                            //clear SPI status
        SPSTAT = SPIF \mid WCOL;
        if (MSSEL)
                 SPCTL = SPEN;
                                                            //reset as slave
                 MSSEL = 0;
                 SPISS = 1;
                                                            //push high slave SS
                 SendUart(SPDAT);
                                                            //return received SPI data
        else
                                                   //for salve (receive SPI data from master and
                 SPDAT = SPDAT;
                                                          send previous SPI data to master)
```

```
void InitUart()
       SCON = 0x5a;
                                      //set UART mode as 8-bit variable baudrate
                                      //timer1 as 8-bit auto reload mode
       TMOD = 0x20;
                                      //timer1 work at 1T mode
       AUXR = 0x40;
       TH1 = TL1 = BAUD;
                                      //115200 bps
       TR1 = 1;
void InitSPI()
       SPDAT = 0;
                                      //initial SPI data
       SPSTAT = SPIF \mid WCOL;
                                      //clear SPI status
       SPCTL = SPEN;
                                      //slave mode
}
void SendUart(BYTE dat)
                                      //wait pre-data sent
       while (!TI);
                                      //clear TI flag
       TI = 0;
       SBUF = dat;
                                      //send current data
}
BYTE RecvUart()
                                      //wait receive complete
       while (!RI);
       RI = 0;
                                      //clear RI flag
                                      //return receive data
       return SBUF;
```

2. 汇编程序

```
/*_____*/
/* --- STC MCU Limited -----*/
/* --- 演示STC 1T 系列单片机 SPI功能(适用互为主从系统,中断方式)---*/
/* 如果要在程序中使用或在文章中引用该程序, -----*/
/* 请在程序中或文章中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 -----*/
AUXR DATA
             08EH
                                ;Auxiliary register
SPSTAT DATA
             084H
                                ;SPI status register
SPIF
      EQU
             080H
                                ;SPSTAT.7
WCOL EQU
             040H
                                ;SPSTAT.6
SPCTL DATA
             085H
                                ;SPI control register
SSIG
      EQU
             080H
                                ;SPCTL.7
SPEN
      EQU
             040H
                                ;SPCTL.6
DORD EQU
             020H
                                ;SPCTL.5
MSTR
      EQU
             010H
                                ;SPCTL.4
CPOL
      EQU
             008H
                                ;SPCTL.3
CPHA
      EOU
             004H
                                ;SPCTL.2
SPDHH EQU
             000H
                                ;CPU CLK/4
SPDH
                                ;CPU CLK/16
      EOU
             001H
SPDL
      EQU
             002H
                                ;CPU CLK/64
SPDLL EQU
                                ;CPU CLK/128
             003H
SPDAT DATA
             086H
                                ;SPI data register
SPISS
                                ;SPI slave select, connect to other MCU's SS(P1.4) pin
      BIT
             P1.3
EADC SPI
             BIT
                   IE.5
ESPI
             EQU
                   08H
                                ;AUXR.3
MSSEL BIT
           20H.0
                                ;1: master 0:slave
ORG
             0000H
      LJMP
             RESET
      ORG
             002BH
                                ;SPI interrupt routine
SPI ISR:
      PUSH
             ACC
      PUSH
             PSW
      MOV
             SPSTAT, #SPIF | WCOL
                                ;clear SPI status
      JBC
             MSSEL, MASTER SEND
```

```
SLAVE RECV:
                                             //for salve (receive SPI data from master and
       MOV
               SPDAT, SPDAT
                                                   send previous SPI data to master)
       JMP
               SPI EXIT
MASTER SEND:
       SETB
              SPISS
                                             ;push high slave SS
       MOV
               SPCTL, #SPEN
                                                    reset as slave
                                             ;return received SPI data
       MOV
               A,
                      SPDAT
       LCALL SEND_UART
SPI EXIT:
              PSW
       POP
       POP
              ACC
       RETI
ORG
              0100H
RESET:
       MOV
              SP,#3FH
       LCALL INIT UART
                                             ;initial UART
       LCALL INIT SPI
                                             ;initial SPI
       ORL
              AUXR, #ESPI
       SETB
              EADC SPI
       SETB
              EA
MAIN:
       JNB
               RI.
                                             ;wait UART data
       MOV
              SPCTL, #SPEN | MSTR
                                             ; ;set as master
       SETB
              MSSEL
       LCALL RECV UART
                                             :receive UART data from PC
       CLR
               SPISS
                                             ;pull low slave SS
       MOV
               SPDAT, A
                                                    ;trigger SPI send
       SJMP
              MAIN
INIT UART:
       MOV
              SCON, #5AH
                                             ;set UART mode as 8-bit variable baudrate
       MOV
              TMOD, #20H
                                             ;timer1 as 8-bit auto reload mode
       MOV
                                             ;timer1 work at 1T mode
              AUXR ,#40H
       MOV
              TL1,
                      #0FBH
                                             ;115200 bps(256 - 18432000 / 32 / 115200)
       MOV
              TH1,
                      #0FBH
       SETB
               TR1
       RET
```

INIT SPI: MOV SPDAT, #0 ;initial SPI data MOV SPSTAT, #SPIF | WCOL ;clear SPI status MOV SPCTL, #SPEN ;slave mode RET SEND UART: JNB TI, \$;wait pre-data sent ;clear TI flag CLR ΤI ;send current data MOV SBUF, Α RET RECV_UART: JNB RI, \$;wait receive complete CLR ;clear RI flag RI MOV ;return receive data A, **SBUF** RET RET **END**

11.5.2 查询方式

1. C程序

```
/*_____*/
/* --- STC MCU Limited -----*/
/* --- 演示STC 1T 系列单片机 SPI功能(适用互为主从系统, 查询方式)---*/
/* 如果要在程序中使用或在文章中引用该程序, -----*/
/* 请在程序中或文章中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 -----*/
#include "reg51.h"
#define FOSC
                      18432000L
#define BAUD
                      (256 - FOSC / 32 / 115200)
typedef unsigned char
                      BYTE:
typedef unsigned int
                      WORD;
typedef unsigned long
                      DWORD;
sfr
       AUXR =
                      0x8e;
                                            //Auxiliary register
sfr
       SPSTAT =
                                                   //SPI status register
                      0x84;
#define SPIF
                      0x80
                                            //SPSTAT.7
#define
      WCOL
                                            //SPSTAT.6
                      0x40
sfr
       SPCTL =
                      0x85;
                                                   //SPI control register
#define SSIG
                                            //SPCTL.7
                      0x80
#define SPEN
                      0x40
                                            //SPCTL.6
#define DORD
                      0x20
                                            //SPCTL.5
#define MSTR
                      0x10
                                            //SPCTL.4
#define CPOL
                      0x08
                                            //SPCTL.3
#define CPHA
                                            //SPCTL.2
                      0x04
#define SPDHH
                      0x00
                                            //CPU CLK/4
#define SPDH
                                            //CPU CLK/16
                      0x01
                                            //CPU CLK/64
#define SPDL
                      0x02
#define SPDLL
                      0x03
                                            //CPU CLK/128
sfr
       SPDAT =
                      0x86;
                                                   //SPI data register
sbit
       SPISS
                      P1^3;
                                            //SPI slave select, connect to slave' SS(P1.4) pin
void
       InitUart();
void
       InitSPI();
void
       SendUart(BYTE dat);
                                            //send data to PC
BYTE
       RecvUart();
                                            //receive data from PC
BYTE
       SPISwap(BYTE dat);
                                            //swap SPI data between master
```

```
void main()
                                         //initial UART
        InitUart();
        InitSPI();
                                         //initial SPI
        while (1)
                if (RI)
                         SPCTL = SPEN | MSTR;
                                                          //set as master
                         SendUart(SPISwap(RecvUart()));
                         SPCTL = SPEN;
                                                          //reset as slave
                if (SPSTAT & SPIF)
                         SPSTAT = SPIF | WCOL; //clear SPI status
                                                 //mov data from receive buffer to send buffer
                         SPDAT = SPDAT;
        }
void InitUart()
        SCON = 0x5a;
                                                 //set UART mode as 8-bit variable baudrate
        TMOD = 0x20;
                                                  //timer1 as 8-bit auto reload mode
        AUXR = 0x40;
                                                 //timer1 work at 1T mode
        TH1 = TL1 = BAUD;
                                                 //115200 bps
        TR1 = 1;
void InitSPI()
                                                 //initial SPI data
        SPDAT = 0;
        SPSTAT = SPIF \mid WCOL;
                                                 //clear SPI status
        SPCTL = SPEN;
                                                 //slave mode
```

```
void SendUart(BYTE dat)
       while (!TI);
                                      //wait pre-data sent
       TI = 0;
                                      //clear TI flag
       SBUF = dat;
                                      //send current data
BYTE RecvUart()
       while (!RI);
                                      //wait receive complete
       RI = 0;
                                      //clear RI flag
       return SBUF;
                                      //return receive data
BYTE SPISwap(BYTE dat)
       SPISS = 0;
                                      //pull low slave SS
       SPDAT = dat;
                                      //trigger SPI send
       while (!(SPSTAT & SPIF));
                                      //wait send complete
       SPSTAT = SPIF \mid WCOL;
                                      //clear SPI status
                                      //push high slave SS
       SPISS = 1;
       return SPDAT;
                                      //return received SPI data
```

2. 汇编程序

```
*/*_____*/
/* --- STC MCU Limited -----*/
/* --- 演示STC 1T 系列单片机 SPI功能(适用互为主从系统,查询方式)---*/
/* 如果要在程序中使用或在文章中引用该程序, -----*/
/* 请在程序中或文章中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 -----*/
/*_____*/
AUXR DATA
            08EH
                              :Auxiliary register
SPSTAT DATA
            084H
                              :SPI status register
SPIF
                              ;SPSTAT.7
      EOU
            080H
WCOL EQU
            040H
                              ;SPSTAT.6
SPCTL DATA
            085H
                              ;SPI control register
SSIG
      EOU
            080H
                              ;SPCTL.7
      EOU
SPEN
            040H
                              :SPCTL.6
DORD
     EOU
            020H
                              ;SPCTL.5
MSTR
      EOU
            010H
                              ;SPCTL.4
CPOL
      EOU
            008H
                              ;SPCTL.3
CPHA
      EOU
            004H
                              ;SPCTL.2
SPDHH EQU
            000H
                              ;CPU CLK/4
SPDH
      EOU
            001H
                              ;CPU CLK/16
SPDL
      EOU
            002H
                              ;CPU CLK/64
SPDLL EQU
            003H
                              ;CPU CLK/128
SPDAT DATA
            086H
                              :SPI data register
SPISS
      BIT
            P1.3
                              ;SPI slave select, connect to slave' SS(P1.4) pin
ORG
            0000H
      LJMP
            RESET
      ORG
            0100H
RESET:
      LCALL INIT UART
                              ;initial UART
      LCALL INIT SPI
                              ;initial SPI
MAIN:
      JΒ
            RI,
                  MASTER MODE
```

```
SLAVE MODE:
       MOV
              A.
                      SPSTAT
       JNB
              ACC.7, MAIN
       MOV
              SPSTAT, #SPIF | WCOL
                                                   :clear SPI status
              SPDAT, SPDAT
                                                   :return received SPI data
       MOV
       SJMP
              MAIN
MASTER MODE:
              SPCTL, #SPEN | MSTR
       MOV
                                                   :set as master
       LCALL RECV UART
                                                   ;receive UART data from PC
       LCALL SPI SWAP
                                    send it to slave, in the meantime, receive SPI data from slave
                                    :send SPI data to PC
       LCALL SEND UART
       MOV
              SPCTL, #SPEN
                                            :reset as slave
       SJMP
              MAIN
INIT UART:
       MOV
              SCON. #5AH
                                    :set UART mode as 8-bit variable baudrate
       MOV
              TMOD, #20H
                                    :timer1 as 8-bit auto reload mode
                                    :timer1 work at 1T mode
       MOV
              AUXR. #40H
       MOV
                                    ;115200 bps(256 - 18432000 / 32 / 115200)
              TL1.
                     #0FBH
       MOV
              TH1.
                      #0FBH
       SETB
              TR1
       RET
INIT SPI:
       MOV
              SPDAT, #0
                                                   ;initial SPI data
       MOV
              SPSTAT, #SPIF | WCOL
                                                   :clear SPI status
       MOV
              SPCTL, #SPEN
                                                   :slave mode
       RET
SEND UART:
       JNB
                      $
                                                   ;wait pre-data sent
              TI.
                                                   ;clear TI flag
       CLR
              ΤI
       MOV
              SBUF,
                                                   :send current data
       RET
```

RECV UART: JNB \$;wait receive complete RI, CLR ;clear RI flag RI MOV ;return receive data A, **SBUF** RET RET SPI_SWAP: CLR **SPISS** ;pull low slave SS ;trigger SPI send MOV SPDAT, A WAIT: MOV A, **SPSTAT** JNB ACC.7, WAIT ;wait send complete MOV SPSTAT, #SPIF | WCOL ;clear SPI status SETB **SPISS** ;push high slave SS ;return received SPI data MOV A, **SPDAT** RET **END**

第12章 STC12C5410AD系列EEPROM的应用

STC12C5410AD系列单片机内部集成了的EEPROM是与程序空间是分开的,利用ISP/IAP技术可将内部Data Flash当EEPROM,擦写次数在10万次以上。EEPROM可分为若干个扇区,每个扇区包含512字节。使用时,建议同一次修改的数据放在同一个扇区,不是同一次修改的数据放在不同的扇区,不一定要用满。数据存储器的擦除操作是按扇区进行的。

EEPROM可用于保存一些需要在应用过程中修改并且掉电不丢失的参数数据。在用户程序中,可以对EEPROM进行字节读/字节编程/扇区擦除操作。在工作电压Vcc偏低时,建议不要进行EEPROM/IAP操作。

需要注意的是: 5V单片机在3.7V以上对EEPROM进行操作才有效,3.7V以下对EEPROM进行操作,MCU不执行此功能,但会继续往下执行程序。3.3V单片机在2.4V以上对EEPROM进行操作才有效,2.4V以下对EEPROM进行操作,MCU不执行此功能,但会继续往下执行程序.所以建议上电复位后在初始化程序时加200mS延时。可通过判断LVDF标志位判断Vcc的电压是否正常。

12.1 IAP及EEPROM新增特殊功能寄存器介绍

符号	描述	地址	位地址及符号 MSB LSB	复位值
ISP_DATA	ISP/IAP Flash Data Register	Е2Н		1111 1111B
ISP_ADDRH	ISP/IAP Flash Address High	ЕЗН		0000 0000B
ISP_ADDRL	ISP/IAP Flash Address Low	Е4Н		0000 0000B
ISP_CMD	ISP/IAP Flash Com- mand Register	Е5Н	MS1 MS0	xxxx xx00B
ISP_TRIG	ISP/IAP Flash Com- mand Trigger	Е6Н		xxxx xxxxB
ISP_CONTR	ISP/IAP Control Register	Е7Н	ISPEN SWBS SWRST CMD_FAIL - WT2 WT1 WT0	0000 1000B

1. ISP/IAP数据寄存器ISP DATA

ISP DATA: ISP/IAP操作时的数据寄存器。

ISP/IAP 从Flash读出的数据放在此处,向Flash写的数据也需放在此处

2. ISP/IAP地址寄存器ISP ADDRH和ISP ADDRL

ISP_ADDRH: ISP/IAP操作时的地址寄存器高八位。该寄存器地址为E3H,复位后值为00H. ISP ADDRL: ISP/IAP操作时的地址寄存器低八位。该寄存器地址为E4H,复位后值为00H.

3. ISP/IAP命令寄存器ISP CMD

ISP/IAP命令寄存器ISP CMD格式如下:

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	B4	В3	B2	B1	В0
IAP_CMD	E5H	name	-	-	-	-	-	-	MS1	MS0

MS1	MS0	命令 / 操作 模式选择
0	0	Standby 待机模式,无ISP操作
0	1	从用户的应用程序区对"Data Flash/EEPROM区"进行字节读
1	0	从用户的应用程序区对"Data Flash/EEPROM区"进行字节编程
1	1	从用户的应用程序区对"Data Flash/EEPROM区"进行扇区擦除

程序在用户应用程序区时,仅可以对数据Flash区(EEPROM)进行字节读/字节编程/扇区擦除,STC12C5612AD/STC12LE5612AD/STC12C5628AD/STC12LE5628AD/STC12C5630AD/STC12LE5630AD等除外,这几个型号可在应用程序区修改应用程序区。

4. ISP/IA命令触发寄存器ISP TRIG

ISP TRIG: ISP/IAP 操作时的命令触发寄存器。

在ISPEN(ISP_CONTR.7) = 1 时,对ISP_TRIG先写入46h,再写入B9h,ISP/IAP命令才会生效。

ISP/IAP操作完成后,ISP地址高八位寄存器ISP_ADDRH、ISP地址低八位寄存器ISP_ADDRL和ISP命令寄存器ISP_CMD的内容不变。如果接下来要对下一个地址的数据进行ISP/IAP操作,需手动将该地址的高8位和低8位分别写入ISP ADDRH和ISP ADDRL寄存器。

每次ISP/IAP操作时,都要对ISP_TRIG先写入46H,再写入B9H,ISP/IAP命令才会生效。

5. ISP/IAP命令寄存器ISP CONTR

ISP/IAP控制寄存器ISP CONTR格式如下:

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	B4	В3	B2	B1	В0
ISP_CONTR	Е7Н	name	ISPEN	SWBS	SWRST	CMD_FAIL	-	WT2	WT2	WT0

ISPEN: ISP/IAP功能允许位。0:禁止IAP/ISP读/写/擦除Data Flash/EEPROM

1: 允许IAP/ISP读/写/擦除Data Flash/EEPROM

SWBS: 软件选择从用户应用程序区启动(送0),还是从系统ISP监控程序区启动(送1)。

要与SWRST直接配合才可以实现

SWRST: 0: 不操作: 1: 产生软件系统复位,硬件自动复位。

CMD FAIL: 如果送了ISP/IAP命令,并对ISP TRIG送46h/B9h触发失败,则为1,需由软件清零.;

在用户应用程序区(AP区)软件复位并从用户应用程序区(AP区)开始执行程序

MOV ISP CONTR, #00100000B; SWBS = 0(选择AP区), SWRST = 1(软复位)

;在用户应用程序区(AP区)软件复位并从系统ISP监控程序区开始执行程序

MOV ISP CONTR, #01100000B; SWBS = 1(选择ISP区), SWRST = 1(软复位)

;在系统ISP监控程序区软件复位并从用户应用程序区(AP 区)开始执行程序

MOV ISP CONTR. #00100000B: SWBS = 0(选择AP 区). SWRST = 1(软复位)

;在系统ISP监控程序区软件复位并从系统ISP监控程序区开始执行程序

MOV ISP CONTR. #01100000B: SWBS = 1(选择ISP区). SWRST = 1(软复位)

设置等	等待日	寸间	CPU等待时间	司(多少个CPU工	作时钟)	
WT2	WT1	WTO	Read/读 (2个时钟)	Program/编程 (=55us)	Sector Erase 扇区擦除 (=21ms)	Recommended System Clock 跟等待参数对应的推荐系统时钟
1	1	1	2个时钟	55个时钟	21012个时钟	≤ 1MHz
1	1	0	2个时钟	110个时钟	42024个时钟	≤ 2MHz
1	0	1	2个时钟	165个时钟	63036个时钟	≤ 3MHz
1	0	0	2个时钟	330个时钟	126072个时钟	≤ 6MHz
0	1	1	2个时钟	660个时钟	252144个时钟	≤ 12MHz
0	1	0	2个时钟	1100个时钟	420240个时钟	≤ 20MHz
0	0	1	2个时钟	1320个时钟	504288个时钟	≤ 24MHz
0	0	0	2个时钟	1760个时钟	672384个时钟	$ \leq 30 \text{MHz}$

6. 工作电压过低判断,此时不要进行EEPROM/IAP操作

PCON寄存器定义如下:

SFR name	Address	bit	В7	В6	В5	B4	В3	B2	B1	В0
PCON	87H	name	SMOD	SMOD0	LVDF	POF	GF1	GF0	PD	IDL

LVDF: 低压检测标志位, 当工作电压Vcc低于低压检测门槛电压时, 该位置1。该位要由软件清0 当低压检测电路发现工作电压Vcc偏低时, 不要进行EEPROM/IAP操作。

12.2 STC12C5410AD系列单片机EEPROM空间大小及地址

STC12C5410AD系列单片机内部可用Data Flash(EEPROM)的地址(与程序空间是分开的): 如果对应用程序区进行IAP写数据/擦除扇区的动作,则该语句会被单片机忽略,继续执行下一句。程序在用户应用程序区(AP区)时,仅可以对Data Flash(EEPROM)进行IAP/ISP操作。

STC12C5412AD/STC12LE5412AD等型号除外,这几个型号可在应用程序区修改应用程序

STC12C5410AD系列单片机内部EEPROM选型一览表 STC12LE5410AD系列单片机内部EEPROM选型一览表						
型号	EEPROM字节数	扇区数	起始扇区 首地址	结束扇区 末尾地址		
STC12C5401AD/STC12LE5401AD	12K	24	0000h	2FFFh		
STC12C5402AD/STC12LE5402AD	12K	24	0000h	2FFFh		
STC12C5404AD/STC12LE5404AD	12K	24	0000h	2FFFh		
STC12C5406AD/STC12LE5406AD	12K	24	0000h	2FFFh		
STC12C5408AD/STC12LE5408AD	12K	24	0000h	2FFFh		
STC12C5410AD/STC12LE5410AD	12K	24	0000h	2FFFh		
以下系列特殊,可在用户程序区直接修改程序,所有Flash空间均可作EEPROM修改						
STC12C5412AD/STC12LE5412AD	-	24	0000h	2FFFh		

	STC12C5410AD单片机的内部EEPROM地址表 STC12LE5410AD单片机的内部EEPROM地址表							
第一	扇区	第二	第二扇区		第三扇区		扇区	
起始地址	结束地址	起始地址	结束地址	起始地址	结束地址	起始地址	结束地址	
0000h	1FFh	200h	3FFh	400h	5FFh	600h	7FFh	
	第五扇区		第六扇区		第七扇区		第八扇区	怎么户应
起始地址	结束地址	起始地址	结束地址	起始地址	结束地址	起始地址	结束地址	每个扇区 512字节
800h	9FFh	A00h	BFFh	C00h	DFFh	E00h	FFFh	2174 h
	第九扇区 第十扇区		第十一扇区		第十二扇区			
起始地址	结束地址	起始地址	结束地址	起始地址	结束地址	起始地址	结束地址	建议同一次修
1000h	11FFh	1200h	13FFh	1400h	15FFh	1600h	17FFh	改的数据放在 同一扇区,不
勞	第 十三扇区	9	第十四扇区	第十五扇区		第十六扇区		同一扇区,不 是同一次修改
起始地址	结束地址	起始地址	结束地址	起始地址	结束地址	起始地址	结束地址	的数据放在不
1800h	19FFh	1A00h	1BFFh	1C00h	1DFFh	1E00h	1FFFh	同的扇区,不同的扇区,不
角	10000000000000000000000000000000000000	Ŝ	第十八扇区	第十九扇区		第	三十扇区	必用满, 当
起始地址	结束地址	起始地址	结束地址	起始地址	结束地址	起始地址	结束地址	
2000h	21FFh	2200h	23FFh	2400h	25FFh	2600h	27FFh	
第	二十一扇区	第二	十二扇区	第二	十三扇区	第二	十四扇区	
起始地址	结束地址	起始地址	结束地址	起始地址	结束地址	起始地址	结束地址	
2800h	29FFh	2A00h	2BFFh	2C00h	2DFFh	2E00h	2FFFH	

12.3 IAP及EEPROM汇编简介

:用DATA还是EQU声明新增特殊功能寄存器地址要看你用的汇编器/编译器

ISP_DATA	DATA	0E2h;	或	ISP_DATA	EQU	0E2h
ISP_ADDRH	DATA	0E3h;	或	ISP_ADDRH	EQU	0E3h
ISP_ADDRL	DATA	0E4h;	或	ISP_ADDRL	EQU	0E4h
ISP_CMD	DATA	0E5h;	或	ISP_CMD	EQU	0E5h
ISP_TRIG	DATA	0E6h;	或	ISP_TRIG	EQU	0E6h
ISP_CONTR	DATA	0E7h;	或	ISP_CONTR	EQU	0E7h

:定义ISP/IAP命令及等待时间

ISP IAP BYTE READ EQU 1 ;字节读

ISP_IAP_BYTE_PROGRAM EQU 2 ;字节编程,前提是该字节是空, 0FFh

ISP_IAP_SECTOR_ERASE EQU 3 ;扇区擦除,要某字节为空,要擦一扇区

WAIT_TIME EQU 0 ;设置等待时间,30MHz以下0,24M以下1,

;20MHz以下2,12M以下3,6M以下4,3M以下5,2M以下6,1M以下7,

:字节读

MOV	ISP_ADDRH,	#BYTE_ADDR_HIGH	;送地址高字节——地址需要改变时
MOV	ISP_ADDRL,	#BYTE_ADDR_LOW	;送地址低字节 才需重新送地址
MOV	ISP_CONTR,	#WAIT_TIME ;设置	等待时间 LSP/IAP操作 此两句可以合成一句, 并且只送一次就够了
ORL	ISP_CONTR,	#10000000B ;允许I	[SP/IAP操作 并且只送一次就够了
MOV	ISP_CMD,	#ISP_IAP_BYTE_READ	

;送字节读命令,命令不需改变时,不需重新送命令

MOV ISP_TRIG, #46h;先送46h,再送B9h到ISP/IAP触发寄存器,每次都需如此 MOV ISP_TRIG, #0B9h :送完B9h后,ISP/IAP命令立即被触发起动

;CPU等待IAP动作完成后,才会继续执行程序。

NOP ;数据读出到ISP DATA寄存器后,CPU继续执行程序

MOV A, ISP DATA ;将读出的数据送往Acc

;以下语句可不用,只是出于安全考虑而已

MOV ISP_CONTR, #00000000B ;禁止ISP/IAP操作 MOV ISP_CMD, #0000000B ;去除ISP/IAP命令

;MOV ISP TRIG, #00000000B ;防止ISP/IAP命令误触发

;MOV ISP_ADDRH, #0FFh ;送地址高字节单元为FFH,指向非EEPROM区

;MOV ISP_ADDRL, #0FFh ;送地址低字节单元为FFH,防止误操作

:字节编程,该字节为FFh/空时,可对其编程,否则不行,要先执行扇区擦除

MOV ISP_DATA, #ONE_DATA ;送字节编程数据到ISP_DATA,

;只有数据改变时才需重新送

MOV ISP_ADDRH, #BYTE_ADDR_HIGH ;送地址高字节 地址需要改变时 MOV ISP_ADDRL, #BYTE_ADDR_LOW ;送地址低字节 才需重新送地址

MOV ISP_CONTR, #WAIT_TIME ;设置等待时间 此两句可合成 ORL ISP_CONTR, #10000000B ;允许ISP/IAP操作 送一次就够了

MOV ISP_CMD, #ISP_IAP_BYTE_PROGRAM ;送字节编程命令

MOV ISP_TRIG, #46h ;先送46h,再送B9h到ISP/IAP触发寄存器,每次都需如此

MOV ISP_TRIG, #0B9h ;送完B9h后, ISP/IAP命令立即被触发起动

;CPU等待IAP动作完成后,才会继续执行程序.

NOP ;字节编程成功后,CPU继续执行程序

:以下语句可不用,只是出于安全考虑而已

MOV ISP_CONTR, #00000000B ;禁止ISP/IAP操作 MOV ISP CMD, #00000000B ;去除ISP/IAP命令

;MOV ISP_TRIG, #00000000B ;防止ISP/IAP命令误触发

;MOV ISP_ADDRH, #0FFh ;送地址高字节单元为FFH,;指向非EEPROM区,防止误操作

;MOV ISP_ADDRL, #0FFh ;送地址低字节单元为FFH,指向非EEPROM区,防止误操作

:扇区擦除,没有字节擦除,只有扇区擦除,512字节/扇区,每个扇区用得越少越方便

;如果要对某个扇区进行擦除,而其中有些字节的内容需要保留,则需将其先读到单片机

;内部的RAM中保存,再将该扇区擦除,然后将须保留的数据写回该扇区,所以每个扇区

;中用的字节数越少越好,操作起来越灵活越快.

;扇区中任意一个字节的地址都是该扇区的地址,无需求出首地址.

MOV	ISP_ADDRH,	#SECTOR_FIRST_BYTE_ADDR	_HIGH ;送扇区起始地址高字节
MOV	ISP_ADDRL,	#SECTOR_FIRST_BYTE_ADDR	_LOW ;送扇区起始地址低字节
		;:	地址需要改变时才需重新送地址
MOV	ISP_CONTR,	#WAIT_TIME ;	设置等待时间 此两句可以合
ORL	ISP_CONTR,	#10000000B ;	设置等待时间 此两句可以合成一句,并且只允许ISP/IAP 送一次就够了
MOV	ISP_CMD,	#ISP_IAP_SECTOR_ERASE	
		;送扇区擦除命令,	命令不需改变时,不需重新送命令
MOV	ISP_TRIG,	#46h	
		;先送46h,再送B9h到ISP/I	AP触发寄存器,每次都需如此
MOV	ISP_TRIG,	#0B9h ;送完B9h后,	ISP/IAP命令立即被触发起动

;CPU等待IAP动作完成后,才会继续执行程序.

NOP :扇区擦除成功后,CPU继续执行程序

;以下语句可不用,只是出于安全考虑而已

MOV ISP CONTR, :禁止ISP/IAP操作 #0000000B :去除ISP/IAP命令 MOV ISP CMD, #0000000B : MOV ISP TRIG, #0000000B :防止ISP/IAP命令误触发 : MOV ISP ADDRH, #0FFh :送地址高字节单元为FFH, 指向非EEPROM区 : MOV ISP ADDRL, #0FFh :送地址低字节单元为FFH, 防止误操作

小常识: (STC单片机的Data Flash 当EEPROM功能使用)

3个基本命令----字节读,字节编程,扇区擦除

字节编程:将 "1"写成 "1"或 "0",将 "0"写成 "0"。如果某字节是FFH,才可对其进行字节编程。如果该字节不是FFH,则须先将整个扇区擦除,因为只有"扇区擦除"才可以将 "0"变为 "1"。

扇区擦除:只有"扇区擦除"才可能将"0"擦除为"1"。

大建议:

- 1. 同一次修改的数据放在同一扇区中,不是同一次修改的数据放在另外的扇区,就不须读出保护。
- 2. 如果一个扇区只用一个字节,那就是真正的EEPROM,STC单片机的Data Flash比外部EEPROM要快很多,读一个字节/编程一个字节大概是2个时钟/55uS。
- 3. 如果在一个扇区中存放了大量的数据,某次只需要修改其中的一个字节或一部分字节时,则 另外的不需要修改的数据须先读出放在STC单片机的RAM中,然后擦除整个扇区,再将需要保留 的数据和需修改的数据按字节逐字节写回该扇区中(只有字节写命令,无连续字节写命令)。这 时每个扇区使用的字节数是使用的越少越方便(不需读出一大堆需保留数据)。

常问的问题:

- 1: IAP指令完成后,地址是否会自动"加1"或"减1"? 答: 不会
- 2: 送46和B9触发后,下一次IAP命令是否还需要送46和B9触发? 答: 是,一定要。

12.4 EEPROM测试程序

1. C程序:

```
:STC12C5410AD系列单片机EEPROM/IAP 功能测试程序演示
/* --- STC MCU Limited -----*/
/* --- 演示STC 1T 系列单片机 EEPROM/IAP功能-----*/
/* 如果要在程序中使用或在文章中引用该程序, -----*/
/* 请在程序中或文章中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 -----*/
#include "reg51.h"
#include "intrins.h"
typedef unsigned char BYTE;
typedef unsigned int WORD;
/*Declare SFR associated with the IAP */
sfr
       IAP DATA
                      = 0xE2:
                                      //Flash data register
       IAP ADDRH
sfr
                       = 0xE3:
                                      //Flash address HIGH
sfr
       IAP ADDRL
                      = 0xE4;
                                      //Flash address LOW
sfr
       IAP CMD
                       = 0xE5:
                                      //Flash command register
sfr
       IAP TRIG
                       = 0xE6;
                                      //Flash command trigger
       IAP CONTR
                                      //Flash control register
sfr
                       = 0xE7:
/*Define ISP/IAP/EEPROM command*/
#define CMD IDLE
                                      //Stand-By
#define CMD READ
                       1
                                      //Byte-Read
#define CMD PROGRAM 2
                                      //Byte-Program
#define CMD ERASE
                                      //Sector-Erase
/*Define ISP/IAP/EEPROM operation const for IAP CONTR*/
//#define ENABLE IAP
                       0x80
                                      //if SYSCLK<30MHz
//#define ENABLE IAP
                       0x81
                                      //if SYSCLK<24MHz
#define ENABLE IAP
                       0x82
                                      //if SYSCLK<20MHz
//#define ENABLE IAP
                       0x83
                                      //if SYSCLK<12MHz
//#define ENABLE IAP
                       0x84
                                      //if SYSCLK<6MHz
//#define ENABLE IAP
                       0x85
                                      //if SYSCLK<3MHz
//#define ENABLE IAP
                       0x86
                                      //if SYSCLK<2MHz
//#define ENABLE IAP
                       0x87
                                      //if SYSCLK<1MHz
//Start address for STC12C5410AD series EEPROM
#define IAP ADDRESS 0x0400
void Delay(BYTE n);
void IapIdle();
BYTE IapReadByte(WORD addr);
```

```
void IapProgramByte(WORD addr, BYTE dat);
void IapEraseSector(WORD addr);
void main()
         WORD i;
         P1 = 0xfe:
                                                       //1111,1110 System Reset OK
         Delay(10);
                                                       //Delay
         IapEraseSector(IAP_ADDRESS);
                                                       //Erase current sector
         for (i=0; i<512; i++)
                                                       //Check whether all sector data is FF
                  if (IapReadByte(IAP ADDRESS+i) != 0xff)
                  goto Error;
                                                       //If error, break
         P1 = 0xfc:
                                                       //1111,1100 Erase successful
         Delay(10);
                                                       //Delay
         for (i=0; i<512; i++)
                                                       //Program 512 bytes data into data flash
                  IapProgramByte(IAP ADDRESS+i, (BYTE)i);
         P1 = 0xf8;
                                                       //1111,1000 Program successful
         Delay(10);
                                                       //Delay
         for (i=0; i<512; i++)
                                                       //Verify 512 bytes data
                  if (IapReadByte(IAP ADDRESS+i) != (BYTE)i)
                  goto Error;
                                                       //If error, break
         P1 = 0xf0;
                                                       //1111,0000 Verify successful
         while (1);
Error:
         P1 &= 0x7f;
                                                       //0xxx,xxxx IAP operation fail
         while (1);
Software delay function
*/
void Delay(BYTE n)
{
         WORD x;
         while (n--)
                  x = 0;
                  while (++x);
```

```
/*_____
Disable ISP/IAP/EEPROM function
Make MCU in a safe state
*/
void IapIdle()
        IAP CONTR = 0;
                                         //Close IAP function
        IAP CMD = 0;
                                         //Clear command to standby
        IAP TRIG = 0;
                                         //Clear trigger register
        IAP ADDRH = 0x80;
                                         //Data ptr point to non-EEPROM area
                                         //Clear IAP address to prevent misuse
        IAP ADDRL = 0;
Read one byte from ISP/IAP/EEPROM area
Input: addr (ISP/IAP/EEPROM address)
Output:Flash data
*/
BYTE IapReadByte(WORD addr)
{
                                         //Data buffer
        BYTE dat;
        IAP CONTR = ENABLE IAP;
                                         //Open IAP function, and set wait time
        IAP CMD = CMD READ;
                                         //Set ISP/IAP/EEPROM READ command
        IAP ADDRL = addr;
                                         //Set ISP/IAP/EEPROM address low
        IAP ADDRH = addr >> 8;
                                         //Set ISP/IAP/EEPROM address high
        IAP TRIG = 0x46;
                                         //Send trigger command1 (0x46)
                                         //Send trigger command2 (0xb9)
        IAP TRIG = 0xb9;
                                         //MCU will hold here until ISP/IAP/EEPROM
        nop ();
                                         //operation complete
        dat = IAP DATA;
                                         //Read ISP/IAP/EEPROM data
                                         //Close ISP/IAP/EEPROM function
        IapIdle();
                                         //Return Flash data
        return dat;
Program one byte to ISP/IAP/EEPROM area
Input: addr (ISP/IAP/EEPROM address)
   dat (ISP/IAP/EEPROM data)
Output:-
*/
```

```
void IapProgramByte(WORD addr, BYTE dat)
        IAP CONTR = ENABLE IAP;
                                           //Open IAP function, and set wait time
        IAP CMD = CMD PROGRAM;
                                           //Set ISP/IAP/EEPROM PROGRAM command
        IAP ADDRL = addr;
                                           //Set ISP/IAP/EEPROM address low
        IAP ADDRH = addr >> 8;
                                           //Set ISP/IAP/EEPROM address high
        IAP DATA = dat;
                                           //Write ISP/IAP/EEPROM data
        IAP TRIG = 0x46;
                                           //Send trigger command1 (0x46)
        IAP TRIG = 0xb9;
                                           //Send trigger command2 (0xb9)
        nop ();
                                           //MCU will hold here until ISP/IAP/EEPROM
                                           //operation complete
        IapIdle();
Erase one sector area
Input: addr (ISP/IAP/EEPROM address)
Output:-
void IapEraseSector(WORD addr)
        IAP CONTR = ENABLE IAP;
                                           //Open IAP function, and set wait time
        IAP CMD = CMD ERASE;
                                           //Set ISP/IAP/EEPROM ERASE command
        IAP ADDRL = addr;
                                           //Set ISP/IAP/EEPROM address low
        IAP ADDRH = addr >> 8:
                                           //Set ISP/IAP/EEPROM address high
        IAP TRIG = 0x46;
                                           //Send trigger command1 (0x46)
        IAP TRIG = 0xb9;
                                           //Send trigger command2 (0xb9)
                                           //MCU will hold here until ISP/IAP/EEPROM
        nop ();
                                           //operation complete
        IapIdle();
```

2. 汇编程序:

```
:STC12C5410AD系列单片机EEPROM/IAP 功能测试程序演示
/*_____*/
/* --- STC MCU Limited -----*/
/* --- 演示STC 1T 系列单片机 EEPROM/IAP功能-----*/
/* 如果要在程序中使用或在文章中引用该程序, -----*/
/* 请在程序中或文章中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 -----*/
:/*Declare SFRs associated with the IAP */
IAP DATA
                     0E2H
                                ;Flash data register
              EQU
IAP ADDRH
                                ;Flash address HIGH
              EOU
                     0E3H
IAP ADDRL
              EQU
                                :Flash address LOW
                     0E4H
IAP CMD
              EOU
                                ;Flash command register
                     0E5H
IAP TRIG
              EQU
                                ;Flash command trigger
                     0E6H
IAP CONTR
                     0E7H
                                ;Flash control register
              EQU
:/*Define ISP/IAP/EEPROM command*/
CMD IDLE
              EOU
                     0
                                ;Stand-By
CMD READ
              EOU
                     1
                                ;Byte-Read
                     2
                                ;Byte-Program
CMD PROGRAM EQU
CMD ERASE
              EOU
                     3
                                :Sector-Erase
;/*Define ISP/IAP/EEPROM operation const for IAP CONTR*/
;ENABLE IAP
              EQU
                     80H
                               ;if SYSCLK<30MHz
;ENABLE IAP
              EQU
                     81H
                               ;if SYSCLK<24MHz
ENABLE IAP
              EOU
                     82H
                               ;if SYSCLK<20MHz
;ENABLE IAP
              EQU
                     83H
                               ;if SYSCLK<12MHz
;ENABLE IAP
              EOU
                     84H
                               ;if SYSCLK<6MHz
;ENABLE IAP
              EQU
                     85H
                               ;if SYSCLK<3MHz
;ENABLE IAP
              EOU
                     86H
                               ;if SYSCLK<2MHz
;ENABLE IAP
              EOU
                     87H
                               ;if SYSCLK<1MHz
://Start address for STC12C5410AD series EEPROM
IAP ADDRESS EQU 0000H
       ORG
              0000H
       LJMP
              MAIN
       ORG
              0100H
MAIN:
       MOV
              P1,
                     #0FEH
                                   ;1111,1110 System Reset OK
       LCALL DELAY
                                   ;Delay
```

				2101200410(D)(V)(1+)[///[1]
	MOV		#IAP_ADDRESS	;Set ISP/IAP/EEPROM address
	LCALL	IAP_ER	RASE	;Erase current sector
	MOV	DPTR,	#IAP_ADDRESS	;Set ISP/IAP/EEPROM address
	MOV	R0,	#0	;Set counter (512)
	MOV	R1,	#2	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
HECK	1:	,		;Check whether all sector data is FF
	LCALL	IAP_RE	AD	;Read Flash
	CJNE	A,	#0FFH, ERROR	;If error, break
	INC	DPTR		;Inc Flash address
	DJNZ	R0,	CHECK1	;Check next
	DJNZ	R1,	CHECK1	;Check next
	MOV		#0FCH	;1111,1100 Erase successful
		DELAY		;Delay
	MOV	DPTR,	#IAP ADDRESS	;Set ISP/IAP/EEPROM address
	MOV	R0,	#0	;Set counter (512)
	MOV	R1,	#2	,500 0041101 (612)
	MOV	R2,	#0	;Initial test data
VEXT:		,		;Program 512 bytes data into data flash
	MOV	A,	R2	;Ready IAP data
		IAP PR		;Program flash
	INC	DPTR		;Inc Flash address
	INC	R2		;Modify test data
	DJNZ		NEXT	;Program next
	DJNZ	R1,	NEXT	;Program next
		P1,		;1111,1000 Program successful
	LCALL	DELAY		;Delay
	MOV	DPTR,	#IAP ADDRESS	;Set ISP/IAP/EEPROM address
	MOV	R0,	#0	;Set counter (512)
	MOV	R1,	#2	
	MOV	R2,	#0	
CHECK	2:			;Verify 512 bytes data
	LCALL	IAP_RE	AD	;Read Flash
	CJNE	A, 2,	ERROR	;If error, break
	INC	DPTR		;Inc Flash address
	INC	R2		;Modify verify data
	DJNZ	R0,	CHECK2	;Check next
		R1,	CHECK2	;Check next
	MOV	P1,	#0F0H	;1111,0000 Verify successful
				· ·

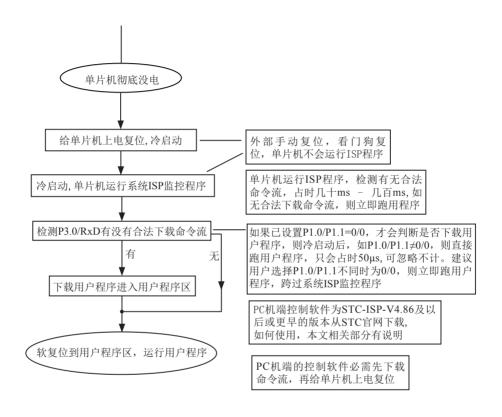
```
ERROR:
        MOV
                P0,
                        R0
        MOV
                P2,
                        R1
        MOV
               P3,
                        R2
               P1.7
        CLR
                                        :0xxx,xxxx IAP operation fail
        SJMP
                $
·/*____
:Software delay function
·____*/
DELAY:
        CLR
               Α
        MOV
               R0.
                        Α
        MOV
                R1,
                        Α
                R2.
                        #20H
        MOV
DELAY1:
        DJNZ
                R0,
                        DELAY1
        DJNZ
                R1.
                        DELAY1
        DJNZ
                R2,
                        DELAY1
        RET
;Disable ISP/IAP/EEPROM function
:Make MCU in a safe state
IAP IDLE:
                                #0
                                                :Close IAP function
        MOV
               IAP CONTR,
        MOV
               IAP CMD,
                                #0
                                                ;Clear command to standby
               IAP TRIG,
                                #0
                                                ;Clear trigger register
        MOV
                                                :Data ptr point to non-EEPROM area
        MOV
                IAP ADDRH,
                                #80H
                IAP ADDRL,
                                                ;Clear IAP address to prevent misuse
        MOV
                                #0
        RET
;Read one byte from ISP/IAP/EEPROM area
;Input: DPTR(ISP/IAP/EEPROM address)
;Output:ACC (Flash data)
:----*/
IAP READ:
        MOV
               IAP CONTR,
                                #ENABLE IAP
                                                Open IAP function, and set wait time
               IAP CMD,
        MOV
                                #CMD READ
                                                ;Set ISP/IAP/EEPROM READ command
               IAP ADDRL,
        MOV
                                DPL
                                                ;Set ISP/IAP/EEPROM address low
               IAP ADDRH,
                                                ;Set ISP/IAP/EEPROM address high
        MOV
                                DPH
               IAP TRIG,
                                                ;Send trigger command1 (0x46)
        MOV
                                #46H
        MOV
               IAP TRIG,
                                                ;Send trigger command2 (0xb9)
                                #0B9H
        NOP
                                ;MCU will hold here until ISP/IAP/EEPROM operation complete
        MOV
                        IAP DATA
                                                ;Read ISP/IAP/EEPROM data
                Α,
        LCALL IAP IDLE
                                                ;Close ISP/IAP/EEPROM function
        RET
```

```
:Program one byte to ISP/IAP/EEPROM area
;Input: DPAT(ISP/IAP/EEPROM address)
:ACC (ISP/IAP/EEPROM data)
:Output:-
:----*/
IAP PROGRAM:
               IAP CONTR,
       MOV
                                #ENABLE IAP
                                                  Open IAP function, and set wait time
       MOV
               IAP CMD,
                                #CMD PROGRAM
                                                  ;Set ISP/IAP/EEPROM PROGRAM command
       MOV
               IAP ADDRL,
                               DPL
                                                  ;Set ISP/IAP/EEPROM address low
       MOV
               IAP ADDRH,
                               DPH
                                                  ;Set ISP/IAP/EEPROM address high
       MOV
               IAP DATA,
                                                  ;Write ISP/IAP/EEPROM data
                               Α
               IAP TRIG,
       MOV
                               #46H
                                                  ;Send trigger command1 (0x46)
       MOV
               IAP TRIG,
                               #0B9H
                                                  ;Send trigger command2 (0xb9)
                                ;MCU will hold here until ISP/IAP/EEPROM operation complete
       NOP
       LCALL IAP IDLE
                                                  ;Close ISP/IAP/EEPROM function
       RET
:/*_____
;Erase one sector area
;Input: DPTR(ISP/IAP/EEPROM address)
;Output:-
IAP ERASE:
       MOV
               IAP CONTR,
                                #ENABLE IAP
                                               Open IAP function, and set wait time
               IAP CMD,
       MOV
                                #CMD ERASE
                                               ;Set ISP/IAP/EEPROM ERASE command
        MOV
               IAP ADDRL,
                                DPL
                                               ;Set ISP/IAP/EEPROM address low
                                               ;Set ISP/IAP/EEPROM address high
        MOV
               IAP ADDRH,
                               DPH
        MOV IAP TRIG,#46H
                                               ;Send trigger command1 (0x46)
        MOV IAP TRIG,#0B9H
                                               :Send trigger command2 (0xb9)
       NOP
                                ;MCU will hold here until ISP/IAP/EEPROM operation complete
                                               ;Close ISP/IAP/EEPROM function
       LCALL IAP IDLE
       RET
       END
```

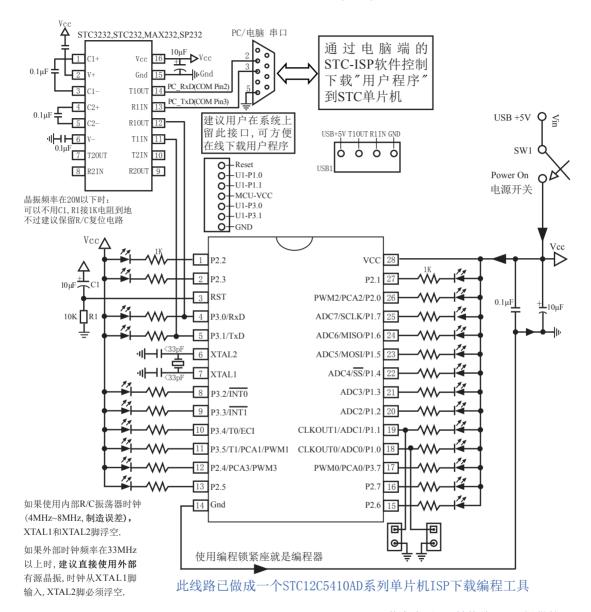
第13章 STC12系列单片机开发/编程工具说明

13.1 在系统可编程(ISP)原理, 官方演示工具使用说明

13.1.1 在系统可编程(ISP)原理使用说明



13.1.2 STC12C5410AD系列在系统可编程(ISP)典型应用线路图



若客户无USB转换线,STC提供第三 方生产的USB-RS232转换线,人民 币20元每条。 STC12C5410AD系列单片机具有在系统可编程(ISP)特性,ISP的好处是:省去购买通用编程器,单片机在用户系统上即可下载/烧录用户程序,而无须将单片机从已生产好的产品上拆下,再用通用编程器将程序代码烧录进单片机内部。有些程序尚未定型的产品可以一边生产,一边完善,加快了产品进入市场的速度,减小了新产品由于软件缺陷带来的风险。由于可以在用户的目标系统上将程序直接下载进单片机看运行结果对错,故无须仿真器。

STC12系列单片机内部固化有ISP系统引导固件,配合PC端的控制程序即可将用户的程序代码下载进单片机内部,故无须编程器(速度比通用编程器快,几秒一片)。

如何获得及使用STC 提供的ISP 下载工具(STC-ISP.exe 软件):

- (1). 获得STC提供的ISP下载工具(软件)
- 登陆STC官方网站,从STC半导体专栏下载PC(电脑)端的ISP程序,然后将其自解压,再安装即可(执行setup.exe),注意随时更新软件。
- (2). 使用STC-ISP下载工具(软件),请随时更新,目前已到Ver4.86版本以上,支持*.bin,*.hex(Intel 16 进制格式)文件,少数*.hex 文件不支持的话,请转换成*.bin 文件,请随时注意升级PC(电脑)端的STC-ISP.EXE 程序。
- (3). STC12系列单片机出厂时就已完全加密。需要单片机内部的电放光后上电复位(冷起动)才运行系统ISP程序,如从 P3. 0检测到合法的下载命令流就下载用户程序,如检测不到就复位到用户程序区,运行用户程序。
- (4). 如果用户板上P3.0, P3.1接了RS-485等电路,下载时需要将其断开。用户系统接了RS-485等通信电路,推荐在选项中选择"下次冷启动时需P1.0/P1.1=0/0才可以下载程序"

13.1.3 电脑端的ISP控制软件界面使用说明

Step1/步骤1: Select MCU Type 选择单片机型号 MCU Type AP Memory Range STC12C5410AD ▼ 0000 - 27FF	
Step2/步骤2: Open File / 打开文件(文件范围内未用区域填00) 起始地址 (NEX) 校验和 [0] ▼ 打开文件前清0缓冲 打开程序文件 [0] ▼ 打开文件前清0缓冲 打开程序文件 Step3/步骤3: Select COM Port, Max Baud/选择串行口, 最高波特率	用户根据实际使用 效果选择限制最高 通信波特率,如
COM: COM7 ▼ □ 最高波特率: 115200 ▼ 请尝试提高最低波特率或使最高波特率 最低波特率: 2400 ▼	57600,38400,19200
Step4/步骤4:设置本框和右下方 / 选项/ 中的选项————————————————————————————————————	
下次冷启动P1.0/P1.1:	如P3.0/P3.1外接 RS-485/RS-232 等通信电路,建 议选择P1.0/P1.1 等于0/0才可以 下载程序,如不
Step5/步骤5: Download/下载 先点下载按钮再MCU上电复位-冷启动	同时为0/0,则 跨过系统ISP引 导程序,直接运 行用户程序。
□ 当目标代码发生变化后自动调入文件,并立即发送下载命令 单片机出厂时的缺省设置是"P1.0/P1.1"与下载无关, P3.0/RxD,P3.1/TxD 通过 RS-232 转换器连接到电脑的普通 RS-232 串口就可以下载/编程用户应用程序到单片机内部用户 应用程序区了。 如果单片机在正常工作时 P3.0/RxD 外接的是 RS-485/	新的设置冷启动后 (彻底停电后再上 电),才生效
开发调试时,可考虑 选择此 项 大批量生产时使用	

Step1/步骤1: 选择你所使用的单片机型号,如STC12C5A60X等

Step2/步骤2: 打开文件,要烧录用户程序,必须调入用户的程序代码(*.bin, *.hex)

Step3/步骤3: 选择串行口, 你所使用的电脑串口, 如串行口1--C0M1, 串行口2--C0M2, ... 有些新式笔记本电脑没有RS-232串行口, 可买一条USB-RS232转接器, 人民币50元左右。有些USB-RS232转接器, 不能兼容, 可让STC帮你购买经过测试的转换器。

Step4/步骤4: 选择下次冷启动后,时钟源为"内部R/C振荡器"还是"外部晶体或时钟" (STC12系列单片机只有内部R/C振荡时钟)

Step5/步骤5:选择"Download/下载"按钮下载用户的程序进单片机内部,可重复执行 Step5/步骤5,也可选择"Re-Download/重复下载"按钮

下载时注意看提示,主要看是否要给单片机上电或复位,下载速度比一般通用编程器快。一定要先选择"Download/下载"按钮,然后再给单片机上电复位(先彻底断电),而不要先上电,先上电,检测不到合法的下载命令流,单片机就直接跑用户程序了。

关干硬件连接:

- (1). MCU/单片机 RXD(P3.0) --- RS-232转换器 --- PC/电脑 TXD(COM Port Pin3)
- (2). MCU/单片机 TXD(P3.1) --- RS-232转换器 --- PC/电脑 RXD(COM Port Pin2)
- (3). MCU/单片机 GND ------ PC/电脑 GND(COM Port Pin5)
- (4). 如果您的系统P3.0/P3.1连接到RS-485电路,推荐

在选项里选择"下次冷启动需要P1.0/P1.1 = 0,0才可以下载用户程序"

这样冷启动后如 P1.0, P1.1不同时为0,单片机直接运行用户程序,免得由于RS-485总线上的乱码造成单片机反复判断乱码是否为合法,浪费几百mS的时间,其实如果你的系统本身P3.0,P3.1就是做串口使用,也建议选择P1.0/P1.1 = 0/0才可下载用户程序,以便下次冷启动直接运行用户程序。

(5). RS-232转换器可选用MAX232/SP232(4.5-5.5V), MAX3232/SP3232(3V-5.5V).

13.1.4 STC-ISP下载编程工具硬件使用说明

如用户系统没有RS-232接口,

可使用STC-ISP Ver 3.0A.PCB演示板作为编程工具

STC-ISP Ver 3.0A PCB板可以焊接3种电路,分别支持STC12系列16Pin /20Pin / 28Pin / 32Pin。我们在下载板的反面贴了一张标签纸,说明它是支持16Pin /20Pin / 28Pin / 32Pin中的哪一种,用户要特别注意。在正面焊的编程烧录用锁紧座都是40Pin的,锁紧座第20-Pin接的是地线,请将单片机的地线对着锁紧座的地线插。

在STC-ISP Ver 3.0A PCB 板完成下载编程用户程序的工作:

关干硬件连接:

- (1). 根据单片机的工作电压选择单片机电源电压
 - A. 5V单片机,短接JP1的MCU-VCC, +5V电源管脚
 - B. 3V单片机, 短接JP1的MCU-VCC, 3.3V电源管脚
- (2), 连接线(STC提供)
 - A. 将一端有9芯连接座的插头插入PC/电脑RS-232串行接口插座用于通信
 - B. 将同一端的USB插头插入PC/电脑USB接口用于取电
 - C. 将只有一个USB插头的一端插入STC-ISP Ver 3.0A PCB板USB1插座用于RS-232通信和供电,此时USB +5V Power灯亮(D43, USB接口有电)
- (3), 其他插座不需连接
- (4).SW1开关处于非按下状态,此时MCU-VCC Power灯不亮(D41),没有给单片机通电
- (5).SW3开关

处于非按下状态, P1.0, P1.1 = 1, 1, 不短接到地。

处于按下状态, P1.0, P1.1 = 0, 0, 短接到地。

如果单片机已被设成"下次冷启动P1.0/P1.1 = 0,0才判P3.0有无合法下载命令流"就必须将SW3开关处于按下状态,让单片机的P1.0/P1.1短接到地

- (6). 将单片机插进U1-Socket锁紧座,锁紧单片机,注意单片机是8-Pin/20-Pin/28-Pin,而U1-Socket锁紧座是40-Pin,我们的设计是靠下插,靠近晶体的那一端插。
- (7). 关于软件:选择"Download/下载"(必须在给单片机上电之前让PC先发一串合法下载命令)
 - (8). 按下SW1开关,给单片机上电复位,此时MCU-VCC Power灯亮(D41) 此时STC单片机进入ISP模式(STC12系列冷启动进入ISP)
 - (9). 下载成功后,再按SW1开关,此时SW1开关处于非按下状态,MCU-VCC Power灯不亮(D41),给单片机断电,取下单片机,换上新的单片机。

13.1.5 若无RS-232转换器,如何用ISP下载板做RS-232通信转换

利用STC-ISP Ver 3.0A PCB 板进行RS-232转换单片机在用户自己的板上完成下载/烧录:

- 1. U1-Socket锁紧座不得插入单片机
- 2. 将用户系统上的电源 (MCU-VCC, GND) 及单片机的P3. 0, P3. 1接入转换板CN2插座 这样用户系统上的单片机就具备了与PC/电脑进行通信的能力
- 3. 将用户系统的单片机的P1.0, P1.1接入转换板CN2插座(如果需要的话)
- 4. 如须P1.0, P1.1 = 0, 0, 短接到地,可在用户系统上将其短接到地,或将P1.0/P1.1也从用户系统上引到STC-ISP Ver3.0A PCB 板上,将SW3开关按下,则P1.0/P1.1=0,0。
- 5. 关于软件:选择"Download/下载"
- 6. 给单片机系统上电复位(注意是从用户系统自供电,不要从电脑USB取电,电脑USB座 不插)
- 7. 下载程序时,如用户板有外部看门狗电路,不得启动,单片机必须有正确的复位,但不能在ISP下载程序时被外部看门狗复位,如有,可将外部看门狗电路WDI端/或WDO端浮空。
- 8. 如有RS-485晶片连到P3.0, P3.1, 或其他线路, 在下载时应将其断开。

13.2 编译器/汇编器,编程器,仿真器

STC 单片机应使用何种编译器/汇编器:

- 1. 任何老的编译器/汇编器都可以支持,流行用Keil C51
- 2. 把STC单片机, 当成Intel的8052/87C52/87C54/87C58, Philips的P87C52/P87C54/P87C58就可以了.
- 3. 如果要用到扩展的专用特殊功能寄存器,直接对该地址单元设置就行了,当然先声明特殊功能寄存器的地址较好。

编程烧录器:

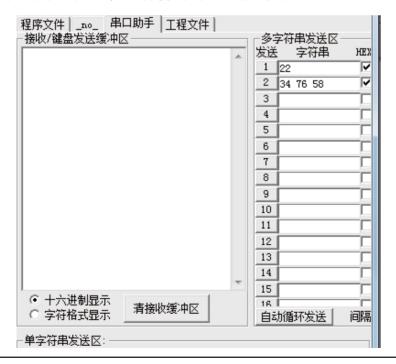
我们有: STC12C5410AD系列ISP经济型下载编程工具(人民币50元,可申请免费样品)

注意:有专门下载28PIN/20PIN的不同演示板,

28PIN是28PIN的演示板, 20PIN是20PIN的演示板

仿真器:如您已有老的仿真器,可仿真普通8052的基本功能

STC12C5410AD系列单片机扩展功能如它仿不了,可以用 STC-ISP. EXE 直接下载用户程序看运行结果就可以了,如需观察变量,可自己写一小段测试程序通过串口输出到电脑端的STC-ISP. EXE 的"串口助手"来显示,也很方便。无须添加新的设备.



无仿真器如何调试/开发用户程序

- 1. 首先参照本手册当中的"用定时器1做波特率发生器",调通串口程序,这样,要观察变量就可以自己写一小段测试程序将变量通过串口输出到电脑端的STC-ISP. EXE的"串口调试助手"来显示,也很方便。
- 2. 调通按键扫描程序(到处都有大量的参考程序)
- 3. 调通用户系统的显示电路程序,此时变量/寄存器也可以通过用户系统的显示电路显示了
- 4. 调通A/D检测电路(我们用户手册里面有完整的参考程序)
- 5. 调通PWM 等电路(我们用户手册里面有完整的参考程序)

这样分步骤模块化调试用户程序,有些系统,熟练的8051用户,三天就可以调通了,难度不大的系统,一般一到二周就可以调通。

用户的串口输出显示程序可以在输出变量/寄存器的值之后,继续全速运行用户程序,也可以等待串口送来的"继续运行命令",方可继续运行用户程序,这就相当于断点。这种断点每设置一个地方,就必须调用一次该显示寄存器/变量的程序,有点麻烦,但却很实用。

13.3 自定义下载演示程序(实现不停电下载)

```
/*_____*/
/* --- STC MCU Limited -----*/
/* --- 演示STC 1T 系列单片机 利用软件实现自定义下载-----*/
/* 如果要在程序中使用或在文章中引用该程序, -----*/
/* 请在程序中或文章中注明使用了STC的资料及程序 -----*/
#include <reg51.h>
#include <instrins.h>
sfr IAP CONTR = 0xc7;
sbit MCU Start Led = P1^7;
#define Self Define ISP Download Command 0x22
#define RELOAD COUNT 0xfb
                             //18.432MHz,12T,SMOD=0,9600bps
//#define RELOAD COUNT 0xf6
                             //18.432MHz,12T,SMOD=0,4800bps
//#define RELOAD COUNT 0xec
                             //18.432MHz,12T,SMOD=0,2400bps
//#define RELOAD COUNT 0xd8
                             //18.432MHz,12T,SMOD=0,1200bps
void serial port initial(void);
void send UART(unsigned char);
void UART Interrupt Receive(void);
void soft reset to ISP Monitor(void);
void delay(void);
void display MCU Start Led(void);
void main(void)
       unsigned char i = 0;
       serial port initial();
                                    //Initial UART
       display MCU Start Led();
                                    //Turn on the work LED
       send UART(0x34);
                                    //Send UART test data
       send UART(0xa7);
                                    // Send UART test data
       while (1);
```

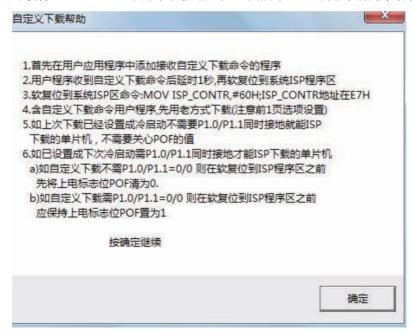
```
void send UART(unsigned char i)
         ES = 0;
                                                 //Disable serial interrupt
         TI = 0;
                                                 //Clear TI flag
                                                 //send this data
         SBUF = i;
                                                 //wait for the data is sent
         while (!TI);
         TI = 0;
                                                 //clear TI flag
         ES = 1;
                                                 //enable serial interrupt
}
void UART Interrupt)Receive(void) interrupt 4 using 1
         unsigned char k = 0;
         if (RI)
          {
                   RI = 0;
                   k = SBUF;
                   if (k == Self Define ISP Command)
                                                                     //check the serial data
                             delay();
                                                                     //delay 1s
                             delay();
                                                                     //delay 1s
                             soft reset to ISP Monitor();
                   }
         if (TI)
                   TI = 0;
}
void soft reset to ISP Monitor(void)
         IAP CONTR = 0x60;
                                                 //0110,0000 soft reset system to run ISP monitor
void delay(void)
         unsigned int j = 0;
         unsigned int g = 0;
```

```
for (j=0; j<5; j++)
                  for (g=0; g<60000; g++)
                           _nop_();
                           _nop_();
                           _nop_();
                            _nop_();
                           _nop_();
                  }
         }
}
void display_MCU_Start_Led(void)
{
         unsigned char i = 0;
         for (i=0; i<3; i++)
                  MCU_Start_Led = 0;
                                              //Turn on work LED
                  dejay();
                                              //Turn off work LED
                  MCU_Start_Led = 1;
                  dejay();
                  MCU_Start_Led = 0;
                                              //Turn on work LED
```

自定义下载在STC的电脑端ISP软件STC-ISP.EXE 中,还应做相应设置,具体参考设置见下图:

选项 自定义下载 脱机下载 检查MCV选项 自动增量 ISP DEMC
波特率 38400 ▼ 奇偶位 None ▼ 数据位 8 ▼ 停止位 1 ▼
自定义下载 12 34 56 78 90 AB CD EF
☑ 当目标代码发生变化后自动调入文件,并立即发送自定义下载命令
帮助

点击软件STC-ISP.EXE中的帮助按钮(如上图所示),可见详细的帮助说明,如下图所示



附录A: 汇编语言编程

INTRODUCTION

Assembly language is a computer language lying between the extremes of machine language and high-level language like Pascal or C use words and statements that are easily understood by humans, although still a long way from "natural" language. Machine language is the binary language of computers. A machine language program is a series of binary bytes representing instructions the computer can execute.

Assembly language replaces the binary codes of machine language with easy to remember "mnemonics" that facilitate programming. For example, an addition instruction in machine language might be represented by the code "10110011". It might be represented in assembly language by the mnemonic "ADD". Programming with mnemonics is obviously preferable to programming with binary codes.

Of course, this is not the whole story. Instructions operate on data, and the location of the data is specified by various "addressing modes" emmbeded in the binary code of the machine language instruction. So, there may be several variations of the ADD instruction, depending on what is added. The rules for specifying these variations are central to the theme of assembly language programming.

An assembly language program is not executable by a computer. Once written, the program must undergo translation to machine language. In the example above, the mnemonic "ADD" must be translated to the binary code "10110011". Depending on the complexity of the programming environment, this translation may involve one or more steps before an executable machine language program results. As a minimum, a program called an "assembler" is required to translate the instruction mnemonics to machine language binary codes. Afurther step may require a "linker" to combine portions of program from separate files and to set the address in memory at which th program may execute. We begin with a few definitions.

An assembly language program i a program written using labels, mnemonics, and so on, in which each statement corresponds to a machine instruction. Assembly language programs, often called source code or symbolic code, cannot be executed by a computer.

A machine language program is a program containing binary codes that represent instructions to a computer. Machine language programs, often called object code, are executable by a computer.

A assembler is a program that translate an assembly language program into a machine language program. The machine language program (object code) may be in "absolute" form or in "relocatable" form. In the latter case, "linking" is required to set the absolute address for execution.

A linker is a program that combines relocatable object programs (modules) and produces an absolute object program that is executable by a computer. A linker is sometimes called a "linker/locator" to reflect its separate functions of combining relocatable modules (linking) and setting the address for execution (locating).

A segment is a unit of code or data memory. A segment may be relocatable or absolute. A relocatable segment has a name, type, and other attributes that allow the linker to combine it with other paritial segments, if required, and to correctly locate the segment. An absolute segment has no name and cannot be combined with other segments.

A module contains one or more segments or partial segments. A module has a name assigned by the user. The module definitions determine the scope of local symbols. An object file contains one or more modules. A module may be thought of as a "file" in many instances.

A program consists of a single absolute module, merging all absolute and relocatable segments from all input modules. A program contains only the binary codes for instructions (with address and data constants) that are understood by a computer.

ASSEMBLER OPERATION

There are many assembler programs and other support programs available to facilitate the development of applications for the 8051 microcontroller. Intel's original MCS-51 family assembler, ASM51, is no longer available commercially. However, it set the standard to which the others are compared.

ASM51 is a powerful assembler with all the bells and whistles. It is available on Intel development systems and on the IBM PC family of microcomputers. Since these "host" computers contain a CPU chip other than the 8051, ASM51 is called a cross assembler. An 8051 source program may be written on the host computer (using any text editor) and may be assembled to an object file and listing file (using ASM51), but the program may not be executed. Since the host system's CPU chip is not an 8051, it does not understand the binary instruction in the object file. Execution on the host computer requires either hardware emulation or software simulation of the target CPU. A third possibility is to download the object program to an 8051-based target system for execution.

ASM51 is invoked from the system prompt by

ASM51 source file [assembler controls]

The source file is assembled and any assembler controls specified take effect. The assembler receives a source file as input (e.g., PROGRAM.SRC) and generates an object file (PROGRAM.OBJ) and listing file (PROGRAM. LST) as output. This is illustrated in Figure 1.

Since most assemblers scan the source program twice in performing the translation to machine language, they are described as two-pass assemblers. The assembler uses a location counter as the address of instructions and the values for labels. The action of each pass is described below.

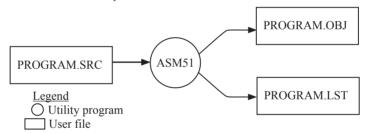


Figure 1 Assembling a source program

Pass one

During the first pass, the source file is scanned line-by-line and a symbol table is built. The location counter defaults to 0 or is set by the ORG (set origin) directive. As the file is scanned, the location counter is incremented by the length of each instruction. Define data directives (DBs or DWs) increment the location counter by the number of bytes defined. Reserve memory directives (DSs) increment the location counter by the number of bytes reserved.

Each time a label is found at the beginning of a line, it is placed in the symbol table along with the current value of the location counter. Symbols that are defined using equate directives (EQUs) are placed in the symbol table along with the "equated" value. The symbol table is saved and then used during pass two.

Pass two

During pass two, the object and listing files are created. Mnemonics are converted to opcodes and placed in the output files. Operands are evaluated and placed after the instruction opcodes. Where symbols appear in the operand field, their values are retrieved from the symbol table (created during pass one) and used in calculating the correct data or addresses for the instructions.

Since two passes are performed, the source program may use "forward references", that is, use a symbol before it is defined. This would occur, for example, in branching ahead in a program.

The object file, if it is absolute, contains only the binary bytes (00H-0FH) of the machine language program. A relocatable object file will also contain a sysmbol table and other information required for linking and locating. The listing file contains ASCII text codes (02H-7EH) for both the source program and the hexadecimal bytes in the machine language program.

A good demonstration of the distinction between an object file and a listing file is to display each on the host computer's CRT display (using, for example, the TYPE command on MS-DOS systems). The listing file clearly displays, with each line of output containing an address, opcode, and perhaps data, followed by the program statement from the source file. The listing file displays properly because it contains only ASCII text codes. Displaying the object file is a problem, however. The output will appear as "garbage", since the object file contains binary codes of an 8051 machine language program, rather than ASCII text codes.

ASSEMBLY LANGUAGE PROGRAM FORMAT

Assembly language programs contain the following:

Machine instructions

Assembler directives

Assembler controls

Comments

Machine instructions are the familiar mnemonics of executable instructions (e.g., ANL). Assembler directives are instructions to the assembler program that define program structure, symbols, data, constants, and so on (e.g., ORG). Assembler controls set assembler modes and direct assembly flow (e.g., \$TITLE). Comments enhance the readability of programs by explaining the purpose and operation of instruction sequences.

Those lines containing machine instructions or assembler directives must be written following specific rules understood by the assembler. Each line is divided into "fields" separated by space or tab characters. The general format for each line is as follows:

```
[label:] mnemonic [operand] [, operand] [...] [;commernt]
```

Only the mnemonic field is mandatory. Many assemblers require the label field, if present, to begin on the left in column 1, and subsequent fields to be separated by space or tab charecters. With ASM51, the label field needn't begin in column 1 and the mnemonic field needn't be on the same line as the label field. The operand field must, however, begin on the same line as the mnemonic field. The fields are described below.

Label Field

A label represents the address of the instruction (or data) that follows. When branching to this instruction, this label is usded in the operand field of the branch or jump instruction (e.g., SJMP SKIP).

Whereas the term "label" always represents an address, the term "symbol" is more general. Labels are one type of symbol and are identified by the requirement that they must terminate with a colon(:). Symbols are assigned values or attributes, using directives such as EQU, SEGMENT, BIT, DATA, etc. Symbols may be addresses, data constants, names of segments, or other constructs conceived by the programmer. Symbols do not terminate with a colon. In the example below, PAR is a symbol and START is a label (which is a type of symbol).

```
PAR EQU 500 ;"PAR" IS A SYMBOL WHICH ;REPRESENTS THE VALUE 500 START: MOV A, #0FFH ;"START" IS A LABEL WHICH ;REPRESENTS THE ADDRESS OF ;THE MOV INSTRUCTION
```

A symbol (or label) must begin with a letter, question mark, or underscore (_); must be followed by letters, digit, "?", or "_"; and can contain up to 31 characters. Symbols may use upper- or lowercase characters, but they are treated the same. Reserved words (mnemonics, operators, predefined symbols, and directives) may not be used.

Mnemonic Field

Intruction mnemonics or assembler directives go into mnemonic field, which follows the label field. Examples of instruction mnemonics are ADD, MOV, DIV, or INC. Examples of assembler directives are ORG, EOU, or DB.

Operand Field

The operand field follows the mnemonic field. This field contains the address or data used by the instruction. A label may be used to represent the address of the data, or a symbol may be used to represent a data constant. The possibilities for the operand field are largely dependent on the operation. Some operations have no operand (e.g., the RET instruction), while others allow for multiple operands separated by commas. Indeed, the possibilities for the operand field are numberous, and we shall elaborate on these at length. But first, the comment field.

Comment Field

Remarks to clarify the program go into comment field at the end of each line. Comments must begin with a semicolon (;). Each lines may be comment lines by beginning them with a semicolon. Subroutines and large sections of a program generally begin with a comment block—serveral lines of comments that explain the general properties of the section of software that follows.

Special Assembler Symbols

Special assembler symbols are used for the register-specific addressing modes. These include A, R0 through R7, DPTR, PC, C and AB. In addition, a dollar sign (\$) can be used to refer to the current value of the location counter. Some examples follow.

SETB C
INC DPTR
JNB TI,\$

The last instruction above makes effective use of ASM51's location counter to avoid using a label. It could also be written as

HERE: JNB TI, HERE

Indirect Address

For certain instructions, the operand field may specify a register that contains the address of the data. The commercial "at" sign (@) indicates address indirection and may only be used with R0, R1, the DPTR, or the PC, depending on the instruction. For example,

ADD A, @R0 MOVC A, @A+PC

The first instruction above retrieves a byte of data from internal RAM at the address specified in R0. The second instruction retrieves a byte of data from external code memory at the address formed by adding the contents of the accumulator to the program counter. Note that the value of the program counter, when the add takes place, is the address of the instruction following MOVC. For both instruction above, the value retrieved is placed into the accumulator.

Immediate Data

Instructions using immediate addressing provide data in the operand field that become part of the instruction. Immediate data are preceded with a pound sign (#). For example,

CONSTANT	EQU	100	
	MOV	Α,	#0FEH
	ORL	40H,	#CONSTANT

All immediate data operations (except MOV DPTR,#data) require eight bits of data. The immediate data are evaluated as a 16-bit constant, and then the low-byte is used. All bits in the high-byte must be the same (00H or FFH) or the error message "value will not fit in a byte" is generated. For example, the following instructions are syntactically correct:

```
MOV A, #0FF00H
MOV A, #00FFH
```

But the following two instructions generate error messages:

```
MOV A, #0FE00H
MOV A, #01FFH
```

If signed decimal notation is used, constants from -256 to +255 may also be used. For example, the following two instructions are equivalent (and syntactically correct):

```
MOV A, #-256
MOV A, #0FF00H
```

Both instructions above put 00H into accumulator A.

Data Address

Many instructions access memory locations using direct addressing and require an on-chip data memory address (00H to 7FH) or an SFR address (80H to 0FFH) in the operand field. Predefined symbols may be used for the SFR addresses. For example,

```
MOV A, 45H
MOV A, SBUF ;SAME AS MOV A, 99H
```

Bit Address

One of the most powerful features of the 8051 is the ability to access individual bits without the need for masking operations on bytes. Instructions accessing bit-addressable locations must provide a bit address in internal data memory (00h to 7FH) or a bit address in the SFRs (80H to 0FFH).

There are three ways to specify a bit address in an instruction: (a) explicitly by giving the address, (b) using the dot operator between the byte address and the bit position, and (c) using a predefined assembler symbol. Some examples follow.

SETB	0E7H	EXPLICIT BIT ADDRESS
SETB	ACC.7	;DOT OPERATOR (SAME AS ABOVE)
JNB	TI,	\$;"TI" IS A PRE-DEFINED SYMBOL
JNB	99H.	\$:(SAME AS ABOVE)

Code Address

A code address is used in the operand field for jump instructions, including relative jumps (SJMP and conditional jumps), absolute jumps and calls (ACALL, AJMP), and long jumps and calls (LJMP, LCALL).

The code address is usually given in the form of a label.

ASM51 will determine the correct code address and insert into the instruction the correct 8-bit signed offset, 11-bit page address, or 16-bit long address, as appropriate.

Generic Jumps and Calls

ASM51 allows programmers to use a generic JMP or CALL mnemonic. "JMP" can be used instead of SJMP, AJMP or LJMP; and "CALL" can be used instead of ACALL or LCALL. The assembler converts the generic mnemonic to a "real" instruction following a few simple rules. The generic mnemonic converts to the short form (for JMP only) if no forward references are used and the jump destination is within -128 locations, or to the absolute form if no forward references are used and the instruction following the JMP or CALL instruction is in the same 2K block as the destination instruction. If short or absolute forms cannot be used, the conversion is to the long form.

The conversion is not necessarily the best programming choice. For example, if branching ahead a few instructions, the generic JMP will always convert to LJMP even though an SJMP is probably better. Consider the following assembled instructions sequence using three generic jumps.

LOC	OBJ	LINE	SOURCE			
1234		1		ORG	1234H	
1234	04	2	START:	INC	A	
1235	80FD	3		JMP	START	;ASSEMBLES AS SJMP
12FC		4		ORG	START + 200	
12FC	4134	5		JMP	START	;ASSEMBLES AS AJMP
12FE	021301	6		JMP	FINISH	;ASSEMBLES AS LJMP
1301	04	7	FINISH:	INC	A	
		8		END		

The first jump (line 3) assembles as SJMP because the destination is before the jump (i.e., no forward reference) and the offset is less than -128. The ORG directive in line 4 creates a gap of 200 locations between the label START and the second jump, so the conversion on line 5 is to AJMP because the offset is too great for SJMP. Note also that the address following the second jump (12FEH) and the address of START (1234H) are within the same 2K page, which, for this instruction sequence, is bounded by 1000H and 17FFH. This criterion must be met for absolute addressing. The third jump assembles as LJMP because the destination (FINISH) is not yet defined when the jump is assembled (i.e., a forward reference is used). The reader can verify that the conversion is as stated by examining the object field for each jump instruction.

ASSEMBLE-TIME EXPRESSION EVALUATION

Values and constants in the operand field may be expressed three ways: (a) explicitly (e.g.,0EFH), (b) with a predefined symbol (e.g., ACC), or (c) with an expression (e.g.,2 + 3). The use of expressions provides a powerful technique for making assembly language programs more readable and more flexible. When an expression is used, the assembler calculates a value and inserts it into the instruction.

All expression calculations are performed using 16-bit arithmetic; however, either 8 or 16 bits are inserted into the instruction as needed. For example, the following two instructions are the same:

```
MOV DPTR, #04FFH + 3
MOV DPTR, #0502H ;ENTIRE 16-BIT RESULT USED
```

If the same expression is used in a "MOV A,#data" instruction, however, the error message "value will not fit in a byte" is generated by ASM51. An overview of the rules for evaluateing expressions follows.

Number Bases

The base for numeric constants is indicated in the usual way for Intel microprocessors. Constants must be followed with "B" for binary, "O" or "Q" for octal, "D" or nothing for decimal, or "H" for hexadecimal. For example, the following instructions are the same:

```
MOV A,#15H
MOV A,#1111B
MOV A,#0FH
MOV A,#17Q
MOV A,#15D
```

Note that a digit must be the first character for hexadecimal constants in order to differentiate them from labels (i.e., "0A5H" not "A5H").

Charater Strings

Strings using one or two characters may be used as operands in expressions. The ASCII codes are converted to the binary equivalent by the assembler. Character constants are enclosed in single quotes ('). Some examples follow.

```
CJNE A, #'Q', AGAIN
SUBB A, #'0' ;CONVERT ASCII DIGIT TO BINARY DIGIT
MOV DPTR, #'AB'
MOV DPTR, #4142H ;SAME AS ABOVE
```

Arithmetic Operators

The arithmetic operators are

+ addition
- subtraction
* multiplication
/ division
MOD modulo (remainder after division)

For example, the following two instructions are same:

```
MOV A, 10+10H
MOV A, #1AH
```

The following two instructions are also the same:

```
MOV A, #25 MOD 7
MOV A. #4
```

Since the MOD operator could be confused with a symbol, it must be seperated from its operands by at least one space or tab character, or the operands must be enclosed in parentheses. The same applies for the other operators composed of letters.

Logical Operators

The logical operators are

```
OR logical OR
AND logical AND
XOR logical Exclusive OR
NOT logical NOT (complement)
```

The operation is applied on the corresponding bits in each operand. The operator must be separated from the operands by space or tab characters. For example, the following two instructions are the same:

```
MOV A, # '9' AND 0FH
MOV A. #9
```

The NOT operator only takes one operand. The following three MOV instructions are the same:

```
THREE EQU 3
MINUS_THREE EQU -3
MOV A, #(NOT THREE) + 1
MOV A, #MINUS_THREE
MOV A, #11111101B
```

Special Operators

The sepcial operators are

SHR shift right
SHL shift left
HIGH high-byte
LOW low-byte
() evaluate first

For example, the following two instructions are the same:

```
MOV A, #8 SHL 1
MOV A, #10H
```

The following two instructions are also the same:

```
MOV A, #HIGH 1234H
MOV A, #12H
```

Relational Operators

When a relational operator is used between two operands, the result is alwalys false (0000H) or true (FFFFH). The operators are

```
EO
         =
                  equals
NE
                  not equals
         <>
LT
                  less than
         <
                  less than or equal to
LE
         <=
GT
                  greater than
         >
GE
         >=
                  greater than or equal to
```

Note that for each operator, two forms are acceptable (e.g., "EQ" or "="). In the following examples, all relational tests are "true":

```
MOV A, #5 = 5

MOV A,#5 NE 4

MOV A,# 'X' LT 'Z'

MOV A,# 'X' >= 'X'

MOV A,#$ > 0

MOV A,#100 GE 50
```

So, the assembled instructions are equal to

```
MOV A. #0FFH
```

Even though expressions evaluate to 16-bit results (i.e., 0FFFFH), in the examples above only the low-order eight bits are used, since the instruction is a move byte operation. The result is not considered too big in this case, because as signed numbers the 16-bit value FFFH and the 8-bit value FFH are the same (-1).

Expression Examples

The following are examples of expressions and the values that result:

Result
0001H
0002H
0001H
0010H
H0000
FFFEH
4100H
00FFH
0012H
H0000
FFFFH
FFFFHss

A practical example that illustrates a common operation for timer initialization follows: Put -500 into Timer 1 registers TH1 and TL1. In using the HIGH and LOW operators, a good approach is

```
VALUE EQU -500

MOV TH1, #HIGH VALUE

MOV TL1, #LOW VALUE
```

The assembler converts -500 to the corresponding 16-bit value (FE0CH); then the HIGH and LOW operators extract the high (FEH) and low (0CH) bytes, as appropriate for each MOV instruction.

Operator Precedence

The precedence of expression operators from highest to lowest is

```
()
HIGH LOW
* / MOD SHL SHR
+-
EQ NE LT LE GT GE = <> < <= > >=
NOT
AND
OR XOR
```

When operators of the same precedence are used, they are evaluated left to right. Examples:

Expression	Value
HIGH ('A' SHL 8)	0041H
HIGH 'A' SHL 8	0000H
NOT 'A' - 1	FFBFH
'A' OR 'A' SHL 8	4141H

ASSEMBLER DIRECTIVES

Assembler directives are instructions to the assembler program. They are not assembly language instructions executable by the target microprocessor. However, they are placed in the mnemonic field of the program. With the exception of DB and DW, they have no direct effect on the contents of memory.

ASM51 provides several catagories of directives:

Assembler state control (ORG, END, USING)

Symbol definition (SEGMENT, EQU, SET, DATA, IDATA, XDATA, BIT, CODE)

Storage initialization/reservation (DS, DBIT, DB, DW)

Program linkage (PUBLIC, EXTRN, NAME)

Segment selection (RSEG, CSEG, DSEG, ISEG, ESEG, XSEG)

Each assembler directive is presented below, ordered by catagory.

Assembler State Control

```
ORG (Set Origin) The format for the ORG (set origin) directive is ORG expression
```

The ORG directive alters the location counter to set a new program origin for statements that follow. A label is not permitted. Two examples follow.

```
ORG 100H ;SET LOCATION COUNTER TO 100H ORG ($ + 1000H) AND 0F00H ;SET TO NEXT 4K BOUNDARY
```

The ORG directive can be used in any segment type. If the current segment is absolute, the value will be an absolute address in the current segment. If a relocatable segment is active, the value of the ORG expression is treated as an offset from the base address of the current instance of the segment.

```
End The format of the END directive is END
```

END should be the last statement in the source file. No label is permitted and nothing beyond the END statement is processed by the assembler.

```
Using The format of the END directive is USING expression
```

This directive informs ASM51 of the currently active register bank. Subsequent uses of the predefined symbolic register addresses AR0 to AR7 will convert to the appropriate direct address for the active register bank. Consider the following sequence:

```
USING 3
PUSH AR7
USING 1
PUSH AR7
```

The first push above assembles to PUSH 1FH (R7 in bank 3), whereas the second push assembles to PUSH 0FH (R7 in bank 1).

Note that USING does not actually switch register banks; it only informs ASM51 of the active bank. Executing 8051 instructions is the only way to switch register banks. This is illustrated by modifying the example above as follows:

MOV PSW, #00011000B ;SELECT REGISTER BANK 3

USING 3

PUSH AR7 ;ASSEMBLE TO PUSH 1FH MOV PSW, #00001000B :SELECT REGISTER BANK 1

USING 1

PUSH AR7 ;ASSEMBLE TO PUSH 0FH

Symbol Definition

The symbol definition directives create symbols that represent segment, registers, numbers, and addresses. None of these directives may be preceded by a label. Symbols defined by these directives may not have been previously defined and may not be redefined by any means. The SET directive is the only exception. Symbol definition directives are described below.

Segment The format for the SEGMENT directive is shown below.

symbol SEGMENT segment type

The symbol is the name of a relocatable segment. In the use of segments, ASM51 is more complex than conventional assemblers, which generally support only "code" and "data" segment types. However, ASM51 defines additional segment types to accommodate the diverse memory spaces in the 8051. The following are the defined 8051 segment types (memory spaces):

CODE (the code segment)

XDATA (the external data space)

DATA (the internal data space accessible by direct addressing, 00H–07H)

IDATA (the entire internal data space accessible by indirect addressing, 00H–07H)

BIT (the bit space; overlapping byte locations 20H–2FH of the internal data space)

For example, the statement

EPROM SEGMENT CODE

declares the symbol EPROM to be a SEGMENT of type CODE. Note that this statement simply declares what EPROM is. To actually begin using this segment, the RSEG directive is used (see below).

EQU (**Equate**) The format for the EQU directive is

Symbol EQU expression

The EQU directive assigns a numeric value to a specified symbol name. The symbol must be a valid symbol name, and the expression must conform to the rules described earlier.

The following are examples of the EQU directive:

N27 EQU 27 ;SET N27 TO THE VALUE 27 HERE EQU \$;SET "HERE" TO THE VALUE OF

THE LOCATION COUNTER

CR EQU 0DH ;SET CR (CARRIAGE RETURN) TO 0DH

MESSAGE: DB 'This is a message'

LENGTH EQU \$ - MESSAGE ;"LENGTH" EQUALS LENGTH OF "MESSAGE"

Other Symbol Definition Directives The SET directive is similar to the EQU directive except the symbol may be redefined later, using another SET directive.

The DATA, IDATA, XDATA, BIT, and CODE directives assign addresses of the corresponding segment type to a symbol. These directives are not essential. A similar effect can be achieved using the EQU directive; if used, however, they evoke powerful type-checking by ASM51. Consider the following two directives and four instructions:

FLAG1	EQU	05H
FLAG2	BIT	05H
	SETB	FLAG1
	SETB	FLAG2
	MOV	FLAG1, #0
	MOV	FLAG2. #0

The use of FLAG2 in the last instruction in this sequence will generate a "data segment address expected" error message from ASM51. Since FLAG2 is defined as a bit address (using the BIT directive), it can be used in a set bit instruction, but it cannot be used in a move byte instruction. Hence, the error. Even though FLAG1 represents the same value (05H), it was defined using EQU and does not have an associated address space. This is not an advantage of EQU, but rather, a disadvantage. By properly defining address symbols for use in a specific memory space (using the directives BIT, DATA, XDATA, ect.), the programmer takes advantage of ASM51's powerful type-checking and avoids bugs from the misuse of symbols.

Storage Initialization/Reservation

The storage initialization and reservation directives initialize and reserve space in either word, byte, or bit units. The space reserved starts at the location indicated by the current value of the location counter in the currently active segment. These directives may be preceded by a label. The storage initialization/reservation directives are described below.

```
DS (Define Storage) The format for the DS (define storage) directive is [label:] DS expression
```

The DS directive reserves space in byte units. It can be used in any segment type except BIT. The expression must be a valid assemble-time expression with no forward references and no relocatable or external references. When a DS statement is encountered in a program, the location counter of the current segment is incremented by the value of the expression. The sum of the location counter and the specified expression should not exceed the limitations of the current address space.

The following statement create a 40-byte buffer in the internal data segment:

```
DSEG AT 30H ;PUT IN DATA SEGMENT (ABSOLUTE, INTERNAL)
LENGTH EQU 40
BUFFER: DS LENGRH :40 BYTES RESERVED
```

The label BUFFER represents the address of the first location of reserved memory. For this example, the buffer begins at address 30H because "AT 30H" is specified with DSEG. The buffer could be cleared using the following instruction sequence:

```
MOV R7, #LENGTH
MOV R0, #BUFFER
LOOP: MOV @R0, #0
DJNZ R7, LOOP
(continue)
```

To create a 1000-byte buffer in external RAM starting at 4000H, the following directives could be used:

XSTART EQU 4000H XLENGTH EQU 1000

XSEG AT XSTART

XBUFFER: DS XLENGTH

This buffer could be cleared with the following instruction sequence:

MOV DPTR, #XBUFFER LOOP. CLR MOVX @DPTR, A DPTR INC MOV A. DPL. CJNE #LOW (XBUFFER + XLENGTH + 1), LOOP Α. MOV A. DPH CJNE Α. #HIGH (XBUFFER + XLENGTH + 1), LOOP (continue)

This is an excellent example of a powerful use of ASM51's operators and assemble-time expressions. Since an instruction does not exist to compare the data pointer with an immediate value, the operation must be fabricated from available instructions. Two compares are required, one each for the high- and low-bytes of the DPTR. Furthermore, the compare-and-jump-if-not-equal instruction works only with the accumulator or a register, so the data pointer bytes must be moved into the accumulator before the CJNE instruction. The loop terminates only when the data pointer has reached XBUFFER + LENGTH + 1. (The "+1" is needed because the data pointer is incremented after the last MOVX instruction.)

DBIT The format for the DBIT (define bit) directive is,

[label:] DBIT expression

The DBIT directive reserves space in bit units. It can be used only in a BIT segment. The expression must be a valid assemble-time expression with no forward references. When the DBIT statement is encountered in a program, the location counter of the current (BIT) segment is incremented by the value of the expression. Note that in a BIT segment, the basic unit of the location counter is bits rather than bytes. The following directives creat three flags in a absolute bit segment:

BSEG ;BIT SEGMENT (ABSOLUTE)
KEFLAG: DBIT 1 ;KEYBOARD STATUS
PRFLAG: DBIT 1 ;PRINTER STATUS
DKFLAG: DBIT 1 ;DISK STATUS

Since an address is not specified with BSEG in the example above, the address of the flags defined by DBIT could be determined (if one wishes to to so) by examining the symbol table in the .LST or .M51 files. If the definitions above were the first use of BSEG, then KBFLAG would be at bit address 00H (bit 0 of byte address 20H). If other bits were defined previously using BSEG, then the definitions above would follow the last bit defined.

DB (Define Byte)The format for the DB (define byte) directive is,

[label:]
DB expression [, expression] [...]

The DB directive initializes code memory with byte values. Since it is used to actually place data constants in code memory, a CODE segment must be active. The expression list is a series of one or more byte values (each of which may be an expression) separated by commas.

The DB directive permits character strings (enclosed in single quotes) longer than two characters as long as they are not part of an expression. Each character in the string is converted to the corresponding ASCII code. If a label is used, it is assigned the address of th first byte. For example, the following statements

	CSEG	AT	0100H	
SQUARES:	DB	0, 1, 4, 9,	, 16, 25	;SQUARES OF NUMBERS 0-5
MESSAGE:	DB	'Login:',	0	;NULL-TERMINATED CHARACTER STRING

When assembled, result in the following hexadecimal memory assignments for external code memory:

Address	Contents
0100	00
0101	01
0102	04
0103	09
0104	10
0105	19
0106	4C
0107	6F
0108	67
0109	69
010A	6E
010B	3A
010C	00

```
DW (Define Word) The format for the DW (define word) directive is [label:] DW expression [, expression] [...]
```

The DW directive is the same as the DB directive except two memory locations (16 bits) are assigned for each data item. For example, the statements

result in the following hexadecimal memory assignments:

Contents
02
00
00
41
12
34
00
02
42
43

Program Linkage

Program linkage directives allow the separately assembled modules (files) to communicate by permitting intermodule references and the naming of modules. In the following discussion, a "module" can be considered a "file." (In fact, a module may encompass more than one file.)

Public The format for the PUBLIC (public symbol) directive is

PUBLIC symbol [, symbol] [...]

The PUBLIC directive allows the list of specified symbols to known and used outside the currently assembled module. A symbol declared PUBLIC must be defined in the current module. Declaring it PUBLIC allows it to be referenced in another module. For example,

PUBLIC INCHAR, OUTCHR, INLINE, OUTSTR

Extrn The format for the EXTRN (external symbol) directive is

EXTRN segment type (symbol [, symbol] [...], ...)

The EXTRN directive lists symbols to be referenced in the current module that are defined in other modules. The list of external symbols must have a segment type associated with each symbol in the list. (The segment types are CODE, XDATA, DATA, IDATA, BIT, and NUMBER. NUMBER is a type-less symbol defined by EQU.) The segment type indicates the way a symbol may be used. The information is important at link-time to ensure symbols are used properly in different modules.

The PUBLIC and EXTRN directives work together. Consider the two files, MAIN.SRC and MESSAGES. SRC. The subroutines HELLO and GOOD_BYE are defined in the module MESSAGES but are made available to other modules using the PUBLIC directive. The subroutines are called in the module MAIN even though they are not defined there. The EXTRN directive declares that these symbols are defined in another module.

MAIN.SRC:

EXTRN CODE (HELLO, GOOD BYE)

CALL HELLO

CALL GOOD BYE

END

MESSAGES.SRC:

PUBLIC HELLO, GOOD BYE

. . .

HELLO: (begin subroutine)

RET

GOOD BYE: (begin subroutine)

RET
...
END

Neither MAIN.SRC nor MESSAGES.SRC is a complete program; they must be assembled separately and linked together to form an executable program. During linking, the external references are resolved with correct addresses inserted as the destination for the CALL instructions.

Name The format for the NAME directive is

NAME module name

All the usual rules for symbol names apply to module names. If a name is not provided, the module takes on the file name (without a drive or subdirectory specifier and without an extension). In the absence of any use of the NAME directive, a program will contain one module for each file. The concept of "modules," therefore, is somewhat cumbersome, at least for relatively small programming problems. Even programs of moderate size (encompassing, for example, several files complete with relocatable segments) needn't use the NAME directive and needn't pay any special attention to the concept of "modules." For this reason, it was mentioned in the definition that a module may be considered a "file," to simplify learning ASM51. However, for very large programs (several thousand lines of code, or more), it makes sense to partition the problem into modules, where, for example, each module may encompass several files containing routines having a common purpose.

Segment Selection Directives

When the assembler encounters a segment selection directive, it diverts the following code or data into the selected segment until another segment is selected by a segment selection directive. The directive may select a previously defined relocatable segment or optionally create and select absolute segments.

```
RSEG (Relocatable Segment) The format for the RSEG (relocatable segment) directive is RSEG segment name
```

Where "segment_name" is the name of a relocatable segment previously defined with the SEGMENT directive. RSEG is a "segment selection" directive that diverts subsequent code or data into the named segment until another segment selection directive is encountered.

Selecting Absolute Segments RSEG selects a relocatable segment. An "absolute" segment, on the other hand, is selected using one of the directives:

```
CSEG (AT address)
DSEG (AT address)
ISEG (AT address)
BSEG (AT address)
XSEG (AT address)
```

These directives select an absolute segment within the code, internal data, indirect internal data, bit, or external data address spaces, respectively. If an absolute address is provided (by indicating "AT address"), the assembler terminates the last absolute address segment, if any, of the specified segment type and creates a new absolute segment starting at that address. If an absolute address is not specified, the last absolute segment of the specified type is continuted. If no absolute segment of this type was previously selected and the absolute address is omitted, a new segment is created starting at location 0. Forward references are not allowed and start addresses must be absolute.

Each segment has its own location counter, which is always set to 0 initially. The default segment is an absolute code segment; therefore, the initial state of the assembler is location 0000H in the absolute code segment. When another segment is chosen for the first time, the location counter of the former segment retains the last active value. When that former segment is reselected, the location counter picks up at the last active value. The ORG directive may be used to change the location counter within the currently selected segment.

ASSEMBLER CONTROLS

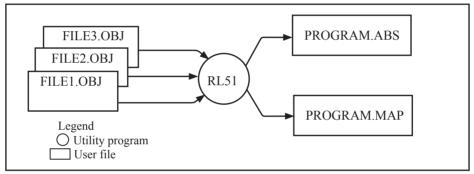
Assembler controls establish the format of the listing and object files by regulating the actions of ASM51. For the most part, assembler controls affect the look of the listing file, without having any affect on the program itself. They can be entered on the invocation line when a program is assembled, or they can be placed in the source file. Assembler controls appearing in the source file must be preceded with a dollor sign and must begin in column 1.

There are two categories of assembler controls: primary and general. Primary controls can be placed in the invocation line or at the beginning of the source program. Only other primary controls may precede a primary control. General controls may be placed anywhere in the source program.

LINKER OPERATION

In developing large application programs, it is common to divide tasks into subprograms or modules containing sections of code (usually subroutines) that can be written separately from the overall program. The term "modular programming" refers to this programming strategy. Generally, modules are relocatable, meaning they are not intended for a specific address in the code or data space. A linking and locating program is needed to combine the modules into one absolute object module that can be executed.

Intel's RL51 is a typical linker/locator. It processes a series of relocatable object modules as input and creates an executable machine language program (PROGRAM, perhaps) and a listing file containing a memory map and symbol table (PROGRAM.M51). This is illustrated in following figure.



Linker operation

As relocatable modules are combined, all values for external symbols are resolved with values inserted into the output file. The linker is invoked from the system prompt by

The input_list is a list of relocatable object modules (files) separated by commas. The output_list is the name of the output absolute object module. If none is supplied, it defaults to the name of the first input file without any suffix. The location controls set start addresses for the named segments.

For example, suppose three modules or files (MAIN.OBJ, MESSAGES.OBJ, and SUBROUTINES.OBJ) are to be combined into an executable program (EXAMPLE), and that these modules each contain two relocatable segments, one called EPROM of type CODE, and the other called ONCHIP of type DATA. Suppose further that the code segment is to be executable at address 4000H and the data segment is to reside starting at address 30H (in internal RAM). The following linker invocation could be used:

RS51 MAIN.OBJ, MESSAGES.OBJ, SUBROUTINES.OBJ TO EXAMPLE & CODE (EPROM (4000H) DATA (ONCHIP (30H))

Note that the ampersand character "&" is used as the line continuaton character.

If the program begins at the label START, and this is the first instruction in the MAIN module, then execution begins at address 4000H. If the MAIN module was not linked first, or if the label START is not at the beginning of MAIN, then the program's entry point can be determined by examining the symbol table in the listing file EXAMPLE.M51 created by RL51. By default, EXAMPLE.M51 will contain only the link map. If a symbol table is desired, then each source program must have used the SDEBUG control. The following table shows the assembler controls supported by ASM51.

Indicates that no expected Indicates that no listing file will be created NOPAGING P PAGEWIDTH(120) PAGEWIDTH(120) PAGEWIDTH(120) PAGEWIDTH(120) PAGEWIDTH(120) PAGEWIDTH(120) PAGEWIDTH(120) PAGEWIDTH(120) PAGEWIDTH(120) PAGING	Assembler controls supported by ASM51						
DATE (date) P DATE() DA Place string in header (9 char. max.) DEBUG P NODEBUG DB Outputs debug symbol information to object file EJECT G not applicable E Continue listing on next page ERRORPRINT P NOERRORPRINT EP Designates a file to receive error messages in addition to t listing file (defauts to console) NOERRORPRINT P NOERRORPRINT NOED Designates that error messages will be printed in listing for only GEN G GENONLY GO List only the fully expanded source as if all lines generat by a macro call were already in the source file GENONLY G GENONLY NOGE List only the original source text in the listing file INCLUED(file) G not applicable IC Designates a file to be included as part of the program LIST G LIST LI Print subsequent lines of source code in listing file MACRO P MACRO(50) MR Evaluate and expand all macro calls. Allocate percentage free memory for macro processing NOMACRO P MACRO(50) NOMR Do not evalutate macro calls. Allocate percentage free memory for macro processing NOMOD51 P MOD51 NOMO Do not recognize the 8051-specific predefined special function registers NOMOD51 P MOD51 NOMO Do not recognize the 8051-specific predefined special function registers OBJECT(file) P OBJECT(source.OBJ) OJ Designates that listing file be broken into pages and ea will have a header NOPAGING P PAGING NOPI Designates that listing file be broken into pages and ea will have a header NOPAGING P PAGING NOPI Designates that listing file will contain no page breaks PAGELENGTH P PAGELENGT(60) PL Sets maximum number of characters in each line of listing file file frange = 72 to 132) PRINT(file) P PAGENGTH(120) PW Set maximum number of characters in each line of listing file file frange = 72 to 132) PRINT(file) P PAGELENGT(60) RB Indicates one or more banks used in program module (true). NOREGISTER- BANK G NORB Indicates one or more banks used in program module (true). NOREGISTER- P REGISTERBANK(0) NORB Indicates that no register banks are used BANK SYMBOLS P SYMBOLS SB Creates a formatted table of all symbols used							
DEBUG P NODEBUG DB Outputs debug symbol information to object file					1 1 =		
ERORPRINT P NOERRORPRINT EP Designates a file to receive error messages in addition to to fishing file (defaust to console) NOERRORPRINT P NOERRORPRINT DEP Designates that error messages will be printed in listing for only GEN G GENONLY GO List only the fully expanded source as if all lines generate by a macro call were already in the source file GENONLY GO List only the fully expanded source as if all lines generate by a macro call were already in the source file GENONLY GO List only the fully expanded source as if all lines generate by a macro call were already in the source file GENONLY GO List only the original source text in the listing file INCLUED(file) G not applicable IC Designates a file to be included as part of the program LIST G LIST LI Print subsequent lines of source code in listing file NOLIST G LIST NOLI Do not print subsequent lines of source code in listing file MACRO (men precent) MACRO P MACRO(50) MR Evaluate and expand all macro calls. Allocate percentage free memory for macro processing NOMACRO P MOD51 MO Recognize the 8051-specific predefined special function registers NOMOD51 P MOD51 NOMO Do not recognize the 8051-specific predefined special function registers NOMOD51 P MOD51 NOMO Do not recognize the 8051-specific predefined special function registers NOMOD51 P OBJECT(source.OBJ) OJ Designates that no object file will be created PAGING P PAGING PI Designates that insting file be broken into pages and ea will have a header NOPAGING P PAGING NOPI Designates that listing file will contain no page breaks will have a header NOPAGING P PAGELENGT(60) PL Sets maximum number of characters in each line of listing file (range = 72 to 132) PRINT(file) P PRINT(source.LST) PR Designates that no inting file will be created SAVE G not applicable SA Stores current control settings from SAVE stack RESTORE G not applicable RS Restores control settings from SAVE stack RESTORE G not applicable RS Restores control settings from SAVE stack REGISTERBANK (0) RB Indicates that no register banks are use							
RERORPRINT (file) P NOERRORPRINT (file) NOERRORPRINT (file) NOERRORPRINT P NOERRORPRINT NOEP Designates a file to receive error messages in addition to t (isting file (defauts to console)							
Ilisting file (defauts to console) NOERRORPRINT P NOERRORPRINT NOEP Designates that error messages will be printed in listing for only							
NOERRORPRINT P NOERRORPRINT NOEP Designates that error messages will be printed in listing for only	1	P	NOERRORPRINT	EP			
GEN G GENONLY GO List only the fully expanded source as if all lines generat by a macro call were already in the source file GENONLY G GENONLY NOGE List only the original source text in the listing file INCLUED(file) G not applicable IC Designates a file to be included as part of the program LIST G LIST LI Print subsequent lines of source code in listing file NOLIST G LIST NOLI Do not print subsequent lines of source code in listing file MACRO P MACRO(50) MR Evaluate and expand all macro calls. Allocate percentage free memory for macro processing NOMACRO P MACRO(50) NOMR Do not evaluate macro calls. Allocate percentage free memory for macro processing NOMACRO P MOD51 P MOD51 MO Recognize the 8051-specific predefined specific free free memory for macro processing NOMOD51 P MOD51 NOMO Do not recognize the 8051-specific predefined specific free free free free free free free memory for macro processing NOMOD51 P MOD51 NOMO Do not recognize the 8051-specific predefined specific free free free free free free free fre	_ ` /		NOEDBODDDA	MOED			
By a macro call were already in the source file	NOERRORPRINT	Р	NOERRORPRINT	NOEP	only		
INCLUED(file) G	GEN	G	GENONLY	GO			
LIST G LIST LI Print subsequent lines of source code in listing file NOLIST G LIST NOLI Do not print subsequent lines of source code in listing file MACRO P MACRO(50) MR Evaluate and expand all macro calls. Allocate percentage free memory for macro processing NOMACRO P MACRO(50) NOMR Do not evalutate macro calls MOD51 P MOD51 MO Recognize the 8051-specific predefined special function registers NOMOD51 P MOD51 NOMO Do not recognize the 8051-specific predefined special function registers OBJECT(file) P OBJECT(source.OBJ) OJ Designates file to receive object code NOOBJECT P OBJECT(source.OBJ) NOOJ Designates that listing file be broken into pages and ea will have a header NOPAGING P PAGING NOPI Designates that listing file will contain no page breaks NOPAGELENGTH P PAGELENGT(60) PL Sets maximum number of characters in each line of listing file (range = 72 to 132) PRINT(file) P PRINT(source.LST) PR Designates file to receive source listing NOPRINT P PRINT(source.LST) NOPR Designates file to receive source listing file will be created SAVE G not applicable RS Restores control settings from SAVE stack RESTORE G not applicable RS Restores control settings from SAVE stack REGISTERBANK P REGISTERBANK(0) RB Indicates one or more banks used in program module (rt.) NOREGISTER-BANK P REGISTERBANK(0) NORB Indicates that no register banks are used NOSYMBOLS P SYMBOLS SB Creates a formatted table of all symbols used in program NOSYMBOLS P SYMBOLS NOSB Designates that no symbol table is created Characters)	GENONLY	G	GENONLY	NOGE	List only the original source text in the listing file		
NOLIST G LIST NOLI Do not print subsequent lines of source code in lisiting file MACRO P MACRO(50) MR Evaluate and expand all macro calls. Allocate percentage free memory for macro processing NOMACRO P MACRO(50) NOMR Do not evaluate macro calls MOD51 MO Recognize the 8051-specific predefined special function registers NOMOD51 P MOD51 NOMO Do not recognize the 8051-specific predefined special function registers NOMOD51 P OBJECT(source.OBJ) OJ Do not recognize the 8051-specific predefined special function registers OBJECT(file) P OBJECT(source.OBJ) OJ Designates file to receive object code NOOBJECT P OBJECT(source.OBJ) NOOJ Designates that no object file will be created Designates that listing file be broken into pages and ea will have a header NOPAGING P PAGING NOPI Designates that listing file will contain no page breaks PAGELENGTH P PAGELENGT(60) PL Sets maximum number of lines in each page of listing f (range=10 to 65536) PRINT(file) P PAGEWIDTH(120) PW Set maximum number of characters in each line of listing file (range = 72 to 132) PRINT(file) P PRINT(source.LST) PR Designates file to receive source listing NOPRINT P PRINT(source.LST) NOPR Designates file to receive source listing NOPRINT P PRINT(source.LST) NOPR Designates file to receive source listing REGISTERBANK REGISTERBANK P REGISTERBANK(0) RB Indicates that no listing file will be created REGISTERBANK P REGISTERBANK(0) RB Indicates one or more banks used in program module RS SYMBOLS P SYMBOLS SB Creates a formatted table of all symbols used in program NOSYMBOLS P SYMBOLS NOSB Designates that no symbol table is created Characters) Characters Charact	INCLUED(file)	G	not applicable	IC	Designates a file to be included as part of the program		
MACRO (men_precent) P (men_precent) MACRO(50) MR Evaluate and expand all macro calls. Allocate percentage free memory for macro processing NOMACRO P MACRO(50) NOMR Do not evalutate macro calls MOD51 P MOD51 MO Recognize the 8051-specific predefined special function registers NOMOD51 P MOD51 NOMO Do not recognize the 8051-specific predefined special function registers OBJECT(file) P OBJECT(source.OBJ) OJ Designates file to receive object code NOOBJECT P OBJECT(source.OBJ) NOOJ Designates that no object file will be created NOPAGING P PAGING PI Designates that listing file will contain no page breaks PAGELENGTH P PAGELENGT(60) PL Sets maximun number of lines in each page of listing file (range=10 to 65536) PAGE WIDTH (N) P PAGEWIDTH(120) PW Set maximun number of characters in each line of listifile (range = 72 to 132) PRINT(file) P PRINT(source.LST) PR Designates that no listing file will be created SAVE G not applicable <td< td=""><td>LIST</td><td>G</td><td>LIST</td><td>LI</td><td>Print subsequent lines of source code in listing file</td></td<>	LIST	G	LIST	LI	Print subsequent lines of source code in listing file		
Indicates that no expected Indicates that no listing file will be created NOPAGING P PAGEWIDTH(120) PAGEWIDTH(120) PAGEWIDTH(120) PAGEWIDTH(120) PAGEWIDTH(120) PAGEWIDTH(120) PAGEWIDTH(120) PAGEWIDTH(120) PAGEWIDTH(120) PAGING	NOLIST	G	LIST	NOLI	Do not print subsequent lines of source code in lisiting file		
NOMACRO P MACRO(50) NOMR Do not evalutate macro calls	MACRO	P	MACRO(50)	MR	Evaluate and expand all macro calls. Allocate percentage of		
MOD51	(men_precent)				free memory for macro processing		
NOMOD51	NOMACRO	P	MACRO(50)	NOMR			
Gunction registers	MOD51	Р	MOD51	MO			
OBJECT(file) P OBJECT(source.OBJ) OJ Designates file to receive object code	NOMOD51	Р	MOD51	NOMO	Do not recognize the 8051-specific predefined special function registers		
NOOBJECT P OBJECT(source.OBJ) NOOJ Designates that no object file will be created	OBJECT(file)	Р	OBJECT(source OBJ)	OI			
PAGING P PAGING PI Designates that listing file be broken into pages and ea will have a header NOPAGING P PAGING NOPI Designates that listing file will contain no page breaks PAGELENGTH P PAGELENGT(60) PL Sets maximun number of lines in each page of listing file (range=10 to 65536) PAGE WIDTH (N) P PAGEWIDTH(120) PW Set maximum number of characters in each line of listing file (range = 72 to 132) PRINT(file) P PRINT(source.LST) PR Designates file to receive source listing NOPRINT P PRINT(source.LST) NOPR Designates that no listing file will be created SAVE G not applicable SA Stores current control settings from SAVE stack RESTORE G not applicable RS Restores control settings from SAVE stack REGISTERBANK (rb,) NOREGISTER- BANK P REGISTERBANK(0) RB Indicates one or more banks used in program module NOREGISTER- BANK SYMBOLS P SYMBOLS SB Creates a formatted table of all symbols used in program NOSYMBOLS P SYMBOLS NOSB Designates that no symbol table is created TITLE(string) G TITLE() TT Places a string in all subsequent page headers (max.60 characters)							
NOPAGING					Designates that listing file be broken into pages and each		
PAGELENGTH (N) PAGELENGT(60) PL Sets maximun number of lines in each page of listing f (range=10 to 65536) PAGE WIDTH (N) PAGEWIDTH(120) PW Set maximum number of characters in each line of listing file (range = 72 to 132) PRINT(file) P PRINT(source.LST) PR Designates file to receive source listing NOPRINT P PRINT(source.LST) NOPR Designates that no listing file will be created SAVE G not applicable SA Stores current control settings from SAVE stack RESTORE G REGISTERBANK (rb,) NOREGISTER- BANK SYMBOLS P REGISTERBANK(0) RB Indicates one or more banks used in program module NORB NORBOLS P SYMBOLS SB Creates a formatted table of all symbols used in program NOSYMBOLS P SYMBOLS NOSB Designates that no symbol table is created TITLE(string) G TITLE() TT Places a string in all subsequent page headers (max.60 characters)	NOPAGING	P	PAGING	NOPI			
Comparison of the content of the c							
File (range = 72 to 132) PRINT(file)	I .		111022221(01(00)	1.2			
PRINT(file)	PAGE WIDTH (N)	Р	PAGEWIDTH(120)	PW	Set maximum number of characters in each line of listing file (range = 72 to 132)		
NOPRINT	PRINT(file)	P	PRINT(source.LST)	PR			
SAVE G not applicable SA Stores current control settings from SAVE stack RESTORE G not applicable RS Restores control settings from SAVE stack REGISTERBANK (Ph.,) REGISTERBANK (Ph.,) NOREGISTER- BANK P REGISTERBANK(0) NORB Indicates that no register banks are used SYMBOLS P SYMBOLS SB Creates a formatted table of all symbols used in program NOSYMBOLS P SYMBOLS NOSB Designates that no symbol table is created TITLE(string) G TITLE() TT Places a string in all subsequent page headers (max.60 characters)		P					
RESTORE G not applicable RS Restores control settings from SAVE stack REGISTERBANK (rb,) NOREGISTER- BANK SYMBOLS P SYMBOLS SB Creates a formatted table of all symbols used in program NOSYMBOLS P SYMBOLS NOSB Designates that no symbol table is created TITLE(string) G TITLE() TT Places a string in all subsequent page headers (max.60 characters)	SAVE	G	` `		_		
REGISTERBANK (rb,) NOREGISTER-BANK P REGISTERBANK(0) RB Indicates one or more banks used in program module NOREGISTER-BANK P REGISTERBANK(0) NORB Indicates that no register banks are used SYMBOLS P SYMBOLS SB Creates a formatted table of all symbols used in program NOSYMBOLS P SYMBOLS NOSB Designates that no symbol table is created TITLE(string) G TITLE() TT Places a string in all subsequent page headers (max.60 characters)							
(rb,) NOREGISTER-BANK(0) NORB Indicates that no register banks are used NOREGISTER-BANK P REGISTERBANK(0) NORB Indicates that no register banks are used SYMBOLS P SYMBOLS SB Creates a formatted table of all symbols used in program NOSYMBOLS P SYMBOLS NOSB Designates that no symbol table is created TITLE(string) G TITLE() TT Places a string in all subsequent page headers (max.60 characters)							
BANK SYMBOLS P SYMBOLS SB Creates a formatted table of all symbols used in program NOSYMBOLS P SYMBOLS NOSB Designates that no symbol table is created TITLE(string) G TITLE() TT Places a string in all subsequent page headers (max.60 characters)					r · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		
NOSYMBOLS P SYMBOLS NOSB Designates that no symbol table is created TITLE(string) G TITLE() TT Places a string in all subsequent page headers (max.60 characters)		Р	REGISTERBANK(0)	NORB	Indicates that no register banks are used		
NOSYMBOLS P SYMBOLS NOSB Designates that no symbol table is created TITLE(string) G TITLE() TT Places a string in all subsequent page headers (max.60 characters)	SYMBOLS	P	SYMBOLS	SB	Creates a formatted table of all symbols used in program		
TITLE(string) G TITLE() TT Places a string in all subsequent page headers (max.60 characters)	NOSYMBOLS	P	SYMBOLS	NOSB			
	TITLE(string)	G	TITLE()	TT	Places a string in all subsequent page headers (max.60		
(path)	WORKFILES (path)	P	same as source	WF	/		
XREF P NOXREF XR Creates a cross reference listing of all symbols used in program		P	NOXREF	XR			
NOXREF P NOXREF NOXR Designates that no cross reference list is created	NOXREF	P	NOXREF	NOXR			

MACROS

The macro processing facility (MPL) of ASM51 is a "string replacement" facility. Macros allow frequently used sections of code be defined once using a simple mnemonic and used anywhere in the program by inserting the mnemonic. Programming using macros is a powerful extension of the techniques described thus far. Macros can be defined anywhere in a source program and subsequently used like any other instruction. The syntax for macro definition is

```
%*DEFINE (call pattern) (macro body)
```

Once defined, the call pattern is like a mnemonic; it may be used like any assembly language instruction by placing it in the mnemonic field of a program. Macros are made distinct from "real" instructions by preceding them with a percent sign, "%". When the source program is assembled, everything within the macro-body, on a character-by-character basis, is substituted for the call-pattern. The mystique of macros is largely unfounded. They provide a simple means for replacing cumbersome instruction patterns with primitive, easy-to-remember mnemonics. The substitution, we reiterate, is on a character-by-character basis—nothing more, nothing less.

For example, if the following macro definition appears at the beginning of a source file,

```
%*DEFINE (PUSH_DPTR)
(PUSH DPH
PUSH DPL
)
```

then the statement

%PUSH DPTR

will appear in the .LST file as

PUSH DPH PUSH DPL

The example above is a typical macro. Since the 8051 stack instructions operate only on direct addresses, pushing the data pointer requires two PUSH instructions. A similar macro can be created to POP the data pointer.

There are several distinct advantages in using macros:

A source program using macros is more readable, since the macro mnemonic is generally more indicative of the intended operation than the equivalent assembler instructions.

The source program is shorter and requires less typing.

Using macros reduces bugs

Using macros frees the programmer from dealing with low-level details.

The last two points above are related. Once a macro is written and debugged, it is used freely without the worry of bugs. In the PUSH_DPTR example above, if PUSH and POP instructions are used rather than push and pop macros, the programmer may inadvertently reverse the order of the pushes or pops. (Was it the high-byte or low-byte that was pushed first?) This would create a bug. Using macros, however, the details are worked out once—when the macro is written—and the macro is used freely thereafter, without the worry of bugs.

Since the replacement is on a character-by-character basis, the macro definition should be carefully constructed with carriage returns, tabs, ect., to ensure proper alignment of the macro statements with the rest of the assembly language program. Some trial and error is required.

There are advanced features of ASM51's macro-processing facility that allow for parameter passing, local labels, repeat operations, assembly flow control, and so on. These are discussed below.

Parameter Passing

A macro with parameters passed from the main program has the following modified format:

```
%*DEFINE (macro name (parameter list)) (macro body)
```

For example, if the following macro is defined,

```
%*DEFINE (CMPA# (VALUE))
(CJNE A, #%VALUE, $ + 3
```

then the macro call

```
%CMPA# (20H)
```

will expand to the following instruction in the .LST file:

```
CJNE A, \#20H, \$ + 3
```

Although the 8051 does not have a "compare accumulator" instruction, one is easily created using the CJNE instruction with "\$+3" (the next instruction) as the destination for the conditional jump. The CMPA# mnemonic may be easier to remember for many programmers. Besides, use of the macro unburdens the programmer from remembering notational details, such as "\$+3."

Let's develop another example. It would be nice if the 8051 had instructions such as

```
JUMP IF ACCUMULATOR GREATER THAN X
JUMP IF ACCUMULATOR GREATER THAN OR EQUAL TO X
JUMP IF ACCUMULATOR LESS THAN X
JUMP IF ACCUMULATOR LESS THAN OR EQUAL TO X
```

but it does not. These operations can be created using CJNE followed by JC or JNC, but the details are tricky. Suppose, for example, it is desired to jump to the label GREATER_THAN if the accumulator contains an ASCII code greater than "Z" (5AH). The following instruction sequence would work:

```
CJNE A, #5BH, $÷3
JNC GREATER_THAN
```

The CJNE instruction subtracts 5BH (i.e., "Z" + 1) from the content of A and sets or clears the carry flag accordingly. CJNE leaves C=1 for accumulator values 00H up to and including 5AH. (Note: 5AH-5BH<0, therefore C=1; but 5BH-5BH=0, therefore C=0.) Jumping to GREATER_THAN on the condition "not carry" correctly jumps for accumulator values 5BH, 5CH, 5DH, and so on, up to FFH. Once details such as these are worked out, they can be simplified by inventing an appropriate mnemonic, defining a macro, and using the macro instead of

the corresponding instruction sequence. Here's the definition for a "jump if greater than" macro:

```
%*DEFINE (JGT (VALUE, LABEL))
(CJNE A, #%VALUE+1, $+3 ;JGT
JNC %LABEL
)
```

To test if the accumulator contains an ASCII code greater than "Z," as just discussed, the macro would be called as

```
%JGT ('Z', GREATER THAN)
```

ASM51 would expand this into

```
CJNE A, #5BH, $+3 ;JGT JNC GREATER THAN
```

The JGT macro is an excellent example of a relevant and powerful use of macros. By using macros, the programmer benefits by using a meaningful mnemonic and avoiding messy and potentially bug-ridden details.

Local Labels

Local labels may be used within a macro using the following format:

```
%*DEFINE (macro_name [(parameter_list)])

[LOCAL list of local labels] (macro body)
```

For example, the following macro definition

would be called as

```
%DEC DPTR
```

and would be expanded by ASM51 into

```
DEC DPL ;DECREMENT DATA POINTER MOV A, DPL CJNE A, #0FFH, SKIP00 DEC DPH
```

SKIP00:

Note that a local label generally will not conflict with the same label used elsewhere in the source program, since ASM51 appends a numeric code to the local label when the macro is expanded. Furthermore, the next use of the same local label receives the next numeric code, and so on.

The macro above has a potential "side effect." The accumulator is used as a temporary holding place for DPL. If the macro is used within a section of code that uses A for another purpose, the value in A would be lost. This side effect probably represents a bug in the program. The macro definition could guard against this by saving A on the stack. Here's an alternate definition for the DEC_DPTR macro:

```
%*DEFINE
              (DEC DPTR)
                            LOCAL SKIP
                (PUSHACC
               DEC
                     DPL.
                                           :DECREMENT DATA POINTER
               MOV
                     A.
                             DPL
               CJNE
                             #0FFH, %SKIP
                     A,
               DEC
                     DPH
%SKIP:
               POP
                      ACC
               )
```

Repeat Operations

```
This is one of several built-in (predefined) macros. The format is
```

```
%REPEAT (expression) (text)
```

For example, to fill a block of memory with 100 NOP instructions,

```
%REPEAT (100)
(NOP
```

Control Flow Operations

The conditional assembly of section of code is provided by ASM51's control flow macro definition. The format is

```
%IF (expression) THEN (balanced_text) [ELSE (balanced text)] FI
```

For example,

```
INTRENAL EQU 1 ;1 = 8051 SERIAL I/O DRIVERS ;0 = 8251 SERIAL I/O DRIVERS

WIF (INTERNAL) THEN
(INCHAR: ;8051 DRIVERS

OUTCHR: ;8251 DRIVERS

OUTCHR: ;8251 DRIVERS
```

In this example, the symbol INTERNAL is given the value 1 to select I/O subroutines for the 8051's serial port, or the value 0 to select I/O subroutines for an external UART, in this case the 8251. The IF macro causes ASM51 to assemble one set of drivers and skip over the other. Elsewhere in the program, the INCHAR and OUTCHR subroutines are used without consideration for the particular hardware configuration. As long as the program as assembled with the correct value for INTERNAL, the correct subroutine is executed.

附录B: C语言编程

ADVANTAGES AND DISADVANTAGES OF 8051 C

The advantages of programming the 8051 in C as compared to assembly are:

- Offers all the benefits of high-level, structured programming languages such as C, including the ease of writing subroutines
- Often relieves the programmer of the hardware details that the complier handles on behalf of the programmer
- Easier to write, especially for large and complex programs
- Produces more readable program source codes

Nevertheless, 8051 C, being very similar to the conventional C language, also suffers from the following disadvantages:

- Processes the disadvantages of high-level, structured programming languages.
- Generally generates larger machine codes
- Programmer has less control and less ability to directly interact with hardware

To compare between 8051 C and assembly language, consider the solutions to the Example—Write a program using Timer 0 to create a 1KHz square wave on P1.0.

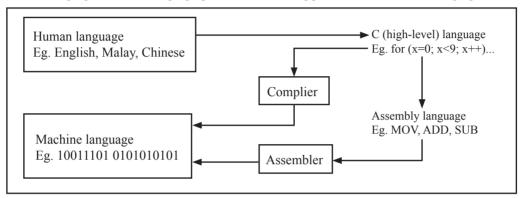
A solution written below in 8051 C language:

A solution written below in assembly language:

```
ORG
                 8100H
        MOV
                 TMOD, #01H
                                           :16-bit timer mode
LOOP:
        MOV
                 TH0.
                          #0FEH
                                           ;-500 (high byte)
        MOV
                 TL0,
                         #0CH
                                           :-500 (low byte)
        SETB
                                           :start timer
                 TR0
WAIT:
        JNB
                 TF0.
                         WAIT
                                           ;wait for overflow
        CLR
                 TR0
                                           :stop timer
        CLR
                 TF0
                                           ;clear timer overflow flag
        CPL
                 P1.0
                                           ;toggle port bit
        SJMP
                 LOOP
                                           ;repeat
        END
```

Notice that both the assembly and C language solutions for the above example require almost the same number of lines. However, the difference lies in the readability of these programs. The C version seems more human than assembly, and is hence more readable. This often helps facilitate the human programmer's efforts to write even very complex programs. The assembly language version is more closely related to the machine code, and though less readable, often results in more compact machine code. As with this example, the resultant machine code from the assembly version takes 83 bytes while that of the C version requires 149 bytes, an increase of 79.5%!

The human programmer's choice of either high-level C language or assembly language for talking to the 8051, whose language is machine language, presents an interesting picture, as shown in following figure.



Conversion between human, high-level, assembly, and machine language

8051 C COMPILERS

We saw in the above figure that a complier is needed to convert programs written in 8051 C language into machine language, just as an assembler is needed in the case of programs written in assembly language. A complier basically acts just like an assembler, except that it is more complex since the difference between C and machine language is far greater than that between assembly and machine language. Hence the complier faces a greater task to bridge that difference.

Currently, there exist various 8051 C complier, which offer almost similar functions. All our examples and programs have been compiled and tested with Keil's μ Vision 2 IDE by Keil Software, an integrated 8051 program development environment that includes its C51 cross compiler for C. A cross compiler is a compiler that normally runs on a platform such as IBM compatible PCs but is meant to compile programs into codes to be run on other platforms such as the 8051.

DATA TYPES

8051 C is very much like the conventional C language, except that several extensions and adaptations have been made to make it suitable for the 8051 programming environment. The first concern for the 8051 C programmer is the data types. Recall that a data type is something we use to store data. Readers will be familiar with the basic C data types such as int, char, and float, which are used to create variables to store integers, characters, or floating-points. In 8051 C, all the basic C data types are supported, plus a few additional data types meant to be used specifically with the 8051.

The following table gives a list of the common data types used in 8051 C. The ones in bold are the specific 8051 extensions. The data type **bit** can be used to declare variables that reside in the 8051's bit-addressable locations (namely byte locations 20H to 2FH or bit locations 00H to 7FH). Obviously, these bit variables can only store bit values of either 0 or 1. As an example, the following C statement:

bit flag = 0;

declares a bit variable called flag and initializes it to 0.

Data ty	ypes i	ısed	in	8051	C	language
---------	--------	------	----	------	---	----------

Data Type	Bits	Bytes	Value Range
bit	1		0 to 1
signed char	8	1	-128 to +127
unsigned char	8	1	0 to 255
enum	16	2	-32768 to +32767
signed short	16	2	-32768 to +32767
unsigned short	16	2	0 to 65535
signed int	16	2	-32768 to +32767
unsigned int	16	2	0 to 65535
signed long	32	4	-2,147,483,648 to +2,147,483,647
unsigned long	32	4	0 to 4,294,967,295
float	32	4	±1.175494E-38 to ±3.402823E+38
sbit	1		0 to 1
sfr	8	1	0 to 255
sfr16	16	2	0 to 65535

The data type **sbit** is somewhat similar to the bit data type, except that it is normally used to declare 1-bit variables that reside in special function registes (SFRs). For example:

sbit
$$P = 0xD0$$
;

declares the **sbit** variable P and specifies that it refers to bit address D0H, which is really the LSB of the PSW SFR. Notice the difference here in the usage of the assignment ("=") operator. In the context of **sbit** declarations, it indicates what address the **sbit** variable resides in, while in **bit** declarations, it is used to specify the initial value of the **bit** variable.

Besides directly assigning a bit address to an **sbit** variable, we could also use a previously defined **sfr** variable as the base address and assign our **sbit** variable to refer to a certain bit within that **sfr**. For example:

sfr
$$PSW = 0xD0$$
;
sbit $P = PSW^0$;

This declares an **sfr** variable called PSW that refers to the byte address D0H and then uses it as the base address to refer to its LSB (bit 0). This is then assigned to an **sbit** variable, P. For this purpose, the carat symbol (^) is used to specify bit position 0 of the PSW.

A third alternative uses a constant byte address as the base address within which a certain bit is referred. As an illustration, the previous two statements can be replaced with the following:

sbit
$$P = 0xD0 \land 0$$
;

Meanwhile, the **sfr** data type is used to declare byte (8-bit) variables that are associated with SFRs. The statement:

sfr IE =
$$0xA8$$
;

declares an **sfr** variable IE that resides at byte address A8H. Recall that this address is where the Interrupt Enable (IE) SFR is located; therefore, the sfr data type is just a means to enable us to assign names for SFRs so that it is easier to remember.

The **sfr16** data type is very similar to **sfr** but, while the **sfr** data type is used for 8-bit SFRs, **sfr16** is used for 16-bit SFRs. For example, the following statement:

sfr16 DPTR =
$$0x82$$
;

declares a 16-bit variable DPTR whose lower-byte address is at 82H. Checking through the 8051 architecture, we find that this is the address of the DPL SFR, so again, the **sfr16** data type makes it easier for us to refer to the SFRs by name rather than address. There's just one thing left to mention. When declaring **sbit**, **sfr**, or **sfr16** variables, remember to do so outside main, otherwise you will get an error.

In actual fact though, all the SFRs in the 8051, including the individual flag, status, and control bits in the bit-addressable SFRs have already been declared in an include file, called reg51.h, which comes packaged with most 8051 C compilers. By using reg51.h, we can refer for instance to the interrupt enable register as simply IE rather than having to specify the address A8H, and to the data pointer as DPTR rather than 82H. All this makes 8051 C programs more human-readable and manageable. The contents of reg51.h are listed below.

/*_____

REG51.H Header file for generic 8051 microcontroller.

					*/
/* BYTI	E Register	*/	sbit	IE1	= 0x8B;
sfr	P0	= 0x80;	sbit	IT1	= 0x8A;
sfr	P1	= 0x90;	sbit	IE0	= 0x89;
sfr	P2	= 0xA0;	sbit	IT0	= 0x88;
sfr	P3	= 0xB0;	/* IE */		
sfr	PSW	= 0 xD0;	sbit	EA	= 0xAF;
sfr	ACC	= 0xE0;	sbit	ES	= 0xAC;
sfr	В	= 0xF0;	sbit	ET1	= 0xAB;
sfr	SP	= 0x81;	sbit	EX1	= 0xAA;
sfr	DPL	= 0x82;	sbit	ET0	= 0xA9;
sfr	DPH	= 0x83;	sbit	EX0	= 0xA8;
sfr	PCON	= 0x87;	/* IP */		
sfr	TCON	= 0x88;	sbit	PS	= 0xBC;
sfr	TMOD	= 0x89;	sbit	PT1	= 0xBB;
sfr	TL0	= 0x8A;	sbit	PX1	= 0xBA;
sfr	TL1	= 0x8B;	sbit	PT0	= 0xB9;
sfr	TH0	= 0x8C;	sbit	PX0	= 0xB8;
sfr	TH1	= 0x8D;	/* P3 */		
sfr	IE	= 0xA8;	sbit	RD	= 0xB7;
sfr	IP	= 0xB8;	sbit	WR	= 0xB6;
sfr	SCON	= 0x98;	sbit	T1	= 0xB5;
sfr	SBUF	= 0x99;	sbit	T0	= 0xB4;
/* BIT R	Legister */		sbit	INT1	= 0xB3;
/* PSW	*/		sbit	INT0	= 0xB2;
sbit	CY	= 0xD7;	sbit	TXD	= 0xB1;
sbit	AC	= 0xD6;	sbit	RXD	= 0xB0;
sbit	F0	= 0xD5;	/* SCO	V */	
sbit	RS1	= 0xD4;	sbit	SM0	= 0x9F;
sbit	RS0	= 0xD3;	sbit	SM1	= 0x9E;
sbit	OV	= 0xD2;	sbit	SM2	= 0x9D;
sbit	P	= 0xD0;	sbit	REN	= 0x9C;
/* TCON	J */		sbit	TB8	= 0x9B;
sbit	TF1	= 0x8F;	sbit	RB8	= 0x9A;
sbit	TR1	= 0x8E;	sbit	TI	= 0x99;
sbit	TF0	= 0x8D;	sbit	RI	= 0x98;
sbit	TR0	= 0x8C;			

MEMORY TYPES AND MODELS

The 8051 has various types of memory space, including internal and external code and data memory. When declaring variables, it is hence reasonable to wonder in which type of memory those variables would reside. For this purpose, several memory type specifiers are available for use, as shown in following table.

Memory types used in 8051 C language		
Memory Type	Description (Size)	
code	Code memory (64 Kbytes)	
data	Directly addressable internal data memory (128 bytes)	
idata	Indirectly addressable internal data memory (256 bytes	
bdata	Bit-addressable internal data memory (16 bytes)	
xdata	External data memory (64 Kbytes)	
pdata	Paged external data memory (256 bytes)	

The first memory type specifier given in above table is **code**. This is used to specify that a variable is to reside in code memory, which has a range of up to 64 Kbytes. For example:

```
char code errormsg[] = "An error occurred";
```

declares a char array called errormsg that resides in code memory.

If you want to put a variable into data memory, then use either of the remaining five data memory specifiers in above table. Though the choice rests on you, bear in mind that each type of data memory affect the speed of access and the size of available data memory. For instance, consider the following declarations:

```
signed int data num1;
bit bdata numbit;
unsigned int xdata num2;
```

The first statement creates a signed int variable num1 that resides in inernal data memory (00H to 7FH). The next line declares a bit variable numbit that is to reside in the bit-addressable memory locations (byte addresses 20H to 2FH), also known as bdata. Finally, the last line declares an unsigned int variable called num2 that resides in external data memory, xdata. Having a variable located in the directly addressable internal data memory speeds up access considerably; hence, for programs that are time-critical, the variables should be of type data. For other variants such as 8052 with internal data memory up to 256 bytes, the idata specifier may be used. Note however that this is slower than data since it must use indirect addressing. Meanwhile, if you would rather have your variables reside in external memory, you have the choice of declaring them as pdata or xdata. A variable declared to be in pdata resides in the first 256 bytes (a page) of external memory, while if more storage is required, xdata should be used, which allows for accessing up to 64 Kbytes of external data memory.

What if when declaring a variable you forget to explicitly specify what type of memory it should reside in, or you wish that all variables are assigned a default memory type without having to specify them one by one? In this case, we make use of **memory models**. The following table lists the various memory models that you can use.

Memory models used in 8051 C language		
Memory Model	Description	
Small	Variables default to the internal data memory (data)	
Compact	Variables default to the first 256 bytes of external data memory (pdata)	
Large	Variables default to external data memory (xdata)	

A program is explicitly selected to be in a certain memory model by using the C directive, #pragma. Otherwise, the default memory model is **small**. It is recommended that programs use the small memory model as it allows for the fastest possible access by defaulting all variables to reside in internal data memory.

The **compact** memory model causes all variables to default to the first page of external data memory while the **large** memory model causes all variables to default to the full external data memory range of up to 64 Kbytes.

ARRAYS

Often, a group of variables used to store data of the same type need to be grouped together for better readability. For example, the ASCII table for decimal digits would be as shown below.

ASCII table for decimal digits			
Decimal Digit	ASCII Code In Hex		
0	30H		
1	31H		
2	32H		
3	33Н		
4	34H		
5	35H		
6	36H		
7	37H		
8	38H		
9	39Н		

To store such a table in an 8051 C program, an array could be used. An array is a group of variables of the same data type, all of which could be accessed by using the name of the arrary along with an appropriate index.

The array to store the decimal ASCII table is:

```
int table [10] = {0x30, 0x31, 0x32, 0x33, 0x34, 0x35, 0x36, 0x37, 0x38, 0x39};
```

Notice that all the elements of an array are separated by commas. To access an individul element, an index starting from 0 is used. For instance, table[0] refers to the first element while table[9] refers to the last element in this ASCII table.

STRUCTURES

Sometime it is also desired that variables of different data types but which are related to each other in some way be grouped together. For example, the name, age, and date of birth of a person would be stored in different types of variables, but all refer to the person's personal details. In such a case, a structure can be declared. A structure is a group of related variables that could be of different data types. Such a structure is declared by:

Once such a structure has been declared, it can be used like a data type specifier to create structure variables that have the member's name, age, and DOB. For example:

```
struct person grace = {"Grace", 22, 01311980};
```

would create a structure variable grace to store the name, age, and data of birth of a person called Grace. Then in order to access the specific members within the person structure variable, use the variable name followed by the dot operator (.) and the member name. Therefore, grace.name, grace.age, grace.DOB would refer to Grace's name, age, and data of birth, respectively.

POINTERS

When programming the 8051 in assembly, sometimes register such as R0, R1, and DPTR are used to store the addresses of some data in a certain memory location. When data is accessed via these registers, indirect addressing is used. In this case, we say that R0, R1, or DPTR are used to point to the data, so they are essentially pointers.

Correspondingly in C, indirect access of data can be done through specially defined pointer variables. Pointers are simply just special types of variables, but whereas normal variables are used to directly store data, pointer variables are used to store the addresses of the data. Just bear in mind that whether you use normal variables or pointer variables, you still get to access the data in the end. It is just whether you go directly to where it is stored and get the data, as in the case of normal variables, or first consult a directory to check the location of that data before going there to get it, as in the case of pointer variables.

Declaring a pointer follows the format:

As an example, the following declarations:

```
int * numPtr
int num;
numPtr = &num:
```

first declares a pointer variable called numPtr that will be used to point to data of type int. The second declaration declares a normal variable and is put there for comparison. The third line assigns the address of the num variable to the numPtr pointer. The address of any variable can be obtained by using the address operator, &, as is used in this example. Bear in mind that once assigned, the numPtr pointer contains the address of the num variable, not the value of its data.

The above example could also be rewritten such that the pointer is straightaway initialized with an address when it is first declared:

```
int num;
int * numPtr = &num:
```

In order to further illustrate the difference between normal variables and pointer variables, consider the following, which is not a full C program but simply a fragment to illustrate our point:

```
int num = 7;
int * numPtr = #
printf ("%d\n", num);
printf ("%d\n", numPtr);
printf ("%d\n", &numPtr);
printf ("%d\n", *numPtr);
```

The first line declare a normal variable, num, which is initialized to contain the data 7. Next, a pointer variable, numPtr, is declared, which is initialized to point to the address of num. The next four lines use the printf() function, which causes some data to be printed to some display terminal connected to the serial port. The first such line displays the contents of the num variable, which is in this case the value 7. The next displays the contents of the numPtr pointer, which is really some weird-looking number that is the address of the num variable. The third such line also displays the addresss of the num variable because the address operator is used to obtain num's address. The last line displays the actual data to which the numPtr pointer is pointing, which is 7. The * symbol is called the indirection operator, and when used with a pointer, indirectly obtains the data whose address is pointed to by the pointer. Therefore, the output display on the terminal would show:

```
7
13452 (or some other weird-looking number)
13452 (or some other weird-looking number)
7
```

A Pointer's Memory Type

Recall that pointers are also variables, so the question arises where they should be stored. When declaring pointers, we can specify different types of memory areas that these pointers should be in, for example:

```
int * xdata numPtr = & num;
```

This is the same as our previous pointer examples. We declare a pointer numPtr, which points to data of type int stored in the num variable. The difference here is the use of the memory type specifier **xdata** after the *. This is specifies that pointer numPtr should reside in external data memory (**xdata**), and we say that the pointer's memory type is **xdata**.

Typed Pointers

We can go even further when declaring pointers. Consider the example:

```
int data * xdata numPtr = #
```

The above statement declares the same pointer numPtr to reside in external data memory (xdata), and this pointer points to data of type int that is itself stored in the variable num in internal data memory (data). The memory type specifier, data, before the * specifies the data memory type while the memory type specifier, xdata, after the * specifies the pointer memory type.

Pointer declarations where the data memory types are explicitly specified are called typed pointers. Typed pointers have the property that you specify in your code where the data pointed by pointers should reside. The size of typed pointers depends on the data memory type and could be one or two bytes.

Untyped Pointers

When we do not explicitly state the data memory type when declaring pointers, we get untyped pointers, which are generic pointers that can point to data residing in any type of memory. Untyped pointers have the advantage that they can be used to point to any data independent of the type of memory in which the data is stored. All untyped pointers consist of 3 bytes, and are hence larger than typed pointers. Untyped pointers are also generally slower because the data memory type is not determined or known until the complied program is run at runtime. The first byte of untyped pointers refers to the data memory type, which is simply a number according to the following table. The second and third bytes are, respectively, the higher-order and lower-order bytes of the address being pointed to.

An untyped pointer is declared just like normal C, where:

```
int * xdata numPtr = #
```

does not explicitly specify the memory type of the data pointed to by the pointer. In this case, we are using untyped pointers.

Data memory type values stored in first byte of untyped pointers		
Value	Data Memory Type	
1	idata	
2	xdata	
3	pdata	
4	data/bdata	
5	code	

FUNCTIONS

In programming the 8051 in assembly, we learnt the advantages of using subroutines to group together common and frequently used instructions. The same concept appears in 8051 C, but instead of calling them subroutines, we call them **functions**. As in conventional C, a function must be declared and defined. A function definition includes a list of the number and types of inputs, and the type of the output (return type), puls a description of the internal contents, or what is to be done within that function.

The format of a typical function definition is as follows:

return a + b:

```
return type function name (arguments) [memory] [reentrant] [interrupt] [using]
where
          return type
                              refers to the data type of the return (output) value
                              is any name that you wish to call the function as
          function name
          arguments
                              is the list of the type and number of input (argument) values
                              refers to an explicit memory model (small, compact or large)
          memory
                              refers to whether the function is reentrant (recursive)
          reentrant
                              indicates that the function is acctually an ISR
          interrupt
                              explicitly specifies which register bank to use
          using
Consider a typical example, a function to calculate the sum of two numbers:
          int sum (int a, int b)
```

This function is called sum and takes in two arguments, both of type int. The return type is also int, meaning that the output (return value) would be an int. Within the body of the function, delimited by braces, we see that the return value is basically the sum of the two agruments. In our example above, we omitted explicitly specifying the options: memory, reentrant, interrupt, and using. This means that the arguments passed to the function would be using the default small memory model, meaning that they would be stored in internal data memory. This function is also by default non-recursive and a normal function, not an ISR. Meanwhile, the default register bank is bank 0.

Parameter Passing

In 8051 C, parameters are passed to and from functions and used as function arguments (inputs). Nevertheless, the technical details of where and how these parameters are stored are transparent to the programmer, who does not need to worry about these technialities. In 8051 C, parameters are passed through the register or through memory. Passing parameters through registers is faster and is the default way in which things are done. The registers used and their purpose are described in more detail below.

Registers used in parameter passing				
Number of Argument	Char / 1-Byte Pointer	INT / 2-Byte Pointer	Long/Float	Generic Pointer
1	R7	R6 & R7	R4–R7	R1-R3
2	R5	R4 &R5	R4–R7	
3	R3	R2 & R3		

Since there are only eight registers in the 8051, there may be situations where we do not have enough registers for parameter passing. When this happens, the remaining parameters can be passed through fixed memory loacations. To specify that all parameters will be passed via memory, the NOREGPARMs control directive is used. To specify the reverse, use the REGPARMs control directive.

Return Values

Unlike parameters, which can be passed by using either registers or memory locations, output values must be returned from functions via registers. The following table shows the registers used in returning different types of values from functions.

Decidence of the second of the form of the second of the s				
Registers used in returning values from functions				
Return Type	Register	Description		
bit	Carry Flag (C)			
char/unsigned char/1-byte pointer	R7			
int/unsigned int/2-byte pointer	R6 & R7	MSB in R6, LSB in R7		
long/unsigned long	R4-R7	MSB in R4, LSB in R7		
float	R4-R7	32-bit IEEE format		
generic pointer	R1-R3	Memory type in R3, MSB in R2, LSB in R1		

附录C: STC12C5410AD系列单片机电气特性

Absolute Maximum Ratings

Parameter	Symbol	Min	Max	Unit
Srotage temperature	TST	-55	+125	$^{\circ}$ C
Operating temperature (I)	TA	-40	+85	$^{\circ}$
Operating temperature (C)	TA	0	+70	$^{\circ}$
DC power supply (5V)	VDD - VSS	-0.3	+6.0	V
DC power supply (3V)	VDD - VSS	-0.3	+4.0	V
Voltage on any pin	-	-0.5	5.5	V

DC Specification (5V MCU)

Sym	Dorometor	Specifi	cation	Test Condition		
Sylli	Parameter		Тур	Max.	Unit	Test Condition
V _{DD}	Operating Voltage	3.5	5.0	5.5	V	
I_{PD}	Power Down Current	-	< 0.1	-	uA	5V
I _{IDL}	Idle Current	-	3.0	-	mA	5V
I_{cc}	Operating Current	-	4	20	mA	5V
V _{IL1}	Input Low Voltage(P0,P1,P2,P3)	-	-	0.8	V	5V
V_{IL2}	Input Low Voltage (RESET, XTAL1)			1.5	V	5V
V _{IH1}	Input High Voltage (P0,P1,P2,P3)	2.0	-	-	V	5V
V _{IH2}	Input High Voltage (RESET)	3.0	-	-	V	5V
I _{OL1}	Sink Current for output low (P0,P1,P2,P3)	-	20	-	mA	5V
I_{OH1}	Sourcing Current for output high (P0,P1,P2,P3) (Quasi-output)	150	230	-	uA	5V
I_{OH2}	Sourcing Current for output high (P0,P1,P2,P3) (Push-Pull, Strong-output)	-	20	-	mA	5V
$I_{\rm IL}$	Logic 0 input current (P0,P1,P2,P3)	-	18	50	uA	Vpin=0V
I_{TL}	Logic 1 to 0 transition current (P0,P1,P2,P3)	-	270	600	uA	Vpin=2.0V

DC Specification (3V MCU)

Sym	Parameter	Specif	ication		Test Condition	
Sylli	Parameter		Тур	Max.	Unit	Test Condition
V _{DD}	Operating Voltage	2.2	3.3	3.8	V	
I_{PD}	Power Down Current	-	< 0.1	-	uA	3.3V
I_{IDL}	Idle Current	-	2.0	-	mA	3.3V
I_{CC}	Operating Current	-	4	10	mA	3.3V
V _{IL1}	Input Low (P0,P1,P2,P3)	-	-	0.8	V	3.3V
V_{IL2}			-	1.5	V	3.3V
V_{IH1}			-	-	V	3.3V
V_{IH2}	Input High (RESET)	3.0	-	-	V	3.3V
I_{OL1}	Sink Current for output low (P0,P1,P2,P3) - 20		-	mA	3.3V@Vpin=0.45V	
I_{OH1}	Sourcing Current for output high (P0 P1 P2 P3)		70	-	uA	3.3V
I_{OH2}			20	-	mA	3.3V
$I_{\rm IL}$	Logic 0 input current (P0,P1,P2,P3)		8	50	uA	Vpin=0V
I _{TL} Logic 1 to 0 transition current (P0,P1,P2,P3)		-	110	600	uA	Vpin=2.0V

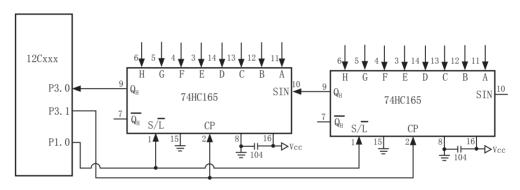
附录D:用串口扩展I/O接口

STC12C5410AD系列单片机串行口的方式**0可用于I/0扩展。如果在应用系统中,串行口未被** 占用,那么将它用来扩展并行I/0口是一种经济、实用的方法。

在操作方式0时,串行口作同步移位寄存器,其波特率是固定的,为SYSc1k/12(SYSc1k为系统时钟频率)。数据由RXD端(P3.0)出入,同步移位时钟由TXD端(P3.1)输出。发送、接收的是8位数据,低位在先。

一、用74HC165扩展并行输入口

下图是利用两片74HC165扩展二个8位并行输入口的接口电路图。



74HC165是8位并行置入移位寄存器。当移位/置入端(S/L)由高到低跳变时,并行输入端的数据置入寄存器;当S/L=1,且时钟禁止端(第15脚)为低电平时,允许时钟输入,这时在时钟脉冲的作用下,数据将由Qa到Qa方向移位。

上图中,TXD(P3.1)作为移位脉冲输出端与所有74HC165的移位脉冲输入端CP相连,RXD(P3.0)作为串行输入端与74HC165的串行输出端Q_H相连,P1.0用来控制74HC165的移位与置入而同S/L相连,74HC165的时钟禁止端(15脚)接地,表示允许时钟输入。当扩展多个8位输入口时,两芯片的首尾(Q_H与S_{IN})相连。

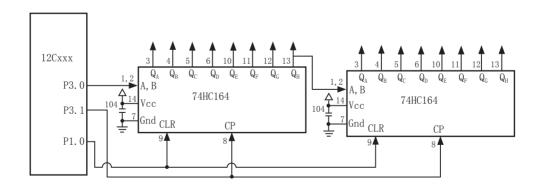
下面的程序是从16位扩展口读入5组数据(每组二个字节),并把它们转存到内部RAM 20H 开始的单元中。

	MOV	R7, #05H	;设置读入组数
	MOV	RO, #20H	; 设置内部RAM数据区首址
START:	CLR	P1.0	;并行置入数据,S/L=0
	SETB P	1.0	; 允许串行移位S/L=1
	MOV	R1, #02H	;设置每组字节数,即外扩74LS165的个数
RXDATA:	MOV	SCON, #00010000B	;设串行方式0,允许接收,启动接收过程
WAIT:	JNB	RI, WAIT	; 未接收完一帧, 循环等待
	CLR	RI	;清RI标志,准备下次接收
	MOV	A, SBUF	; 读入数据
	MOV	@RO, A	; 送至RAM缓冲区
	INC	R0	; 指向下一个地址
	DJNZ	R1, RXDATA	; 为读完一组数据, 继续
	DJNZ	R7, START	; 5组数据未读完重新并行置入
	•••••		; 对数据进行处理

上面的程序对串行接收过程采用的是查询等待的控制方式,如有必要,也可改用中断方式。从理论上讲,按上图方法扩展的输入口几乎是无限的,但扩展的越多,口的操作速度也就越慢。

二、用74HC164扩展并行输出口

74HC164是8位串入并出移位寄存器。下图是利用74HC164扩展二个8位输出口的接口电路。

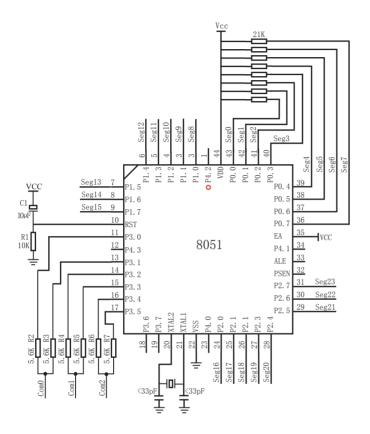


当单片机串行口工作在方式0的发送状态时,串行数据由P3.0 (RXD)送出,移位时钟由P3.1 (TXD)送出。在移位时钟的作用下,串行口发送缓冲器的数据一位一位地移入74HC164中。需要指出的是,由于74HC164无并行输出控制端,因而在串行输入过程中,其输出端的状态会不断变化,故在某些应用场合,在74HC164的输出端应加接输出三态门控制,以便保证串行输入结束后再输出数据。

下面是将RAM缓冲区30H、31H的内容串行口由74HC164并行输出的子程序。

START:	MOV MOV	R7, #02H R0, #30H	-	设置要发送的字节个数设置地址指针
	MOV	SCON, #00H	-	设置串行口方式0
SEND:	MOV	A, @RO		
	MOV	SBUF, A	;	启动串行口发送过程
WAIT:	JNB	TI, WAIT	;	一帧数据未发送完, 循等待
	CLR	TI		
	INC	RO	;	取下一个数
	DJNZ	R7, SEND		
	RET			

附录E: 利用STC单片机普通I/O驱动LCD显示



		U2
Com0	0	Com0
Com1	1	Com0
Seg0	2	Seg0
Seg1	3	Seg1
Seg2	4	Seg2
Seg3	5	Seg3
Seg4	6	Seg4
Seg5	7	Seg5
Seg6	8	Seg6
Seg7	9	Seg7
Seg8	10	Seg8
Seg9	11	Seg9
Seg10	12	Seg10
Seg11	13	Seg11
Seg12	14	Seg12
Seg13	15	Seg13
Seg14	16	Seg14
Seg15	17	Seg15
Seg16	18	Seg16
Seg17	19	Seg17
Seg18	20	Seg18
Seg19	21	Seg19
Seg20	22	Seg20
Seg21	23	Seg21
Seg22	24	Seg22
Seg23	25	Seg23
Com2	26	Com2

本资料不提供技术支持,请自行消化吸收

```
NAME LcdDriver #include<reg52.h>
```

```
************************
the LCD is 1/3 duty and 1/3 bias; 3Com*24Seg; 9 display RAM;
                    Bit7
                           Bit6
                                  Bit5
                                         Bit4
                                                Bit3
                                                       Bit2
                                                             Bit1
                                                                    Bit0
:Com0: Com0Data0:
                    Seg7
                           Seg6
                                  Seg5
                                         Seg4
                                                Seg3
                                                       Seg2
                                                             Seg1
                                                                    Seg0
      Com0Data1:
                    Seg15
                                                       Seg10
                                                             Seg9
                           Seg14
                                  Seg13
                                         Seg12
                                                Seg11
                                                                    Seg8
      Com0Data2:
                    Seg23
                           Seg22
                                  Seg21
                                         Seg20
                                                Seg19 Seg18
                                                             Seg17
                                                                    Seg16
:Com1: Com1Data0:
                           Seg6
                                                Seg3
                                                             Seg1
                    Seg7
                                  Seg5
                                         Seg4
                                                       Seg2
                                                                    Seg0
      Com1Data1:
                    Seg15
                           Seg14
                                  Seg13
                                         Seg12
                                                Seg11
                                                      Seg10
                                                             Seg9
                                                                    Seg8
      Com1Data2:
                    Seg23
                           Seg22
                                  Seg21
                                         Seg20
                                                Seg19
                                                      Seg18
                                                             Seg17
                                                                    Seg16
;Com2: Com2Data0:
                    Seg7
                           Seg6
                                  Seg5
                                         Seg4
                                                Seg3
                                                       Seg2
                                                             Seg1
                                                                    Seg0
      Com2Data1:
                    Seg15 Seg14
                                                       Seg10
                                                             Seg9
                                  Seg13 Seg12
                                                Seg11
                                                                    Seg8
      Com2Data2:
                    Seg23
                           Seg22
                                  Seg21
                                         Seg20
                                                Seg19
                                                       Seg18
                                                             Seg17
                                                                    Seg16
;Com0: P3^0,P3^1 when P3^0 = P3^1 = 1
                                         then Com0=VCC(=5V);
                    P3^0 = P3^1 = 0
                                         then Com0=GND(=0V);
                    P3^0 = 1. P3^1 = 0
                                         then Com0=1/2 VCC;
;Com1: P3^2,P3^3 the same as the Com0
;Com2: P3^4,P3^5 the same as the Com0
sbit
      SEG0 =P0^0
sbit
      SEG1 =P0^1
sbit
      SEG2 = P0^2
sbit
      SEG3 =P0^3
sbit
      SEG4 = P0^4
sbit
      SEG5 = P0^5
sbit
      SEG6 = P0^6
sbit
      SEG7 = P0^7
sbit
      SEG8 =P1^0
sbit
      SEG9 =P1^1
sbit
      SEG10 =P1^2
```

```
sbit
       SEG11 =P1^3
sbit
       SEG12 = P1^4
sbit
       SEG13 =P1^5
sbit
       SEG14 =P1^6
sbit
       SEG15 =P1^7
sbit
       SEG16 =P2^0
sbit
       SEG17 =P2^1
sbit
       SEG18 =P2^2
sbit
       SEG19 =P2^3
sbit
       SEG20 =P2^4
sbit
       SEG21 =P2^5
sbit
       SEG22 = P2^6
sbit
       SEG23 =P2^7
:====Interrupt=
   CSEG
              AT
                      0000H
   LJMP
              start
   CSEG
              AT
                      000BH
   LJMP
              int t0
;====register===
lcdd bit SEGMENT BIT
   RSEG lcdd bit
   OutFlag:
              DBIT 1
                          ;the output display reverse flag
lcdd data SEGMENT DATA
   RSEG lcdd_data
   Com0Data0:
                DS 1
   Com0Data1:
                DS 1
   Com0Data2:
               DS 1
   Com1Data0:
               DS 1
   Com1Data1: DS 1
   Com1Data2:
               DS 1
   Com2Data0:
               DS 1
   Com2Data1:
               DS 1
   Com2Data2:
                DS 1
   TimeS:
                DS 1
```

```
=Interrupt Code=
t0 int
     SEGMENT
                 CODE
     RSEG
           t0 int
     USING 1
;Time0 interrupt
;ths system crystalloid is 22.1184MHz
;the time to get the Time0 interrupr is 2.5mS
the whole duty is 2.5mS*6=15mS, including reverse
int t0:
     ORL
           TL0,#00H
     MOV
           TH0,#0EEH
     PUSH
           ACC
     PUSH
           PSW
     MOV
           PSW,#08H
     ACALL OutData
     POP
           PSW
     POP
           ACC
     RETI
   ===SUB CODE==
uart sub SEGMENT CODE
     RSEG uart sub
     USING 0
initial the display RAM data
;if want to display other, then you may add other data to this RAM
;Com0: Com0Data0,Com0Data1,Com0Data2
;Com1: Com1Data0,Com1Data1,Com1Data2
;Com2: Com2Data0,Com0Data1,Com0Data2
;it will display "11111111"
InitComData:
     MOV
           Com0Data0,
                       #24H
     MOV
           Com0Data1,
                       #49H
     MOV
           Com0Data2,
                       #92H
```

```
MOV
             Com1Data0,
                          #92H
      MOV
             Com1Data1,
                          #24H
      MOV
             Com1Data2,
                          #49H
      MOV
             Com2Data0.
                          #00H
      MOV
             Com2Data1,
                          #00H
      MOV
             Com2Data2,
                          #00H
      RET
reverse the display data
RetComData:
      MOV
             R0.
                   #Com0Data0
                                    get the first data address
      MOV
             R7.
                   #9
RetCom 0:
      MOV
                   @R0
             A,
      CPL
             Α
      MOV
             @R0,
                   Α
      INC
             R0
      DJNZ
             R7,
                   RetCom 0
      RET
   *****************
get the display Data and send to Output register
OutData:
      INC
             TimeS
      MOV
                   TimeS
             A,
      MOV
             P3.
                   #11010101B
                                       ;clear display,all Com are 1/2VCC and invalidate
                                       ;judge the duty
      CJNE
             A,
                   #01H, OutData 1
      MOV
             P0,
                   Com<sub>0</sub>Data<sub>0</sub>
      MOV
             P1,
                   Com0Data1
      MOV
             P2,
                   Com0Data2
      JNB
             OutFlag,OutData 00
      MOV
             P3,
                   #11010111B
                                       ;Com0 is work and is VCC
      RET
```

```
OutData 00:
       MOV
              P3,
                     #11010100B
                                       ;Com0 is work and is GND
       RET
OutData 1:
       CJNE
              A.
                     #02H,OutData 2
       MOV
              P0.
                     Com1Data0
       MOV
              P1,
                     Com1Data1
       MOV
              P2,
                     Com1Data2
       JNB
              OutFlag,OutData 10
       MOV
              P3,
                     #11011101B
                                       ;Com1 is work and is VCC
       RET
OutData 10:
       MOV
              P3,
                                       ;Com1 is work and is GND
                     #11010001B
       RET
OutData 2:
       MOV
              P0,
                     Com2Data0
       MOV
              P1,
                     Com2Data1
       MOV
              P2.
                     Com2Data2
       JNB
              OutFlag,OutData 20
       MOV
              P3,
                     #11110101B
                                       ;Com2 is work and is VCC
       SJMP
              OutData 21
OutData 20:
       MOV P3,#11000101B
                                 ;Com2 is work and is GND
OutData 21:
              TimeS, #00H
       MOV
       ACALL RetComData
       CPL
              OutFlag
       RET
;====Main Code=====
uart main SEGMENT CODE
       RSEG uart main
       USING 0
```

start:

MOV SP,#40H

CLR OutFlag

MOV TimeS,#00H

MOV TL0,#00H

MOV TH0,#0EEH

MOV TMOD,#01H

MOV IE,#82H

ACALL InitComData

SETB TR0

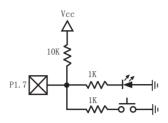
Main:

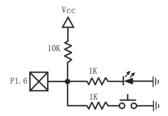
NOP

SJMP Main

END

附录F: 一个I/O口驱动发光二极管并扫描按键





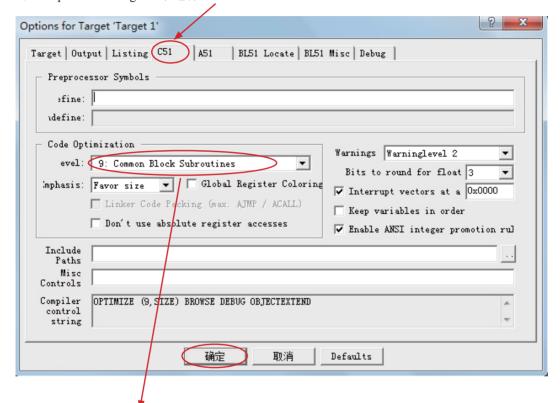
利用STC12C5410AD系列单片机的I/0口可设置成弱上拉,强上拉(推挽)输出,仅为输入(高阻),开漏四种模式的特性,可以利用STC12C5410AD系列单片机的I/0口同时作为发光二极管驱动及按键检测用,可以大幅节省I/0口。

当驱动发光二极管时,将该I/0口设置成强推挽输出,输出高即可点亮发光二极管。 当检测按键时,将该I/0口设置成弱上拉输入,再读外部口的状态,即可检测按键。

附录G: 如何利用Keil C软件减少代码长度

在Keil C软件中选择作如下设置,能将原代码长度最大减少10K。

- 1. 在 "Project" 菜单中选择 "Options for Target"
- 2. 在"Options for Target"中选择"C51"



- 3. 选择按空间大小,9级优化程序
- 4. 点击"确定"后,重新编译程序即可。

附录H: STC12C5410AD系列单片机应用注意事项

关于复位电路:

晶振频率在20M 以下时:可以不用外部复位电路,原复位电路可以保留,也可以不用,不用时复位脚可经过1K 电阻短接到地,或者直接短接到地。不过建议设计时PCB 板上保留R/C 复位电路,实际使用时再决定用或不用。

关于时钟:

如果使用内部R/C 振荡器时钟(4MHz~8MHz,制造误差加温漂), XTAL1 和XTAL2 脚浮空.

如果外部时钟频率在27MHz以上时,建议采用实际基本频率就是标称频率的晶体,不要采用三泛音的晶体(基本频率是标称频率的1/3),因为外围参数搭配不当,时钟往往振荡在标称频率的1/3,即基频,或直接使用外部有源石英晶体振荡器,时钟从XTAL1 脚输入,XTAL2 脚必须浮空,

关于I/O口:

少数用户反映I/0口有损坏现象, 后发现是

有些是I/0口由低变高读外部状态时,读不对,实际没有损坏,软件处理一下即可

是因为1T的8051单片机速度太快了,软件执行由低变高指令后立即读外部状态,此时由于实际输出还没有变高,就有可能读不对,正确的方法是在软件设置由低变高后加1到2个空操作指令延时,再读就对了.

有些实际没有损坏,加上拉电阻就OK了

是因为外围接的是SPI/I2C等漏极开漏的电路,要加10K上拉电阻.

有些是外围接的是NPN三极管,没有加上拉电阻,其实基极串多大电阻,I/0口就应该上拉多大的电阻,或者将该I/0口设置为强推挽输出.

有些确实是损坏了,原因:

发现有些是驱动LED发光二极管没有加限流电阻,建议加1K以上的限流电阻,至少也要加470 欧姆以上

发现有些是做行列矩阵按键扫描电路时,实际工作时没有加限流电阻,实际工作时可能出现2个I/0口均输出为低,并且在按键按下时,短接在一起,我们知道一个CMOS电路的2个输出脚不应该直接短接在一起,按键扫描电路中,此时一个口为了读另外一个口的状态,必须先置高才能读另外一个口的状态,而8051单片机的弱上拉口在由0变为1时,会有2个时钟的强推挽高输出电流,输出到另外一个输出为低的I/0口,就有可能造成I/0口损坏.建议在其中的一侧加1K限流电阻,或者在软件处理上,不要出现按键两端的I/0口同时为低.

关于电源:

在电源两端应该加一个10uF以上的电解电容和一个0.1uF的小电容,进行电源去藕滤波,

附录I: 每日更新内容的备忘录

2011-9-9更新内容:

增加了5.3.1节"(中文的)传统8051单片机指令定义详解",并附有5.3.2节的英文文本参考。